

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date
7 August 2003 (07.08.2003)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 03/063845 A1

(51) International Patent Classification⁷: **A61K 31/00**,
A61P 27/16, A61K 31/13, 31/131, 31/137, 31/4245,
31/41, 31/662, 31/18, 31/443

(74) Agents: **LUMB, J., Trevor** et al.; Pfizer Inc., 201 Tabor
Road, Morris Plains, NJ 07950 (US).

(21) International Application Number: PCT/IB03/00232

(22) International Filing Date: 20 January 2003 (20.01.2003)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:
60/353,632 31 January 2002 (31.01.2002) US

(81) Designated States (*national*): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU,
AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU,
CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH,
GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC,
LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW,
MX, MZ, NO, NZ, OM, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG,
SK, SL, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN,
YU, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) Designated States (*regional*): ARIPO patent (GH, GM,
KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW),
Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM),
European patent (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE,
ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE, SI,
SK, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN,
GX, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

(71) Applicant (*for all designated States except US*):
WARNER-LAMBERT COMPANY LLC [US/US];
201 Tabor Road, Morris Plains, NJ 07950 (US).

(72) Inventors; and

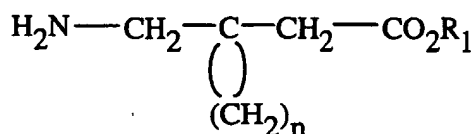
(75) Inventors/Applicants (*for US only*): **DOOLEY, David**,
James [US/US]; Pfizer Global Research and Develop-
ment, Ann Arbor Laboratories, 2800 Plymouth Road, Ann
Arbor, MI 48105 (US). **WUSTROW, David, Juergen**
[US/US]; Pfizer Global Research and Development, Ann
Arbor Laboratories, 2800 Plymouth Road, Ann Arbor, MI
48105 (US).

Published:

- with international search report
- before the expiration of the time limit for amending the
claims and to be republished in the event of receipt of
amendments

*For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guid-
ance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the begin-
ning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.*

(54) Title: ALPHA 2 DELTA LIGANDS TO TREAT TINNITUS



I

(57) Abstract: The invention relates to a method of treating
tinnitus by administering an alpha2delta ligand such as, for
example, a compound of Formula (I) and pharmaceutically
acceptable salts thereof, wherein R₁ is hydrogen or straight
or branched lower alkyl, and n is an integer of from 4 to 6.



WO 03/063845 A1

USSN 10/731,225 FILED December 9, 2003
Docket No. PC25677A

ALPHA 2 DELTA LIGANDS TO TREAT TINNITUS

This invention relates to a method of preventing or treating tinnitus by administering a compound that exhibits activity as an alpha2delta ligand ($\alpha 2\delta$ ligand). These compounds have affinity for the $\alpha 2\delta$ subunit of a calcium channel. Such compounds have also been referred to in the literature as gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA) analogs.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Tinnitus is a medical disorder affecting between 10 and 13 percent of the population. Thus, approximately 36 million Americans and 40 million Europeans suffer from this disorder. Tinnitus can be defined as the sensation of sound perceived in the head or the ear without an evident external stimulus. It is subjective in nature and is a manifestation of malfunction in the processing of auditory signals involving both perceptual and psychological components.

Tinnitus can be triggered anywhere along the auditory pathway. The emergence of persistent annoying tinnitus is usually considered to have psychological components. Tinnitus can be associated with any form of sensorineural hearing impairment, especially difficulty in hearing, ageing and exposure to noise. Middle ear surgery, myringoplasty, chronic suppurative otitis media and otosclerosis can all give rise to conductive hearing impairment and tinnitus.

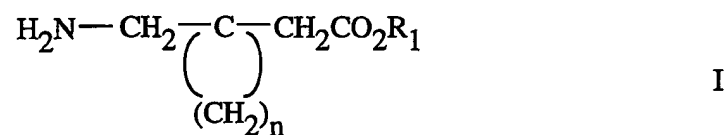
Several alpha2delta ligands are known. Gabapentin, a cyclic alpha2delta ligand, is now commercially available (Neurontin®, Warner-Lambert Company) and extensively used clinically for treatment of epilepsy and neuropathic pain. Such cyclic alpha2delta ligands are described in US Patent No. 4,024,175 and its divisional US Patent No. 4,087,544. Other series of alpha2delta ligands are described in US Patent No. 5,563,175 and US Patent No. 6,316,638. these patents are incorporated herein by reference in their entireties.

-2-

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

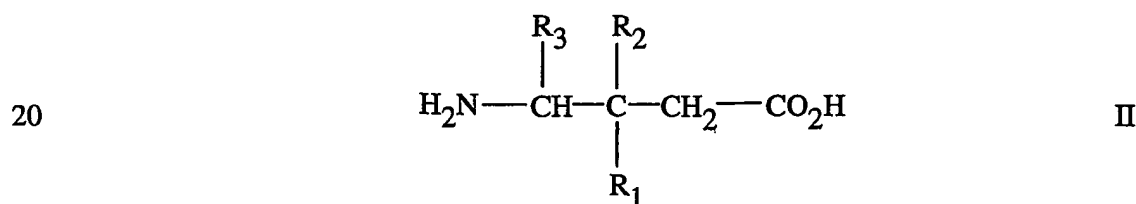
This invention provides a method of preventing or treating tinnitus in a mammal suffering therefrom, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of an alpha2delta ligand or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

5 A preferred embodiment of the invention method utilizes an alpha2delta ligand that is a cyclic amino acid compound of Formula I



wherein R_1 is hydrogen or lower alkyl and n is an integer of from 4 to 6, and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof. An especially preferred embodiment
 10 utilizes a compound of Formula I where R_1 is hydrogen and n is 5, which compound is 1-(aminomethyl)-cyclohexane acetic acid, known generically as gabapentin. Other preferred Alpha2delta ligands, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, are compounds of Formula I wherein the cyclic ring is substituted, for example with alkyl such as methyl or ethyl. Typical of such compounds include
 15 (1-aminomethyl-3-methylcyclohexyl) acetic acid, (1-aminomethyl-3-methylcyclopentyl) acetic acid, and (1-aminomethyl-3,4-dimethylcyclopentyl) acetic acid.

In another preferred embodiment, the invention method utilizes an alpha2delta ligand of Formula II



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

-3-

R₁ is a straight or branched unsubstituted alkyl of from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, unsubstituted phenyl, or unsubstituted cycloalkyl of from 3 to 6 carbon atoms;

R₂ is hydrogen or methyl; and

5 R₃ is hydrogen, methyl, or carboxyl.

Diastereomers and enantiomers of compounds of Formula II can be utilized in the invention method.

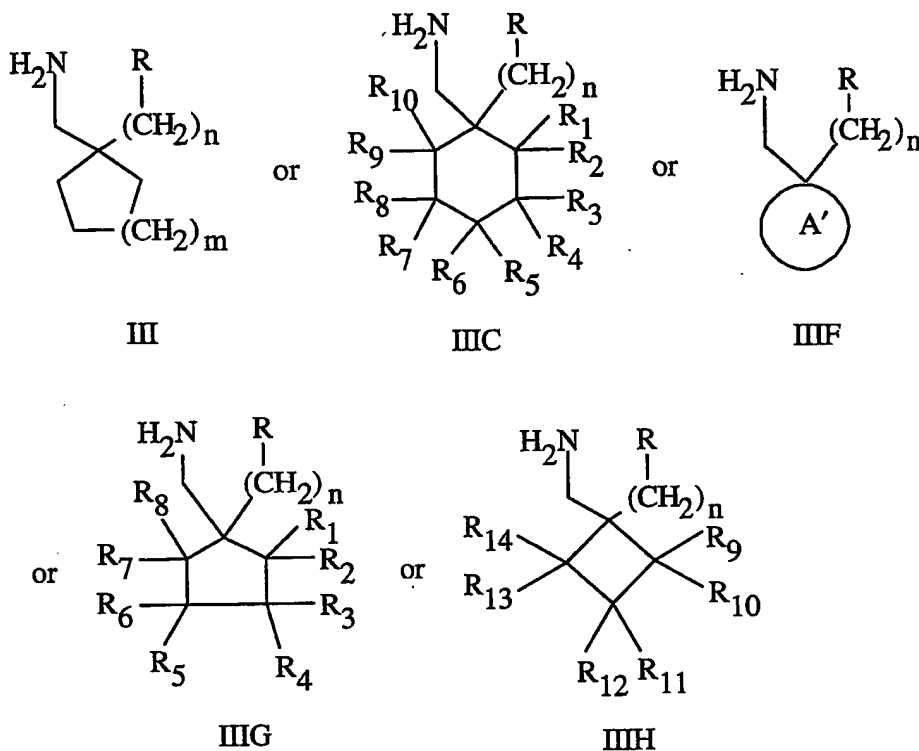
An especially preferred embodiment of the invention method employs a compound of Formula II where R₂ and R₃ are both hydrogen, and R₁ is
10 -(CH₂)₀₋₂ C₄H₉ as an (R), (S), or (R,S) isomer.

A more preferred embodiment of the invention method utilizes a compound of Formula II named 3-aminomethyl-5-methyl-hexanoic acid, or especially (S)-3-(aminomethyl)-5-methylhexanoic acid, now known generically as pregabalin. Pregabalin is also known as "CI-1008" and "S-(+)-3-IBG."

15 Another preferred embodiment of the invention method utilizes a compound of Formula II named 3-(1-aminoethyl)-5-methylheptanoic acid or 3-(1-aminoethyl)-5-methylhexanoic acid.

-4-

Another preferred embodiment of the invention method utilizes an $\alpha_2\delta$ ligand that is a compound of the Formula III, IIIC, IIIF, IIIG, or IIIH



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof wherein:

5

n is an integer of from 0 to 2;

m is an integer of from 0 to 3;

R is sulfonamide,

amide,

phosphonic acid,

10

heterocycle,

sulfonic acid, or

hydroxamic acid;

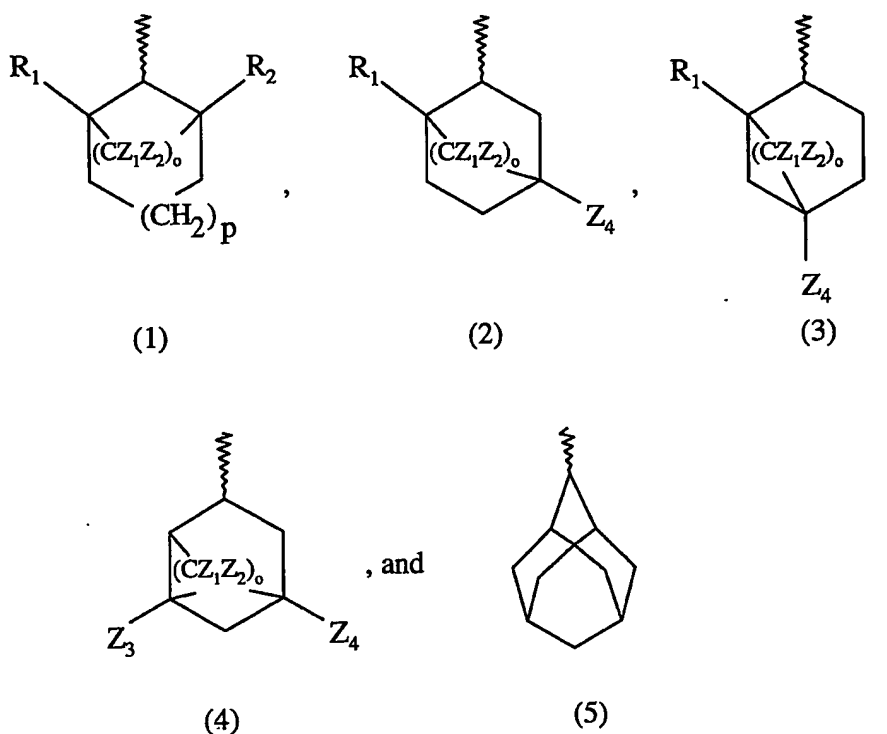
R₁ to R₁₄ are each independently selected from hydrogen or straight or branched alkyl of from 1 to 6 carbons, unsubstituted or substituted benzyl or phenyl which substituents are selected from halogen, alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxy, carboxy, carboalkoxy, trifluoromethyl, and nitro;

15

/*

5

A' is a bridged ring selected from



wherein

10 --- is the point of attachment;

Z_1 to Z_4 are each independently selected from hydrogen and methyl;

o is an integer of from 1 to 4; and

p is an integer of from 0 to 2.

15 In Formula I above R cannot be sulfonic acid when m is 2 and n is 1.
(Suman-Chaulan N., et al., *European Journal of Pharmacology*, 1993;244:293-301).

Another preferred embodiment of the invention method utilizes a compound of Formulas III, IIIC, IIIF, IIIG, or IIIH selected from:

- (1-Aminomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-phosphonic acid;
 (1R-trans)(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-phosphonic acid;
 (trans)(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-phosphonic acid;
 (1R-trans)(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-phosphonic acid;
 5 (1S-cis)(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-phosphonic acid;
 (1S-trans)(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-phosphonic acid;
 (1R-cis)(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-phosphonic acid;
 (1 α ,3 α ,4 α)(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-phosphonic
 acid;
 10 (1 α ,3 β ,4 β)(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-phosphonic
 acid;
 (R)(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-phosphonic acid;
 (S)(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-phosphonic acid;
 (1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclobutylmethyl)-phosphonic acid;
 15 2-(1-Aminomethyl-cyclohexyl)-N-hydroxy-acetamide;
 (1S-trans)2-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclohexyl)-N-hydroxy-acetamide;
 (trans)2-(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-N-hydroxy-
 acetamide;
 (1S-cis)2-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentyl)-N-hydroxy-acetamide;
 20 (1R-trans)2-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentyl)-N-hydroxy-
 acetamide;
 (1R-cis)2-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentyl)-N-hydroxy-acetamide;
 (1S-trans)2-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentyl)-N-hydroxy-
 acetamide;
 25 (1 α ,3 α ,4 α)2-(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-N-hydroxy-
 acetamide;
 (1 α ,3 β ,4 β)2-(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-N-hydroxy-
 acetamide;
 (S)2-(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-N-hydroxy-acetamide;
 30 (R)2-(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-N-hydroxy-acetamide;
 2-(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclobutyl)-N-hydroxy-acetamide;
 N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-cyclohexyl)-ethyl]-methanesulfonamide;

-7-

- (1S-cis)N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclohexyl)-ethyl]-methanesulfonamide;
- (trans)N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-ethyl]-methanesulfonamide;
- 5 (1S-cis)N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentyl)-ethyl]-methanesulfonamide;
- (1R-trans)N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentyl)-ethyl]-methanesulfonamide;
- (1R-cis)N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentyl)-ethyl]-methanesulfonamide;
- 10 (1S-cis)N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentyl)-ethyl]-methanesulfonamide;
- (1 α ,3 α ,4 α)N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-ethyl]-methanesulfonamide;
- 15 (1 α ,3 β ,4 β)N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-ethyl]-methanesulfonamide;
- (S)N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-ethyl]-methanesulfonamide;
- (R)N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-ethyl]-methanesulfonamide;
- 20 N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclobutyl)-ethyl]-methanesulfonamide;
- (1S-cis)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one;
- 25 (trans)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one;
- (1S-cis)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one;
- (1R-trans)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one;
- 30 (1R-cis)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one;

- (1S-trans)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one;
- (1 α ,3 α ,4 α)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one;
- 5 (1 α ,3 β ,4 β)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one;
- (S)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one;
- (R)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one;
- 10 3-(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclobutylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one;
- 3-(1-Aminomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-thione;
- (1S-cis)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-thione;
- 15 (trans)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-thione;
- (1S-cis)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-thione;
- 20 (1R-trans)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-thione;
- (1R-cis)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-thione;
- (1S-trans)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-thione;
- 25 (1 α ,3 α ,4 α)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-thione;
- (1 α ,3 β ,4 β)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-thione;
- 30 (S)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-thione;

-9-

- (R)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-thione;
 3-(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclobutylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-thione;
- 5 C-[1-(1H-Tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cyclohexyl]-methylamine;
 (1S-cis)C-[3-Methyl-1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cyclohexyl]-methylamine;
 (trans)C-[3,4-Dimethyl-1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cyclopentyl]-methylamine;
- 10 (1S-cis)C-[3-Methyl-1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cyclopentyl]-methylamine;
 (1R-trans)C-[3-Methyl-1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cyclopentyl]-methylamine;
 (1R-cis)C-[3-Methyl-1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cyclopentyl]-methylamine;
- 15 (1S-trans)C-[3-Methyl-1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cyclopentyl]-methylamine;
 (1 α ,3 α ,4 α)C-[3,4-Dimethyl-1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cyclopentyl]-methylamine;
- 20 (1 α ,3 β ,4 β)C-[3,4-Dimethyl-1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cyclopentyl]-methylamine;
 (S)C-[3,3-Dimethyl-1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cyclopentyl]-methylamine;
 (R)C-[3,3-Dimethyl-1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cyclopentyl]-methylamine;
- 25 C-[3,3-Dimethyl-1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cyclobutyl]-methylamine;
 N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-cyclohexyl)-ethyl]-C,C,C-trifluoro-methanesulfonamide;
 (1S-cis)N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclohexyl)-ethyl]-C,C,C-trifluoro-methanesulfonamide;
- 30 (trans)N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-ethyl]-C,C,C-trifluoro-methanesulfonamide;

-10-

(1R-cis)N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentyl)-ethyl]-C,C,C-trifluoro-methanesulfonamide;

(1S-trans)N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentyl)-ethyl]-C,C,C-trifluoro-methanesulfonamide;

5 (1S-cis)N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentyl)-ethyl]-C,C,C-trifluoro-methanesulfonamide;

(1R-trans)N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentyl)-ethyl]-C,C,C-trifluoro-methanesulfonamide;

10 (1 α ,3 α ,4 α)N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-ethyl]-C,C,C-trifluoro-methanesulfonamide;

(1 α ,3 β ,4 β)N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-ethyl]-C,C,C-trifluoro-methanesulfonamide;

(S)N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-ethyl]-C,C,C-trifluoro-methanesulfonamide;

15 (R)N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-ethyl]-C,C,C-trifluoro-methanesulfonamide;

N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclobutyl)-ethyl]-C,C,C-trifluoro-methanesulfonamide;

3-(1-Aminomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]thiadiazol-5-one;

20 (1S-cis)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]thiadiazol-5-one;

(trans)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]thiadiazol-5-one;

25 (1R-cis)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]thiadiazol-5-one;

(1S-trans)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]thiadiazol-5-one;

(1S-cis)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]thiadiazol-5-one;

30 (1R-trans)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]thiadiazol-5-one;

-11-

(1 α ,3 α ,4 α)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]thiadiazol-5-one;

(1 α ,3 β ,4 β)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]thiadiazol-5-one;

5 (S)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]thiadiazol-5-one;

(R)3-(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]thiadiazol-5-one;

10 3-(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclobutylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]thiadiazol-5-one;

C-[1-(2-Oxo-2,3-dihydro-2 λ^4 -[1,2,3,5]oxathiadiazol-4-ylmethyl)-cyclohexyl]-methylaniline;

(1S-cis)C-[3-Methyl-1-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-2 λ^4 -[1,2,3,5]oxathiadiazol-4-ylmethyl)-cyclohexyl]-methylaniline;

15 (trans)C-[3,4-Dimethyl-1-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-2 λ^4 -[1,2,3,5]oxathiadiazol-4-ylmethyl)-cyclopentyl]-methylaniline;

(1S-cis)C-[3-Methyl-1-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-2 λ^4 -[1,2,3,5]oxathiadiazol-4-ylmethyl)-cyclopentyl]-methylaniline;

20 (1R-trans)C-[3-Methyl-1-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-2 λ^4 -[1,2,3,5]oxathiadiazol-4-ylmethyl)-cyclopentyl]-methylaniline;

(1R-cis)C-[3-Methyl-1-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-2 λ^4 -[1,2,3,5]oxathiadiazol-4-ylmethyl)-cyclopentyl]-methylaniline;

(1S-trans)C-[3-Methyl-1-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-2 λ^4 -[1,2,3,5]oxathiadiazol-4-ylmethyl)-cyclopentyl]-methylaniline;

25 (1 α ,3 α ,4 α)C-[3,4-Dimethyl-1-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-2 λ^4 -[1,2,3,5]oxathiadiazol-4-ylmethyl)-cyclopentyl]-methylaniline;

(1 α ,3 β ,4 β)C-[3,4-Dimethyl-1-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-2 λ^4 -[1,2,3,5]oxathiadiazol-4-ylmethyl)-cyclopentyl]-methylaniline;

30 (S)C-[3,3-Dimethyl-1-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-2 λ^4 -[1,2,3,5]oxathiadiazol-4-ylmethyl)-cyclopentyl]-methylaniline;

-12-

(R)C-[3,3-Dimethyl-1-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-2 λ^4 -[1,2,3,5]oxathiadiazol-4-ylmethyl)-cyclopentyl]-methylaniline;

C-[3,3-Dimethyl-1-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-2 λ^4 -[1,2,3,5]oxathiadiazol-4-ylmethyl)-cyclobutyl]-methylaniline;

- 5 (1-Aminomethyl-cyclohexyl)-methanesulfonamide;
- (1R-trans)(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclohexyl)-methanesulfonamide;
- (trans)(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-methanesulfonamide;
- (1S-trans)(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentyl)-methanesulfonamide;
- (1R-cis)(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentyl)-methanesulfonamide;
- 10 (1R-trans)(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentyl)-methanesulfonamide;
- (1S-cis)(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentyl)-methanesulfonamide;
- (1 α ,3 β ,4 β)(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-methanesulfonamide;
- (1 α ,3 α ,4 α)(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-methanesulfonamide;
- 15 (R)(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-methanesulfonamide;
- (S)(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-methanesulfonamide;
- (1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclobutyl)-methanesulfonamide;
- (1-Aminomethyl-cyclohexyl)-methanesulfonic acid;
- 20 (1R-trans)(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclohexyl)-methanesulfonic acid;
- (trans)(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-methanesulfonic acid;
- (1S-trans)(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentyl)-methanesulfonic acid;
- (1S-cis)(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentyl)-methanesulfonic acid;
- (1R-trans)(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentyl)-methanesulfonic acid;
- 25 (1R-cis)(1-Aminomethyl-3-methyl-cyclopentyl)-methanesulfonic acid;
- (1 α ,3 β ,4 β)(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-methanesulfonic acid;
- (1 α ,3 α ,4 α)(1-Aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-methanesulfonic acid;
- 30 (R)(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-methanesulfonic acid;
- (S)(1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-methanesulfonic acid;
- (1-Aminomethyl-3,3-dimethyl-cyclobutyl)-methanesulfonic acid;

-13-

- (1-Aminomethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-phosphonic acid;
 2-(1-Aminomethyl-cyclopentyl)-N-hydroxy-acetamide;
 N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-cyclopentyl)-ethyl]-methanesulfonamide;
 3-(1-Aminomethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one;
 5 3-(1-Aminomethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-thione;
 C-[1-(1H-Tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cyclopentyl]-methylamine;
 N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-cyclopentyl)-ethyl]-C,C,C-trifluoro-
 methanesulfonamide;
 3-(1-Aminomethyl-cyclopentylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]thiadiazol-5-one;
 10 C-[1-(2-Oxo-2,3-dihydro-2 λ^4 [1,2,3,5]oxathiadiazol-4-ylmethyl)-
 cyclopentyl]-methylamine;
 (1-Aminomethyl-cyclopentyl)-methanesulfonamide;
 (1-Aminomethyl-cyclopentyl)-methanesulfonic acid;
 (9-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-ylmethyl)-phosphonic acid;
 15 2-(9-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl)-N-hydroxy-acetamide;
 N-[2-(9-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl)-ethyl]-
 methanesulfonamide;
 3-(9-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-ylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-
 5-one;
 20 3-(9-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-ylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-
 5-thione;
 C-[9-(1H-Tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-bicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl]-methylamine;
 N-[2-(9-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl)-ethyl]-C,C,C-trifluoro-
 methanesulfonamide;
 25 3-(9-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-ylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]thiadiazol-
 5-one;
 C-[9-(2-Oxo-2,3-dihydro-2 λ^4 [1,2,3,5]oxathiadiazol-4-ylmethyl)-
 bicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl]-methylamine;
 (9-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl)-methanesulfonamide;
 30 (9-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl)-methanesulfonic acid;
 (2-Aminomethyl-adamantan-2-ylmethyl)-phosphonic acid;
 2-(2-Aminomethyl-adamantan-2-yl)-N-hydroxy-acetamide;

-14-

- N-[2-(2-Aminomethyl-adamantan-2-yl)-ethyl]-methanesulfonamide;
 3-(2-Aminomethyl-adamantan-2-ylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one;
 3-(2-Aminomethyl-adamantan-2-ylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-thione;
 C-[2-(1H-Tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-adamantan-2-yl]-methylamine;
 5 N-[2-(2-Aminomethyl-adamantan-2-yl)-ethyl]-C,C,C-trifluoro-
 methanesulfonamide;
 3-(2-Aminomethyl-adamantan-2-ylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]thiadiazol-5-one;
 C-[2-(2-Oxo-2,3-dihydro-2λ⁴-[1,2,3,5]oxathiadiazol-4-ylmethyl)-
 adamantan-2-yl]-methylamine;
 10 (2-Aminomethyl-adamantan-2-yl)-methanesulfonamide;
 (2-Aminomethyl-adamantan-2-yl)-methanesulfonic acid;
 (1-Aminomethyl-cycloheptylmethyl)-phosphonic acid;
 2-(1-Aminomethyl-cycloheptyl)-N-hydroxy-acetamide;
 N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-cycloheptyl)-ethyl]-methanesulfonamide;
 15 3-(1-Aminomethyl-cycloheptylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-thione;
 N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-cycloheptyl)-ethyl]-C,C,C-trifluoro-
 methanesulfonamide;
 C-[1-(2-Oxo-2,3-dihydro-2λ⁴-[1,2,3,5]oxathiadiazol-4-ylmethyl)-
 cycloheptyl]-methylamine;
 20 (1-Aminomethyl-cycloheptyl)-methanesulfonamide; and
 (1-Aminomethyl-cycloheptyl)-methanesulfonic acid.

Another preferred embodiment of the invention method utilizes a
 compound of Formulas III, IIIC, IIIF, IIIG, or IIIH, wherein preferred compounds
 are those wherein R is a sulfonamide selected from -NHSO₂R¹⁵ or
 25 -SO₂NHR¹⁵ wherein R¹⁵ is straight or branched alkyl or trifluoromethyl.

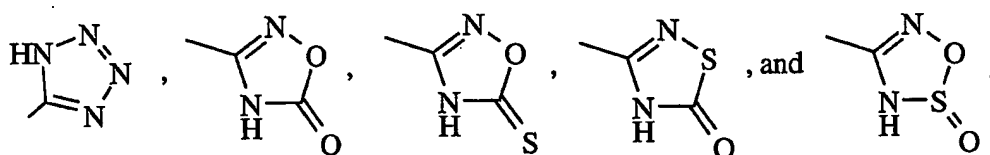
Another preferred embodiment of the invention method utilizes a
 compound of Formulas III, IIIC, IIIF, IIIG, or IIIH, wherein especially preferred
 is N-[2-(1-aminomethyl-cyclohexyl)-ethyl]-methanesulfonamide.

Another preferred embodiment of the invention method utilizes a
 30 compound of Formulas III, IIIC, IIIF, IIIG, or IIIH, wherein other preferred
 compounds are those wherein R is a phosphonic acid, -PO₃H₂.

-15-

Another preferred embodiment of the invention method utilizes a compound of Formulas III, IIIC, IIIF, IIIG, or IIIH, wherein especially preferred are (1-aminomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-phosphonic acid and (2-aminomethyl-4-methyl-pentyl)-phosphonic acid.

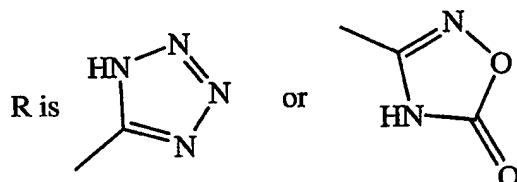
5 Another preferred embodiment of the invention method utilizes a compound of Formulas III, IIIC, IIIF, IIIG, or IIIH, wherein other preferred compounds are those wherein R is a heterocycle selected from:



10 Another preferred embodiment of the invention method utilizes a compound of Formulas III, IIIC, IIIF, IIIG, or IIIH, wherein especially preferred are C-[1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)cyclohexyl]-methylaniline and 4-methyl-2-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-pentylaniline.

An especially preferred embodiment of the invention method utilizes a compound of Formula III wherein:

15 m is an integer of from 0 to 2;
p is an integer of 2; and



20 Still more preferred is an embodiment of the invention method which utilizes a compound of Formulas III, IIIC, IIIF, IIIG, or IIIH named 3-(1-aminomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

Still more preferred is an embodiment of the invention method which utilizes a compound of Formulas III, IIIC, IIIF, IIIG, or IIIH named 3-(1-aminomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one hydrochloride.

25 Also preferred is an embodiment of the invention method which utilizes a compound of Formulas III, IIIC, IIIF, IIIG, or IIIH named 3-(1-aminomethyl-

-16-

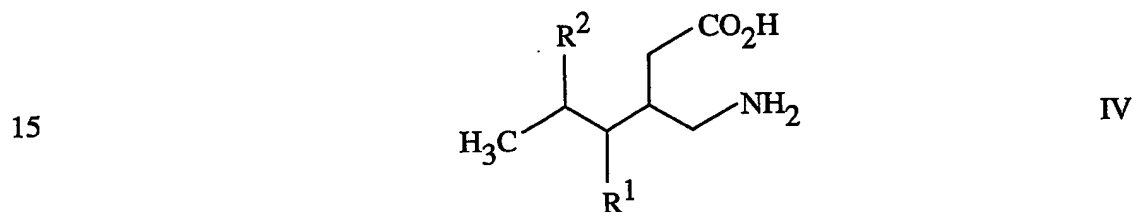
cycloheptylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

Also more preferred is an embodiment of the invention method which utilizes a compound of Formulas III, IIIC, IIIF, IIIG, or IIIH named
 5 3-(1-aminomethyl-cycloheptylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one hydrochloride.

Also preferred is an embodiment of the invention method which utilizes a compound of Formulas III, IIIC, IIIF, IIIG, or IIIH named C-[1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cycloheptyl]-methylamine, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

10 Also more preferred is an embodiment which utilizes a compound of Formulas III, IIIC, IIIF, IIIG, or IIIH named C-[1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cycloheptyl]-methylamine.

Another preferred embodiment of the invention method utilizes an $\alpha_2\delta$ ligand that is a compound of Formula IV



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof wherein:

R^1 is hydrogen, straight or branched alkyl of from 1 to 6 carbon atoms or phenyl;

R^2 is straight or branched alkyl of from 1 to 8 carbon atoms,

straight or branched alkenyl of from 2 to 8 carbon atoms,

20 cycloalkyl of from 3 to 7 carbon atoms,

alkoxy of from 1 to 6 carbon atoms,

-alkylcycloalkyl,

-alkylalkoxy,

-alkyl OH

25 -alkylphenyl,

-alkylphenoxy,

-phenyl or substituted phenyl; and

-17-

R¹ is straight or branched alkyl of from 1 to 6 carbon atoms or phenyl when R² is methyl.

Preferred is an embodiment of the invention method employing a compound of Formula IV wherein R¹ is hydrogen, and R² is alkyl.

5 Another preferred embodiment of the invention method employing a compound of Formula IV wherein R¹ is methyl, and R² is alkyl.

Still another preferred embodiment of the invention method utilizes a compound of Formula IV wherein R¹ is methyl, and R² is methyl or ethyl.

Especially preferred is an embodiment of the invention method utilizing a
10 compound of Formula IV selected from:

- 3-Aminomethyl-5-methylheptanoic acid;
- 3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
- 3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-nonanoic acid;
- 3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-decanoic acid;
- 15 3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-undecanoic acid;
- 3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-dodecanoic acid;
- 3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-tridecanoic acid;
- 3-Aminomethyl-5-cyclopropyl-hexanoic acid;
- 3-Aminomethyl-5-cyclobutyl-hexanoic acid;
- 20 3-Aminomethyl-5-cyclopentyl-hexanoic acid;
- 3-Aminomethyl-5-cyclohexyl-hexanoic acid;
- 3-Aminomethyl-5-trifluoromethyl-hexanoic acid;
- 3-Aminomethyl-5-phenyl-hexanoic acid;
- 3-Aminomethyl-5-(2-chlorophenyl)-hexanoic acid;
- 25 3-Aminomethyl-5-(3-chlorophenyl)-hexanoic acid;
- 3-Aminomethyl-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-hexanoic acid;
- 3-Aminomethyl-5-(2-methoxyphenyl)-hexanoic acid;
- 3-Aminomethyl-5-(3-methoxyphenyl)-hexanoic acid;
- 3-Aminomethyl-5-(4-methoxyphenyl)-hexanoic acid; and
- 30 3-Aminomethyl-5-(phenylmethyl)-hexanoic acid.

Another especially preferred embodiment of the invention method uses a compound of Formula IV selected from:

-18-

- (3R,4S)-3-Aminomethyl-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid;
(3R,4S)-3-Aminomethyl-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid MP;
(3S,4S)-3-Aminomethyl-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid;
5 (3R,4R)-3-Aminomethyl-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid MP;
3-Aminomethyl-4-isopropyl-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-4-isopropyl-heptanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-4-isopropyl-octanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-4-isopropyl-nonanoic acid;
10 3-Aminomethyl-4-isopropyl-decanoic acid; and
3-Aminomethyl-4-phenyl-5-methyl-hexanoic acid.

Another preferred embodiment of the invention method uses a compound
of Formula IV selected from:

- (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methoxy-hexanoic acid;
15 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-ethoxy-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-propoxy-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-isopropoxy-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-*tert*-butoxy-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-fluoromethoxy-hexanoic acid;
20 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(2-fluoro-ethoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(3,3,3-trifluoro-propoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-phenoxy-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(4-chloro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
25 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(4-fluoro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(3-fluoro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(2-fluoro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
30 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(3-methoxy-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(2-methoxy-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(4-nitro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(3-nitro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;

- (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(2-nitro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-hydroxy-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-methoxy-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-ethoxy-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
5 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-propoxy-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-isopropoxy-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-*tert*-butoxy-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-fluoromethoxy-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(2-fluoro-ethoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
10 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-(3,3,3-trifluoro-propoxy)-hexanoic
acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-phenoxy-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(4-chloro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
15 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(4-fluoro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(3-fluoro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(2-fluoro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
20 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(3-methoxy-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(2-methoxy-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-phenoxy)-hexanoic
acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-(3-trifluoromethyl-phenoxy)-hexanoic
25 acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-(2-trifluoromethyl-phenoxy)-hexanoic
acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-(4-nitro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-(3-nitro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
30 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-(2-nitro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-benzyloxy-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-hydroxy-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-methoxy-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;

-20-

- (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-ethoxy-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-propoxy-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-isopropoxy-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-*tert*-butoxy-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
5 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-fluoromethoxy-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-fluoro-ethoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-(3,3,3-trifluoro-propoxy)-heptanoic
acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-benzyloxy-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
10 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-phenoxy-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(4-chloro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(4-fluoro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
15 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(3-fluoro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-fluoro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(3- methoxy -phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic
acid;
20 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(2- methoxy -phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic
acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-(4-trifluoromethyl-phenoxy)-
heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-(3-trifluoromethyl-phenoxy)-
25 heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-(2-trifluoromethyl-phenoxy)-
heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-(4-nitro-phenoxy)-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-(3-nitro-phenoxy)-heptanoic acid;
30 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-(2-nitro-phenoxy)-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-phenyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(4-chloro-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(3-chloro-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;

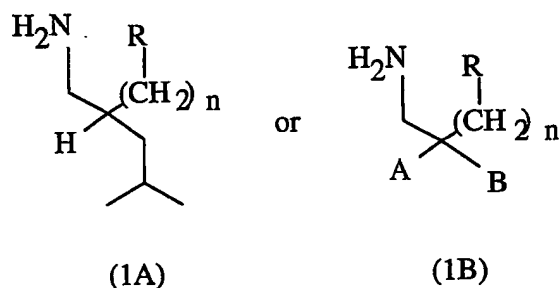
- (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(2-chloro-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(3-methoxy-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(2-methoxy-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
5 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(3-fluoro-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(2-fluoro-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-phenyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(4-chloro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
10 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(3-chloro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-chloro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(3-methoxy-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-methoxy-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
15 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(3-fluoro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-fluoro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-oct-7-enoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-non-8-enoic acid;
20 (E)-(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-oct-6-enoic acid;
(Z)-(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-oct-6-enoic acid;
(Z)-(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-non-6-enoic acid;
(E)-(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-non-6-enoic acid;
(E)-(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-non-7-enoic acid;
25 (Z)-(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-non-7-enoic acid;
(Z)-(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-dec-7-enoic acid;
(E)-(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-undec-7-enoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5,6,6-trimethyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5,6-dimethyl-heptanoic acid;
30 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-cyclopropyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-cyclobutyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-cyclopentyl-hexanoic acid; and
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-cyclohexyl-hexanoic acid.

Still another more preferred embodiment of the invention method utilizes a compound of Formula IV selected from:

- 5 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-nonanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-decanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-undecanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-dodecanoic acid;
10 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5,9-dimethyl-decanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5,7-dimethyl-octanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5,8-dimethyl-nonanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-6-cyclopropyl-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-6-cyclobutyl-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-6-cyclopentyl-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
15 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-6-cyclohexyl-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-cyclopropyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-cyclobutyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-cyclopentyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-cyclohexyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
20 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-8-cyclopropyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-8-cyclobutyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-8-cyclopentyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-8-cyclohexyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
25 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-fluoro-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-8-fluoro-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-9-fluoro-5-methyl-nonanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7,7,7-trifluoro-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-8,8,8-trifluoro-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
30 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-8-phenyl-octanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-phenyl-hexanoic acid; and
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-phenyl-heptanoic acid.

-23-

Another preferred embodiment of the invention method utilizes an α,δ ligand which is a compound of Formulas (1A) or (1B)



5 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof wherein:

n is an integer of from 0 to 2;

R is sulfonamide,

amide,

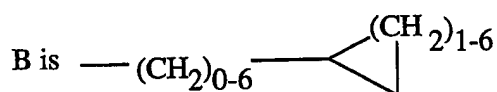
phosphonic acid,

10 heterocycle,

sulfonic acid, or

hydroxamic acid;

A is hydrogen or methyl; and



15 straight or branched alkyl of from 1 to 11 carbons, or

$\text{---}(\text{CH}_2)_{1-4}\text{---Y---}(\text{CH}_2)_{0-4}\text{---phenyl}$ wherein Y is -O-, -S-, -NR'₃ wherein:

R'₃ is alkyl of from 1 to 6 carbons, cycloalkyl of from 3 to 8 carbons, benzyl or phenyl wherein benzyl or phenyl can be unsubstituted or substituted with from 1 to 3 substituents each independently selected from alkyl, alkoxy, halogen, hydroxy, carboxy, carboalkoxy, trifluoromethyl, and nitro.

20

A preferred embodiment utilizes an α,δ ligand which is a compound of Formulas (1A) or (1B), wherein R is a sulfonamide selected from

-24-

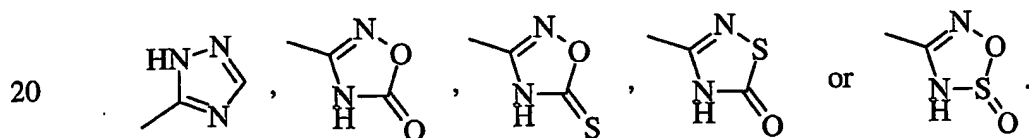
-NHSO₂R¹⁵ and -SO₂NHR¹⁵, wherein R¹⁵ is straight or branched alkyl or trifluoromethyl.

An especially preferred embodiment utilizes a compound of Formulas (1A) or (1B) selected from:

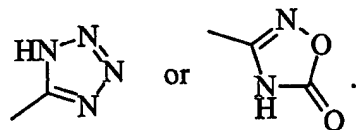
- 5 4-Methyl-2-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-pentylamine;
 3-(2-Aminomethyl-4-methyl-pentyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-thione, HCl;
 (2-Aminomethyl-4-methyl-pentyl)-phosphonic acid;
 3-(3-Amino-2-cyclopentyl-propyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one;
 3-(3-Amino-2-cyclopentyl-propyl)-4H-[1,2,4]thiadiazol-5-one;
 10 2-Cyclopentyl-3-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-2λ⁴-[1,2,3,5]oxathiadiazol-4-yl)-
 propylamine;
 3-(3-Amino-2-cyclobutyl-propyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one;
 3-(3-Amino-2-cyclobutyl-propyl)-4H-[1,2,4]thiadiazol-5-one; and
 2-Cyclobutyl-3-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-2λ⁴-[1,2,3,5]oxathiadiazol-4-yl)-
 15 propylamine.

Another preferred embodiment utilizes a compound of Formulas (1A) or (1B), wherein R is a phosphonic acid, -PO₃H₂.

Another preferred embodiment utilizes a compound of Formulas (1A) or (1B), wherein R is



More preferred is an embodiment that utilizes a compound of Formulas (1A) or (1B), wherein R is

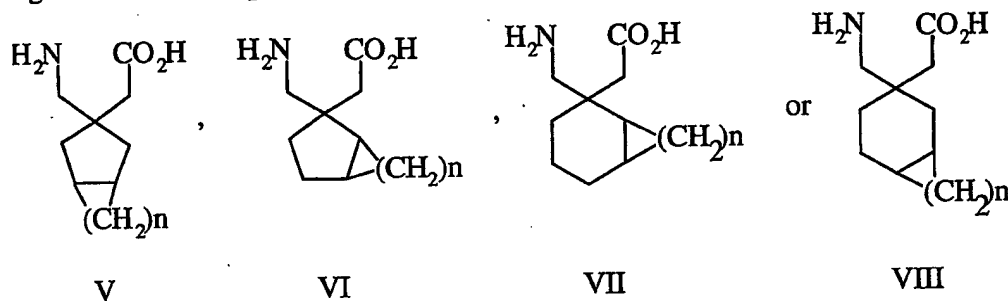


25 Still more preferred is an embodiment that utilizes a compound of Formulas (1A) or (1B) named 3-(2-aminomethyl-4-methyl-pentyl)-4H-[1,3,4]oxadiazol-5-one, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

-25-

Still more preferred is an embodiment that utilizes a compound of Formulas (1A) or (1B) named 3-(2-aminomethyl-4-methyl-pentyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one hydrochloride.

Another embodiment of the present invention utilizes an α,δ ligand that is a compound of Formulas V, VI, VII, or VIII



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein n is integer of from 1 to 4, where there are stereocenters, each center may be independently R or S.

A preferred embodiment utilizes a compound of Formulas V, VI, VII, or VIII, wherein n is an integer of from 2 to 4.

Another preferred embodiment utilizes a compound of Formula V.

A still more preferred embodiment utilizes a compound of Formulas V, VI, VII, or VIII selected from:

- (1 α ,6 α ,8 β)(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-2-yl)-acetic acid;
- (2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-2-yl)-acetic acid;
- (2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-pentalen-2-yl)-acetic acid;
- (2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-pentalen-2-yl)-acetic acid;
- (3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid; and;
- (3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid.
- (2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-2-yl)-acetic acid;

Another still more preferred embodiment utilizes a compound of Formulas V, VI, VII, or VIII selected from:

- (1 α ,5 β)(3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.1.0]hex-3-yl)-acetic acid,
- (1 α ,5 β)(3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
- (1 α ,5 β)(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-pentalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
- (1 α ,6 β)(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-2-yl)-acetic acid,
- (1 α ,7 β)(2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-azulen-2-yl)-acetic acid,

- (1 α ,5 β)(3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.1.0]hex-3-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,5 β)(3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,5 β)(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-pentalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,6 β)(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-2-yl)-acetic acid,
5 (1 α ,7 β)(2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-azulen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,3 α ,5 α)(3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.1.0]hex-3-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,3 α ,5 α)(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-pentalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,6 α ,8 α)(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-2-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,7 α ,9 α)(2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-azulen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
10 (1 α ,3 β ,5 α)(3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.1.0]hex-3-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,3 β ,5 α)(3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,3 β ,5 α)(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-pentalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,6 α ,8 β)(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-2-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,7 α ,9 β)(2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-azulen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
15 ((1R,3R,6R)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.1.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
((1R,3S,6R)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.1.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
((1S,3S,6S)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.1.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
((1S,3R,6S)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.1.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
((1R,3R,6S)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-3-yl)-acetic acid,
20 ((1R,3S,6S)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-3-yl)-acetic acid,
((1S,3S,6R)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-3-yl)-acetic acid,
((1S,3R,6R)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-3-yl)-acetic acid,
((3 α R,5R,7 α S)-5-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-5-yl)-acetic acid,
((3 α R,5S,7 α S)-5-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-5-yl)-acetic acid,
25 ((3 α S,5S,7 α R)-5-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-5-yl)-acetic acid,
((3 α S,5R,7 α R)-5-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-5-yl)-acetic acid,
((2R,4 α S,8 α R)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-naphthalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
((2S,4 α S,8 α R)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-naphthalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
((2S,4 α R,8 α S)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-naphthalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
30 ((2R,4 α R,8 α S)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-naphthalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,

- ((2R,4 α S,9 α R)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)-acetic acid,
- ((2S,4 α S,9 α R)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)-acetic acid,
- 5 ((2S,4 α R,9 α S)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)-acetic acid,
- ((2R,4 α R,9 α S)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)-acetic acid,
- 10 ((1R,3R,6S)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.1.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
- ((1R,3S,6S)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.1.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
- ((1S,3S,6R)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.1.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
- ((1S,3R,6R)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.1.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
- ((1R,3R,6R)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-3-yl)-acetic acid,
- ((1R,3S,6R)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-3-yl)-acetic acid,
- 15 ((1S,3S,6S)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-3-yl)-acetic acid,
- ((1S,3R,6S)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-3-yl)-acetic acid,
- ((3 α R,5R,7 α R)-5-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-5-yl)-acetic acid,
- ((3 α R,5S,7 α R)-5-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-5-yl)-acetic acid,
- ((3 α S,5S,7 α S)-5-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-5-yl)-acetic acid,
- 20 ((3 α S,5R,7 α S)-5-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-5-yl)-acetic acid,
- ((2R,4 α R,8 α R)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-naphthalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
- ((2S,4 α S,8 α R)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-naphthalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
- ((2S,4 α R,8 α S)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-naphthalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
- ((2R,4 α S,8 α S)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-naphthalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
- 25 ((2R,4 α R,9 α R)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)-acetic acid,
- ((2S,4 α R,9 α R)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)-acetic acid,
- ((2S,4 α S,9 α S)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)-acetic acid, and
- 30

-28-

((2R,4 α S,9 α S)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclohepten-2-yl)-acetic acid.

A more preferred embodiment utilizes a compound of Formulas V, VI, VII, or VIII named (1 α ,3 α ,5 α)(3-aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

A still more preferred embodiment utilizes a compound of Formulas V, VI, VII, or VIII named (1 α ,3 α ,5 α)(3-aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid hydrochloride.

Other preferred embodiments of this invention relate to the above described method of treating tinnitus wherein the α_2 ligand that is employed is selected from the following compounds and their pharmaceutically acceptable salts:

- 3-(1-aminomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one;
- (S,S)-(1-aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-acetic acid;
- (R,S)-3-aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
- (S,R)-3-aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
- (3-aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid;
- (3-aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid, wherein the cyclobutyl ring is trans to the methylamine group; and
- C-[1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cycloheptyl]-methylamine.

These compounds can be prepared as described below or in World Patent Application WO 99/21824, published May 6, 1999, World Patent Application WO 00/76958, published December 21, 2000, or World Patent Application WO 01/28978, published April 26, 2001. These applications are incorporated herein by reference in their entireties.

A more preferred embodiment utilizes the hydrochloride salt of the compound 3-(1-aminomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

A preferred α_2 ligand to be utilized in the method of this invention is selected from the cyclic amino acids of Formula I. These are

-29-

described in US Patent No. 4,024,175 and its divisional US Patent No. 4,087,544, which are both incorporated herein by reference.

Another preferred method utilizes an $\alpha_2\delta$ ligand of Formula II, and these compounds are described in US Patent 5,563,175, which is incorporated
5 herein by reference.

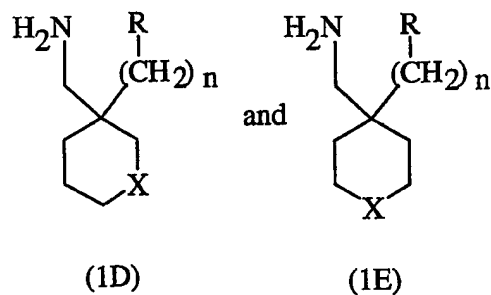
Another preferred method utilizes an $\alpha_2\delta$ ligand of Formula III, IIIC, IIIF, IIIG, or IIIH, and these compounds are described in PCT International Application Publication No. WO 99/31075, which is herein incorporated by
10 reference.

Another preferred method utilizes an $\alpha_2\delta$ ligand of Formula IV, which are described in PCT International Application Publication No. WO 00/76958, which is herein incorporated by reference.

Other preferred $\alpha_2\delta$ ligands to be utilized in the method of the present invention are compounds of Formulas (1A) and (1B), which are described
15 in PCT International Application Publication No. WO 99/31074, which is herein incorporated by reference.

PCT International Application Publication No. WO 01/28978, which is herein incorporated by reference, describes other preferred $\alpha_2\delta$ ligands to be utilized in the method of the present invention, which are compounds of
20 Formulas V, VI, VII, and VIII.

Other preferred $\alpha_2\delta$ ligands for use in the present invention method are described in PCT International Application No. WO 99/31057, which is herein incorporated by reference. Such $\alpha_2\delta$ ligands are compounds of Formula (1D) and (1E)



25

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof wherein:

n is an integer of from 0 to 2;

-30-

R is sulfonamide,

amide,

phosphonic acid,

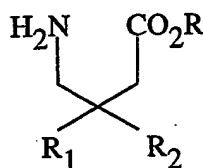
heterocycle,

5 sulfonic acid, or

hydroxamic acid; and

X is -O-, -S-, -S(O)-, -S(O)₂-, or NR'₁ wherein R'₁ is hydrogen, straight or
 10 branched alkyl of from 1 to 6 carbons, benzyl, -C(O)R'₂ wherein R'₂ is
 straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, benzyl or phenyl or
 -CO₂R'₃ wherein R'₃ is straight or branched alkyl of from 1 to 6 carbons,
 or benzyl wherein the benzyl or phenyl groups can be unsubstituted or
 substituted by from 1 to 3 substituents selected from halogen,
 trifluoromethyl, and nitro.

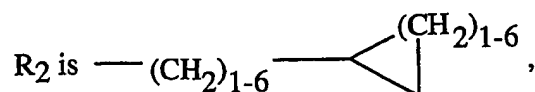
Other preferred alpha2delta ligands that may be utilized in the method of
 15 the present invention are described in PCT International Application No.
 WO 98/17627, which is herein incorporated by reference. This embodiment uses
 an alpha2delta ligand that is a compound of formula



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof wherein:

20 R is hydrogen or lower alkyl;

R₁ is hydrogen or lower alkyl;



straight or branched alkyl of from 7 to 11 carbon atoms, or

-(CH₂)₍₁₋₄₎-X-(CH₂)₍₀₋₄₎-phenyl wherein

25 X is -O-, -S-, -NR₃ wherein

-31-

R_3 is alkyl of from 1 to 6 carbons, cycloalkyl of from 3 to 8 carbons,

benzyl or phenyl;

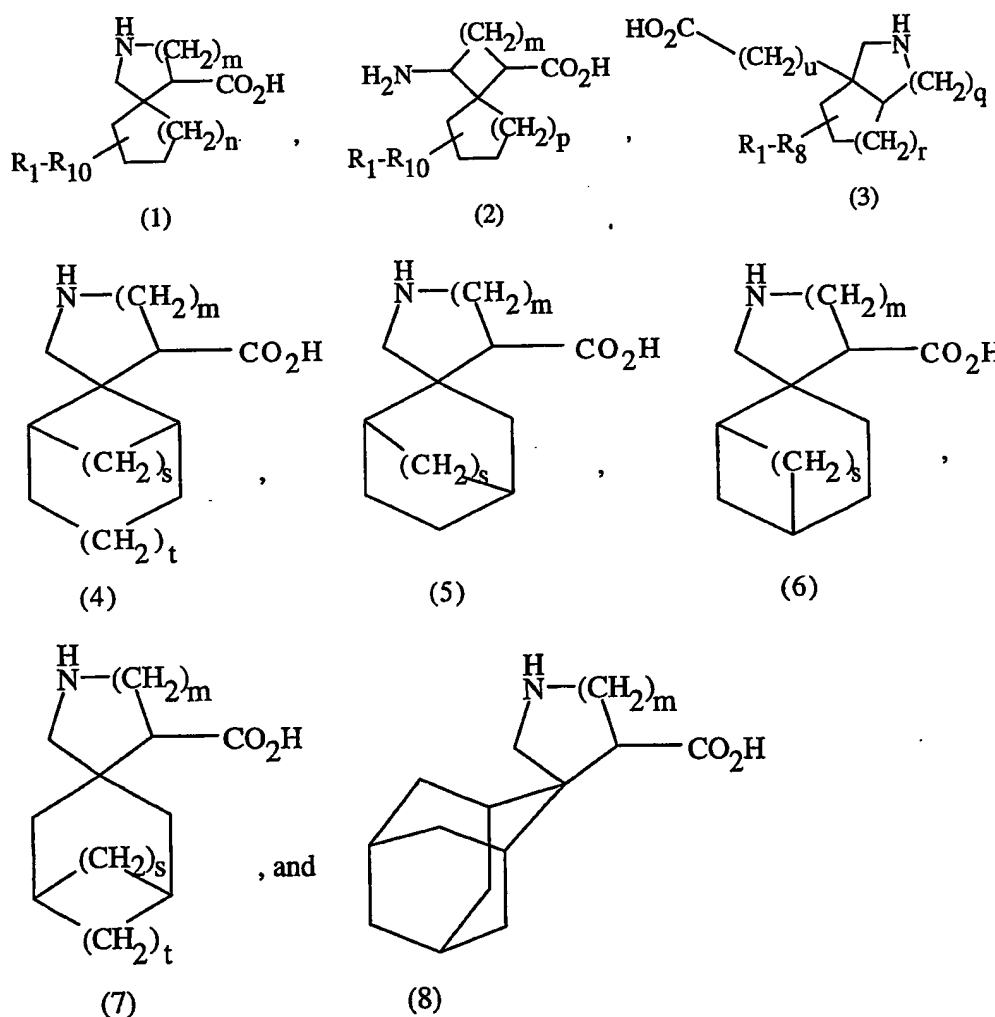
wherein phenyl and benzyl can be unsubstituted or substituted with from 1 to 3 substituents each independently selected from alkyl, alkoxy, halogen, hydroxy, carboxy, carboalkoxy, trifluoromethyl, amino, and nitro.

5

Other preferred $\alpha_2\delta$ ligands that may be utilized in the method of the present invention are described in PCT International Application No.

WO 99/61424, which is herein incorporated by reference. This embodiment of the invention method uses an $\alpha_2\delta$ ligand that is a compound of formula (1),

10



15

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof or a prodrug thereof wherein:

-32-

R₁ to R₁₀ are each independently selected from hydrogen or a straight or branched alkyl of from 1 to 6 carbons, benzyl, or phenyl;

m is an integer of from 0 to 3;

n is an integer of from 1 to 2;

5 o is an integer of from 0 to 3;

p is an integer of from 1 to 2;

q is an integer of from 0 to 2;

r is an integer of from 1 to 2;

s is an integer of from 1 to 3;

10 t is an integer of from 0 to 2; and

u is an integer of from 0 to 1.

All US patents and WO publications referenced above are hereby incorporated by reference.

15 The terms are as defined below or as they otherwise occur in the specification.

It should be appreciated that the terms "uses", "utilizes", and "employs", and their derivatives thereof, are used interchangeably when describing an embodiment of the present invention.

20 The phrase "lower alkyl" means a straight or branched alkyl group or radical having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, and includes methyl, ethyl, *n*-propyl, *i*-propyl, *n*-butyl, *i*-butyl, *sec*-butyl, *tert*-butyl, *n*-pentyl, *n*-hexyl, and the like.

25 The term "alkyl" is a straight or branched group of from 1 to 8 carbon atoms, unless stated otherwise, including but not limited to methyl, ethyl, propyl, *n*-propyl, isopropyl, butyl, 2-butyl, *tert*-butyl, and octyl. Alkyl can be unsubstituted or substituted by hydroxy or from 1 to 3 fluorine atoms. Preferred groups are methyl and ethyl.

30 The term "alkenyl" is a straight or branched group of from 2 to 8 carbon atoms containing 1 or 2 or 3 double bonds including but not limited to ethenyl, propen-1-yl, propen-2-yl, propen-3-yl, 1-hexen-3-yl, and hept-1,3-dien-7-yl. Alkenyl can be unsubstituted or substituted by from 1 to 3 fluorine atoms.

The term "cycloalkyl" means a cyclic group of from 3 to 7 carbon atoms including but not limited to cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, and cycloheptyl.

-33-

The benzyl and phenyl groups may be unsubstituted or substituted with from 1 to 3 groups each independently selected from halogen, especially fluoro, alkoxy, alkyl, and NH_2 .

Halogen includes fluorine, chlorine, bromine, and iodine.

5 The term "alkoxy" means the group -O-alkyl wherein alkyl is as defined above.

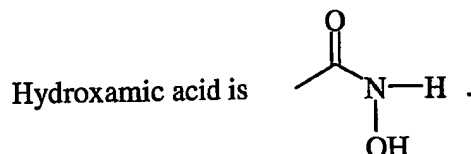
The terms used to define the invention of compounds of Formulas (1A), (1B), III, IIIC, IIIF, IIIG, and IIIH are as described below.

10 Sulfonamides are those of formula $\text{-NHSO}_2\text{R}^{15}$ or $\text{-SO}_2\text{NHR}^{15}$ wherein R^{15} is a straight or branched alkyl group of from 1 to 6 carbons or a trifluoromethyl.

Amides are compounds of formula -NHCOR^{12} wherein R^{12} is straight or branched alkyl of from 1 to 6 carbons, benzyl, and phenyl.

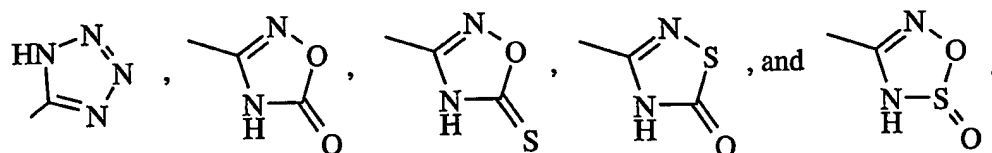
Phosphonic acids are $\text{-PO}_3\text{H}_2$.

15 Sulfonic acids are $\text{-SO}_3\text{H}$.



Heterocycles are groups of from 1 to 2 rings, with from 1 to 6 heteroatoms selected from oxygen, nitrogen, and sulfur.

Preferred heterocycles are



The term alkyl is a straight or branched group of from 1 to 11 carbon atoms including but not limited to methyl, ethyl, propyl, n-propyl, isopropyl, butyl, 2-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, and n-hexyl, heptyl, octyl, nonyl, decyl, and undecyl except as where otherwise stated.

25 The cycloalkyl groups are from 3 to 8 carbons and are cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, and cyclooctyl unless otherwise stated.

-34-

The benzyl and phenyl groups may be unsubstituted or substituted by from 1 to 3 substituents selected from hydroxy, carboxy, carboalkoxy, halogen, CF₃, nitro, alkyl, and alkoxy. Preferred are halogens.

Alkoxy is as defined above for alkyl.

5 Halogen is fluorine, chlorine, and bromine and preferred are fluorine and chlorine.

Carboalkoxy is -COOalkyl wherein alkyl is as described above. Preferred are carbomethoxy and carboethoxy.

10 The degree of binding to the $\alpha 2\delta$ subunit can be determined using the radioligand binding assay using [3H]gabapentin and the $\alpha 2\delta$ subunit derived from porcine brain tissue, as described by N. S. Gee *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 1996, 271:5879-5776.

15 The ability of a compound to treat tinnitus can be evaluated using the method described by Carol A. Bauer in "Assessing Tinnitus and Prospective Tinnitus Therapeutics Using a Psychological Animal Model", *Journal of the Association for Research in Otolaryngology*, 2/1:054-064 (2001).

20 All that is required to practice the method of this invention is to administer an $\alpha 2\delta$ ligand, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, in an amount that is therapeutically effective to treat tinnitus. Such tinnitus-treating amount will generally be from about 1 to about 300 mg/kg of subject body weight. Typical doses will be from about 10 to about 5000 mg/day for an adult subject of normal weight. In a clinical setting, regulatory agencies such as, for example, the Food and Drug Administration ("FDA") in the U.S. may require a particular therapeutically effective amount.

25 In determining what constitutes an effective amount or a therapeutically effective amount of an $\alpha 2\delta$ ligand, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, for treating tinnitus according to the invention method, a number of factors will generally be considered by the medical practitioner or veterinarian in view of the experience of the medical practitioner or veterinarian, published
30 clinical studies, the subject's (ie, mammal's) age, sex, weight and general condition, as well as the type and extent of the disease, disorder or condition being treated, and the use of other medications, if any, by the subject. As such, the

-35-

administered dose may fall within the ranges or concentrations recited above, or may vary outside, *i.e.*, either below or above, those ranges depending upon the requirements of the individual subject, the severity of the condition being treated, and the particular therapeutic formulation being employed. Determination of a proper dose for a particular situation is within the skill of the medical or veterinary arts. Generally, treatment may be initiated using smaller dosages of the alpha2delta ligand that are less than optimum for a particular subject. Thereafter, the dosage can be increased by small increments until the optimum effect under the circumstance is reached. For convenience, the total daily dosage may be divided and administered in portions during the day, if desired.

Pharmaceutical compositions of an alpha2delta ligand, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, are produced by formulating the active compound in dosage unit form with a pharmaceutical carrier. Some examples of dosage unit forms are tablets, capsules, pills, powders, aqueous and nonaqueous oral solutions and suspensions, and parenteral solutions packaged in containers containing either one or some larger number of dosage units and capable of being subdivided into individual doses.

Some examples of suitable pharmaceutical carriers, including pharmaceutical diluents, are gelatin capsules; sugars such as lactose and sucrose; starches such as corn starch and potato starch; cellulose derivatives such as sodium carboxymethyl cellulose, ethyl cellulose, methyl cellulose, and cellulose acetate phthalate; gelatin; talc; stearic acid; magnesium stearate; vegetable oils such as peanut oil, cottonseed oil, sesame oil, olive oil, corn oil, and oil of theobroma; propylene glycol, glycerin; sorbitol; polyethylene glycol; water; agar; alginic acid; isotonic saline, and phosphate buffer solutions; as well as other compatible substances normally used in pharmaceutical formulations.

The compositions to be employed in the invention can also contain other components such as coloring agents, flavoring agents, and/or preservatives. These materials, if present, are usually used in relatively small amounts. The compositions can, if desired, also contain other therapeutic agents commonly employed to treat tinnitus. Further, the compositions can, if desired, also contain other therapeutic agents commonly employed to treat secondary symptoms such as, for example, depression or anxiety that may or may not accompany tinnitus.

-36-

For example, the compositions may contain aspirin, naprosyn, or similar anti-inflammatory analgesic agents.

5 The percentage of the active ingredients in the foregoing compositions can be varied within wide limits, but for practical purposes it is preferably present in a concentration of at least 10% in a solid composition and at least 2% in a primary liquid composition. The most satisfactory compositions are those in which a much higher proportion of the active ingredient is present, for example, up to about 95%.

10 Preferred routes of administration of an alpha2delta ligand, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, are oral or parenteral. For example, a useful intravenous dose is between 5 and 50 mg, and a useful oral dosage is between 20 and 800 mg. The dosage is within the dosing range used in treatment of diseases resulting in tinnitus such as osteoarthritis, or as would be determined by the needs of the patient as described by the physician.

15 The alpha2delta ligand, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, may be administered in any form. Preferably, administration is in unit dosage form. A unit dosage form of the alpha2delta ligand, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, to be used in this invention may also comprise other compounds useful in the therapy of diseases resulting in tinnitus.

20 The advantages of using a compound of Formulas I, II, III, IIIC, IIIF, IIIG, IIHH, IV, (1A), (1B), V, VI, VII, or VIII, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, including gabapentin, pregabalin, 3-(1-aminomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one hydrochloride, 3-(1-aminomethyl-cycloheptylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one hydrochloride, C-[1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cycloheptyl]-methylamine, 3-(2-aminomethyl-4-methyl-pentyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one hydrochloride, (1 α ,3 α ,5 α)(3-aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid hydrochloride, or (3S,5R)-3-aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid, in the instant invention include the relatively nontoxic nature of the compounds, the ease of preparation, the fact that the compounds are well-tolerated, and the ease of IV and oral administration of the drugs. Further, typically the drugs are not metabolized in the body.

25

30

-37-

The invention method is useful in human and veterinary medicines for treating or preventing tinnitus in a mammal. A mammal includes humans, cats, dogs, horses, cows, pigs, and sheep.

5 Some of the compounds utilized in a method of the present invention are capable of further forming pharmaceutically acceptable salts, including, but not limited to, acid addition and/or base salts. The acid addition salts are formed from basic compounds, whereas the base addition salts are formed from acidic compounds. All of these forms are within the scope of the compounds useful in the method of the present invention.

10 Pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salts of the basic compounds useful in the method of the present invention include nontoxic salts derived from inorganic acids such as hydrochloric, nitric, phosphoric, sulfuric, hydrobromic, hydroiodic, hydrofluoric, phosphorous, and the like, as well nontoxic salts derived from organic acids, such as aliphatic mono- and dicarboxylic acids, phenyl-
15 substituted alkanoic acids, hydroxy alkanoic acids, alkanedioic acids, aromatic acids, aliphatic and aromatic sulfonic acids, etc. Such salts thus include sulfate, pyrosulfate, bisulfate, sulfite, bisulfite, nitrate, phosphate, monohydrogenphosphate, dihydrogenphosphate, metaphosphate, pyrophosphate, chloride, bromide, iodide, acetate, trifluoroacetate, propionate, caprylate,
20 isobutyrate, oxalate, malonate, succinate, suberate, sebacate, fumarate, maleate, mandelate, benzoate, chlorobenzoate, methylbenzoate, dinitrobenzoate, phthalate, benzenesulfonate, toluenesulfonate, phenylacetate, citrate, lactate, malate, tartrate, methanesulfonate, and the like. Also contemplated are salts of amino acids such as arginate and the like and gluconate, galacturonate (see, for example, Berge S.M. et al., "Pharmaceutical Salts," *J. of Pharma. Sci.*, 1977;66:1).
25

An acid addition salt of a basic compound useful in the method of the present invention is prepared by contacting the free base form of the compound with a sufficient amount of a desired acid to produce a nontoxic salt in the conventional manner. The free base form of the compound may be regenerated by
30 contacting the acid addition salt so formed with a base, and isolating the free base form of the compound in the conventional manner. The free base forms of compounds prepared according to a process of the present invention differ from their respective acid addition salt forms somewhat in certain physical properties

-38-

such as solubility, crystal structure, hygroscopicity, and the like, but otherwise free base forms of the compounds and their respective acid addition salt forms are equivalent for purposes of the present invention.

5 A pharmaceutically acceptable base addition salt of an acidic compound useful in the method of the present invention may be prepared by contacting the free acid form of the compound with a nontoxic metal cation such as an alkali or alkaline earth metal cation, or an amine, especially an organic amine. Examples of suitable metal cations include sodium cation (Na^+), potassium cation (K^+), magnesium cation (Mg^{2+}), calcium cation (Ca^{2+}), and the like. Examples of
10 suitable amines are N,N'-dibenzylethylenediamine, chlorprocaine, choline, diethanolamine, dicyclohexylamine, ethylenediamine, N-methylglucamine, and procaine (see, for example, Berge, supra., 1977).

A base addition salt of an acidic compound useful in the method of the present invention may be prepared by contacting the free acid form of the
15 compound with a sufficient amount of a desired base to produce the salt in the conventional manner. The free acid form of the compound may be regenerated by contacting the salt form so formed with an acid, and isolating the free acid of the compound in the conventional manner. The free acid forms of the compounds useful in the method of the present invention differ from their respective salt
20 forms somewhat in certain physical properties such as solubility, crystal structure, hygroscopicity, and the like, but otherwise the salts are equivalent to their respective free acid for purposes of the present invention.

Certain of the compounds useful in the method of the present invention can exist in unsolvated forms as well as solvated forms, including hydrated forms.
25 In general, the solvated forms, including hydrated forms, are equivalent to unsolvated forms and are intended to be encompassed within the scope of the present invention.

Certain of the compounds useful in the method of the present invention possess one or more chiral centers, and each center may exist in the R or S
30 configuration. A method of the present invention may utilize any diastereomeric, enantiomeric, or epimeric form of an $\alpha^2\delta$ ligand, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, as well as mixtures thereof.

Additionally, certain compounds useful in the method of the present invention may exist as geometric isomers such as the entgegen (E) and zusammen (Z) isomers of alkenyl groups. A method of the present invention may utilize any cis, trans, syn, anti, entgegen (E), or zusammen (Z) isomer of an
5 alpha2delta ligand, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, as well as mixtures thereof.

Certain compounds useful in the method of the present invention can exist as two or more tautomeric forms. Tautomeric forms of the compounds may interchange, for example, via enolization/de-enolization and the like. A method of
10 the present invention may utilize any tautomeric form of an alpha2delta ligand, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, as well as mixtures thereof.

Intermediates for the synthesis of an alpha2delta ligand, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, useful in the invention method, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, may be prepared by one of ordinary
15 skill in the art of organic chemistry by adapting various synthetic procedures that are well-known in the art of organic chemistry. These synthetic procedures may be found in the literature in, for example, *Reagents for Organic Synthesis*, by Fieser and Fieser, John Wiley & Sons, Inc, New York, 2000; *Comprehensive Organic Transformations*, by Richard C. Larock, VCH Publishers, Inc, New
20 York, 1989; the series *Compendium of Organic Synthetic Methods*, 1989, by Wiley-Interscience; the text *Advanced Organic Chemistry*, 4th edition, by Jerry March, Wiley-Interscience, New York, 1992; or the *Handbook of Heterocyclic Chemistry* by Alan R. Katritzky, Pergamon Press Ltd, London, 1985, to name a few. Alternatively, a skilled artisan may find methods useful for preparing the
25 intermediates in the chemical literature by searching widely available databases such as, for example, those available from the *Chemical Abstracts Service*, Columbus, Ohio, or *MDL Information Systems GmbH* (formerly *Beilstein Information Systems GmbH*), Frankfurt, Germany.

Preparations of the compounds useful in a method of the present invention
30 may use starting materials, reagents, solvents, and catalysts that may be purchased from commercial sources or they may be readily prepared by adapting procedures in the references or resources cited above. Commercial sources of starting

-40-

materials, reagents, solvents, and catalysts useful in preparing invention compounds include, for example, *The Aldrich Chemical Company*, and other subsidiaries of Sigma-Aldrich Corporation, St. Louis, Missouri, *BACHEM*, *BACHEM A.G.*, Switzerland, or *Lancaster Synthesis Ltd*, United Kingdom.

5 Syntheses of some compounds useful in the method of the present invention may utilize starting materials, intermediates, or reaction products that contain a reactive functional group. During chemical reactions, a reactive functional group may be protected using protecting groups that render the reactive group substantially inert to the reaction conditions employed. A protecting group
10 is introduced onto a starting material prior to carrying out the reaction step for which a protecting group is needed. Once the protecting group is no longer needed, the protecting group can be removed. It is well within the ordinary skill in the art to introduce protecting groups during a synthesis of an $\alpha^2\delta$ ligand, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, and then later remove them.
15 Procedures for introducing and removing protecting groups are known and referenced such as, for example, in *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, 2nd ed., Greene T.W. and Wuts P.G., John Wiley & Sons, New York: New York, 1991, which is hereby incorporated by reference. Thus, for example, protecting groups such as the following may be utilized to protect amino, hydroxyl, and other
20 groups: carboxylic acyl groups such as, for example, formyl, acetyl, and trifluoroacetyl; alkoxycarbonyl groups such as, for example, ethoxycarbonyl, *tert*-butoxycarbonyl (BOC), β,β,β -trichloroethoxycarbonyl (TCEC), and β -iodoethoxycarbonyl; aralkyloxycarbonyl groups such as, for example, benzyloxycarbonyl (CBZ), *para*-methoxybenzyloxycarbonyl, and
25 9-fluorenylmethyloxycarbonyl (FMOC); trialkylsilyl groups such as, for example, trimethylsilyl (TMS) and *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl (TBDMS); and other groups such as, for example, triphenylmethyl (trityl), tetrahydropyranyl, vinyloxycarbonyl, *ortho*-nitrophenylsulfenyl, diphenylphosphinyl, *para*-toluenesulfonyl (Ts), mesyl, trifluoromethanesulfonyl, and benzyl. Examples of procedures for removal of
30 protecting groups include hydrogenolysis of CBZ groups using, for example, hydrogen gas at 50 psi in the presence of a hydrogenation catalyst such as 10% palladium on carbon, acidolysis of BOC groups using, for example, hydrogen

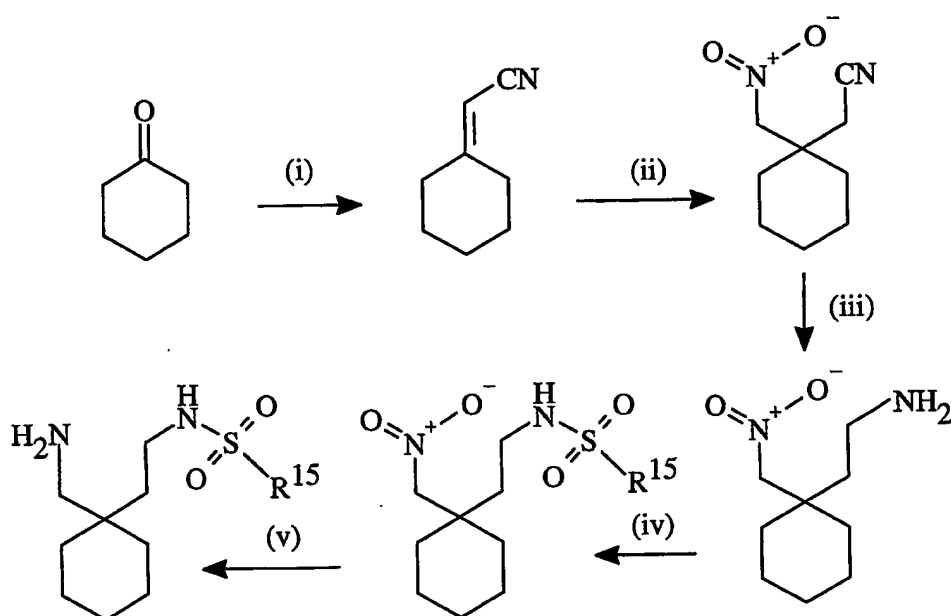
-41-

chloride in dichloromethane, trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) in dichloromethane, and the like, reaction of silyl groups with fluoride ions, and reductive cleavage of TCEC groups with zinc metal.

Preparations of an $\alpha_2\delta$ ligand, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, useful in the method of the present invention are incorporated by reference to the patents or patent application publications described above, or are illustrated in the Schemes below.

Compounds of Formulas III, IIIC, IIIF, IIIG, and IIIH may be prepared according to the following methods. Sulfonamides can be synthesized by the general route outlined in Scheme 1.

Scheme 1

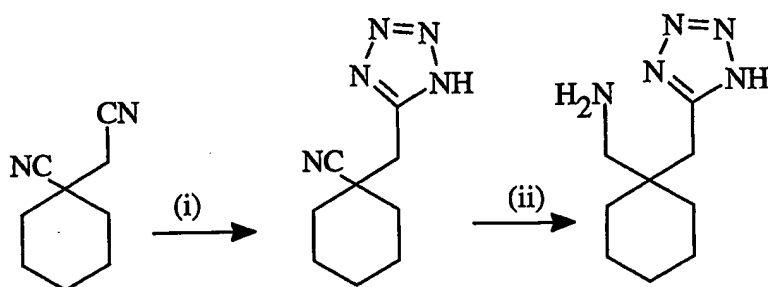


Reagents:

- (i) Diethylcyanomethyl phosphonate, NaH, tetrahydrofuran;
- (ii) Nitromethane, tetrabutylammonium fluoride, tetrahydrofuran;
- (iii) Borane methyl sulphide, toluene;
- (iv) Triethylamine, $R^{15}SO_2Cl$, tetrahydrofuran;
- (v) 10% Pd-C, hydrogen gas, methanol.

Tetrazoles can be synthesized by the general route outlined in Scheme 2.

Scheme 2



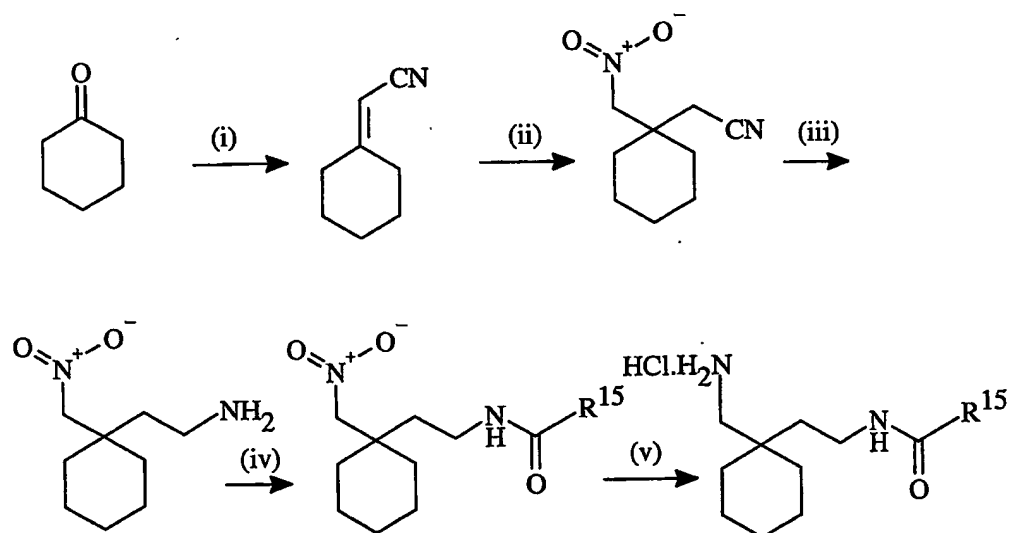
Reagents:

(i) Trimethylsilylazide, Trimethylaluminium (2M in hexanes), toluene;

5 (ii) Raney Nickel, Methanol.

Amides can be synthesized by the general route outlined in Scheme 3.

Scheme 3



Reagents:

10 (i) Diethylcyanomethyl phosphonate, NaH, tetrahydrofuran;

(ii) Nitromethane, tetrabutylammonium fluoride, tetrahydrofuran;

(iii) Borane methyl sulphide, toluene;

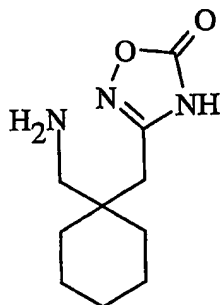
(iv) Triethylamine, R¹⁵COCl, tetrahydrofuran;

(v)

-43-

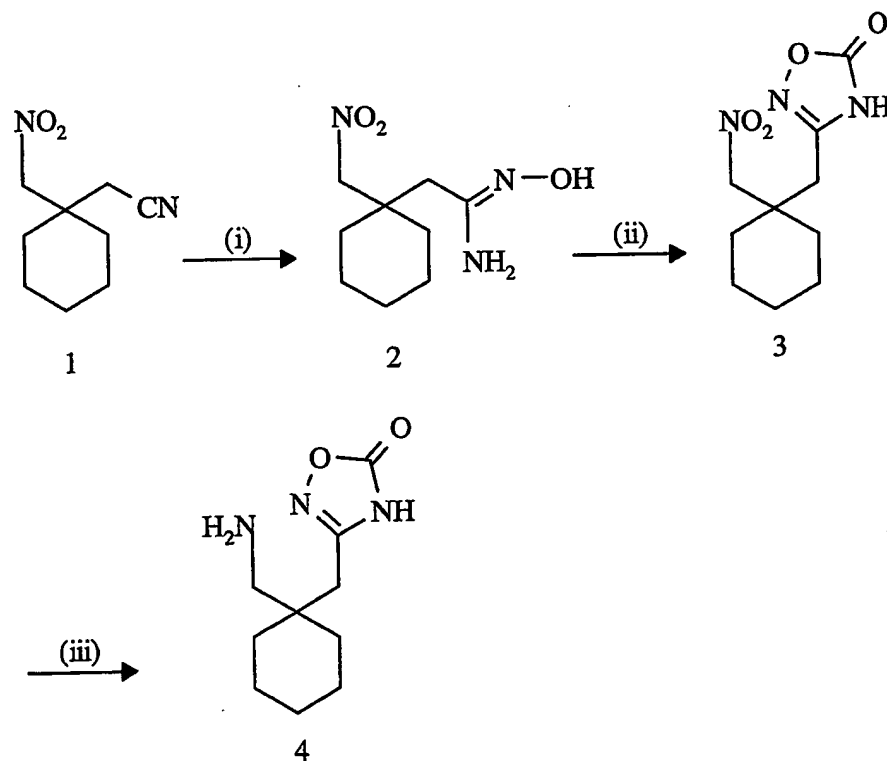
(v) 10% Pd-C, hydrogen gas, methanol.

Heterocycles such as



can be synthesized by the general route outlined in Scheme 4.

5 Scheme 4



(i) $\text{NH}_2\text{OH}\cdot\text{HCl}$, Et_3N ;

(ii) $i\text{BuOCOCl}$, pyridine followed by reflux in xylene;

(iii) Fe/HCl .

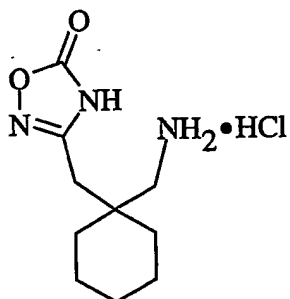
-44-

Compound 1 [(1-nitromethyl-cyclohexyl)acetonitrile] can be treated with hydroxylamine hydrochloride in the presence of a base such as triethylamine to give compound 2.

5 The heterocyclic compound 3 can be prepared from compound 2 by treatment with iso-butyl chloroformate in the presence of a base such as pyridine followed by reflux in a solvent such as xylene. The nitro compound (compound 3) can be converted to the required amine by reduction, for example, with iron and hydrochloric acid.

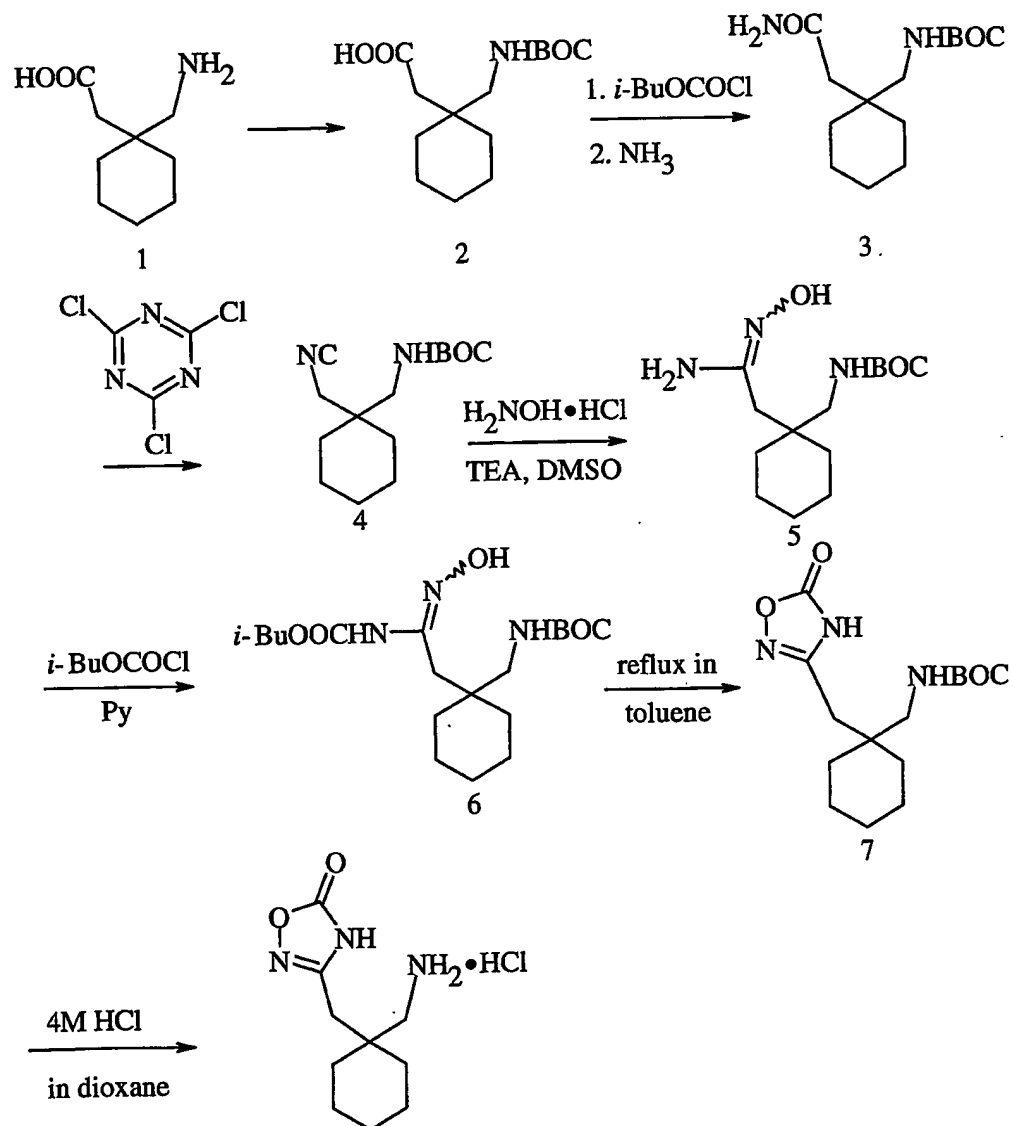
-45-

Heterocycles such as

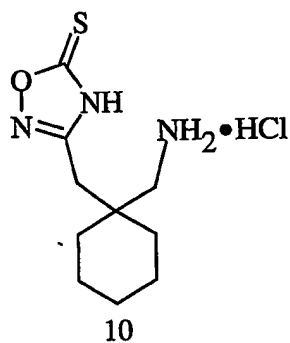


can be synthesized by the general route outlined in Scheme 5a.

Scheme 5a

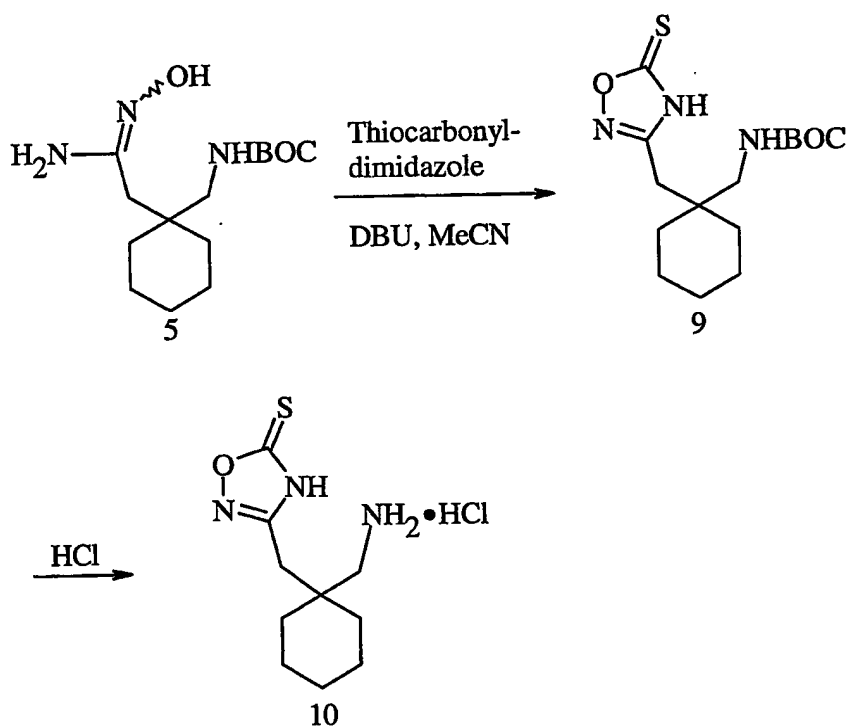


Heterocycles such as



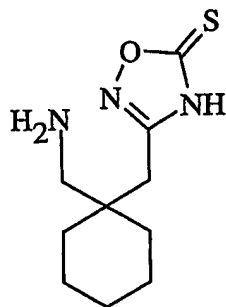
can be synthesized by the general route outlined in Scheme 5b.

Scheme 5b



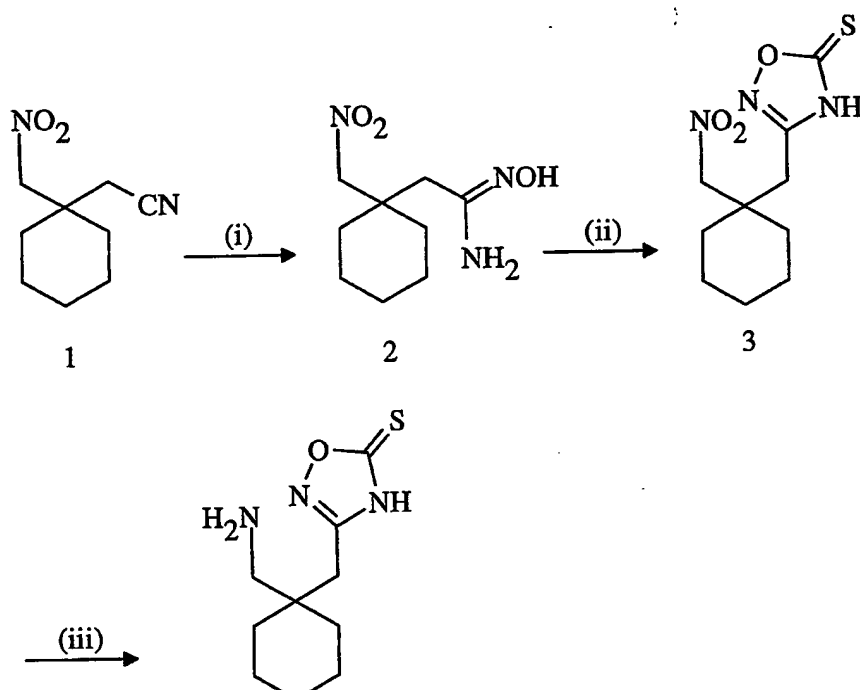
-47-

Heterocycles such as



can be synthesized by the general route shown in Scheme 6 below:

Scheme 6



5

- (i) $\text{NH}_2\text{OH}\cdot\text{HCl}$, Et_3N ;
- (ii) 1,1'-thiocarbonyldiimidazole followed by DBU or DBN;
- (iii) Fe/HCl .

Compound 1 [(nitromethyl-cyclohexyl)acetonitrile] can be treated with hydroxylamine hydrochloride in the presence of a base such as triethylamine to give compound 2.

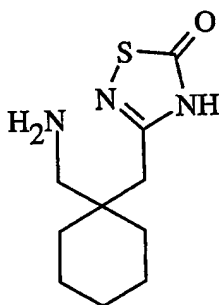
10

-48-

The heterocyclic compound 3 can be prepared from compound 2 by treatment with 1,1'-thiocarbonyldiimidazole followed by a base such as 1,8-diazabicyclo-[4,5,0]-undec-7-ene (DBU) or 1,5-diazabicyclo[2.2.2]octane (DBN).

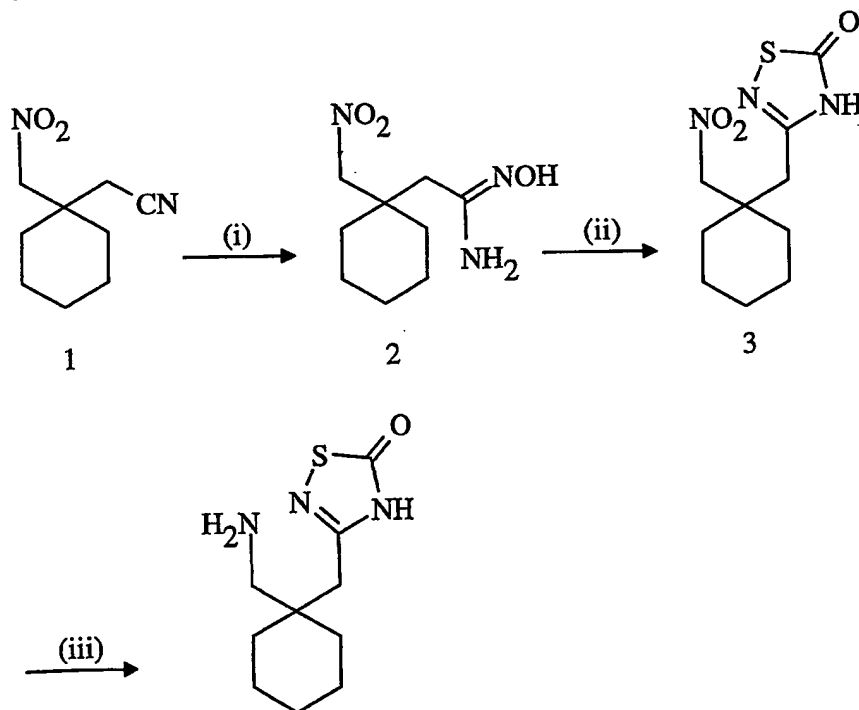
5 The nitro compound (compound 3) can be converted to the required amine by reduction, for example, with iron and hydrochloric acid.

Heterocycles such as



can be synthesized following the general route as shown in Scheme 7.

10 Scheme 7



-49-

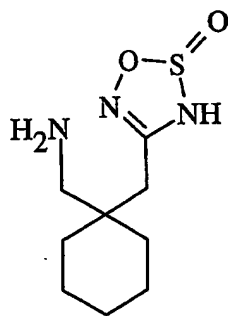
- (i) $\text{NH}_2\text{OH}\cdot\text{HCl}$, Et_3N ;
- (ii) 1,1'-thiocarbonyldiimidazole followed by silica gel or $\text{BF}_3\cdot\text{OEt}_2$;
- (iii) Fe/HCl .

5 Compound 1 [(nitromethyl-cyclohexyl)acetonitrile] can be treated with hydroxylamine hydrochloride in the presence of a base such as triethylamine to give compound 2.

The heterocyclic compound 3 can be prepared from compound 2 by treatment with 1,1'-thiocarbonyldiimidazole followed by treatment with silica gel or boron trifluoride etherate.

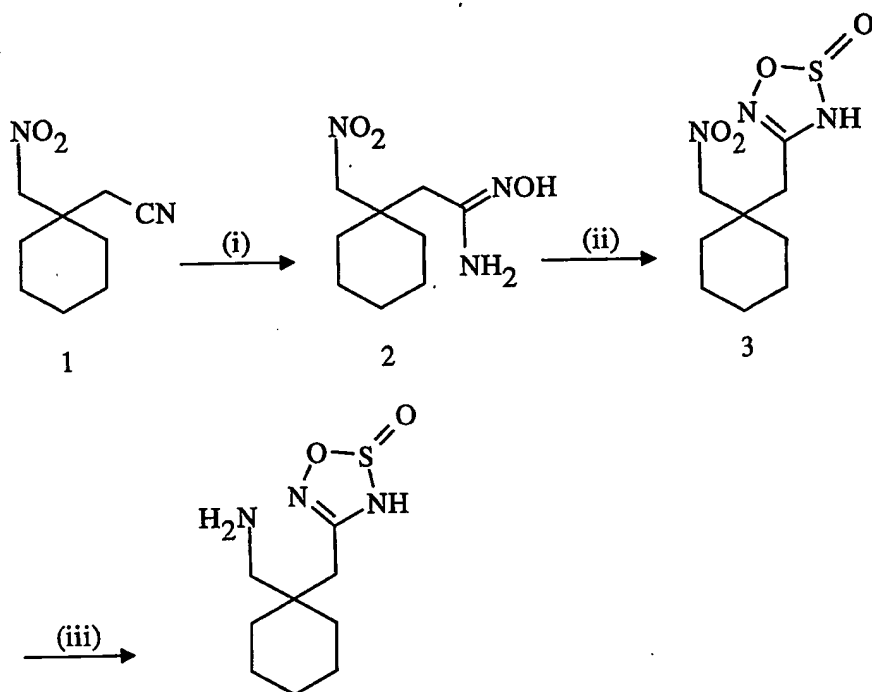
10 The nitro compound (compound 3) can be converted to the required amine by reduction, for example, with iron and hydrochloric acid.

Heterocycles such as



can be synthesized following the general route outlined in Scheme 8:

Scheme 8



(i) $\text{NH}_2\text{OH}\cdot\text{HCl}$, Et_3N ;

(ii) Pyridine, SOCl_2 ;

(iii) Fe/HCl .

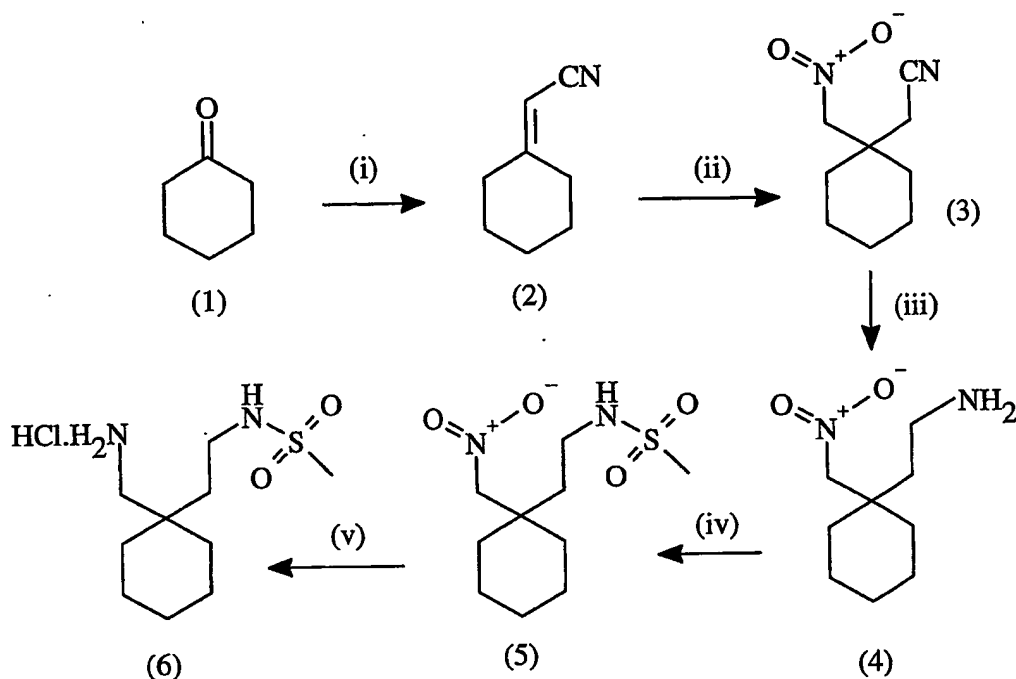
Compound 1 [(nitromethyl-cyclohexyl)acetonitrile] can be treated with hydroxylamine hydrochloride in the presence of a base such as triethylamine to give compound 2.

The heterocyclic compound 3 can be prepared from compound 2 by treatment with thionyl chloride in the presence of a base such as pyridine.

The nitro compound (compound 3) can be converted to the required amine by reduction, for example, with iron and hydrochloric acid.

The following examples are illustrative of the preparation of compounds of Formulas III, IIIC, IIIF, IIIG, or IIIH; they are not intended to limit the scope.

EXAMPLE 1



Reagents:

- (i) Diethylcyanomethyl phosphonate, NaH, tetrahydrofuran;
- (ii) Nitromethane, tetrabutylammonium fluoride, tetrahydrofuran;
- (iii) Borane methyl sulphide, toluene;
- (iv) Triethylamine, methanesulphonyl chloride, tetrahydrofuran;
- (v) 10% Pd-C, hydrogen gas, methanol then HCl.

Cyclohexylidene-acetonitrile (2)

Sodium hydride (60% in oil, 0.80 g, 20 mmol) was suspended in 50 mL tetrahydrofuran and chilled in ice under nitrogen. Diethylcyanomethyl phosphonate (3.85 g, 22 mmol) was added dropwise in 10 mL tetrahydrofuran and stirring continued for 15 minutes to give a clear solution. Cyclohexanone (1.90 g, 19 mmol) was added in 5 mL tetrahydrofuran and the reaction mixture allowed to warm up to room temperature. The liquor was decanted and the residue washed three times with ether. The liquor and washings were combined, washed with dilute hydrochloric acid and water, dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered, and evaporated to dryness. The residue was purified by chromatography on silica

-52-

eluting with heptane/ethyl acetate 4:1 to give the required product as a colorless oil (1.5 g, 67%).

^1H NMR 400 MHz (CDCl_3): δ 1.50 (m, 6H), 2.25 (t, $J = 5.6$ Hz, 2H), 2.49 (t, $J = 6.8$ Hz, 2H), 5.04 (s, 1H).

5 IR ν_{max} 2933, 2859, 2217, 1633, 1449

(1-Nitromethyl-cyclohexyl)-acetonitrile (3)

The nitrile (compound 2, 0.78 g, 6.44 mmol), nitromethane (0.80 g, 13.11 mmol) and tetrabutyl ammonium fluoride (1.0 M in tetrahydrofuran, 10 mL, 10 mmol) were heated in 20 mL tetrahydrofuran to 70°C overnight. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with dilute hydrochloric acid and water, dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered, and evaporated to dryness. The residue was purified by chromatography on silica eluting with heptane/ethyl acetate 3:1 to give the required product as a yellow oil (0.83 g, 71%).

^1H NMR 400 MHz (CDCl_3): δ 1.57 (s, 10H), 2.63 (s, 2H), 4.52 (s, 2H).

15 Analysis calculated for $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{13}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2$:

C, 59.32; H, 7.74; N, 15.37.

Found: C, 59.40; H, 7.65; N, 15.18.

2-(1-Nitromethyl-cyclohexyl)-ethylamine (4)

Borane methyl sulphide (2.0 M in toluene, 1.3 mL, 2.6 mmol) was added to compound 3 (0.4 g, 2.2 mmol) in toluene (10 mL) under nitrogen. After heating to 60°C for 3 hours, the mixture was allowed to cool, and 15 mL methanol was added followed by 15 mL 4 M HCl in dioxane. After reflux for 1 hour, the mixture was evaporated to dryness. Crystallization from ethyl acetate gave the required product as colorless crystals (0.23 g, 47%); mp 170-173°C.

25 ^1H NMR 400 MHz (d_6 -DMSO): δ 1.30-1.50 (m, 10H), 1.64-1.69 (m, 2H), 2.82-2.86 (m, 2H), 4.57 (s, 2H), 7.89 (s, 3H).

Analysis calculated for $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{18}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2 \cdot \text{HCl} \cdot 0.2\text{H}_2\text{O}$:

C, 47.77; H, 8.64; N, 12.38.

Found: C, 47.80; H, 8.66; N, 12.64.

-53-

N-[2-(1-Nitromethyl-cyclohexyl)-ethyl]-methanesulfonamide (5)

Triethylamine (0.64 g, 6.3 mmol) was added dropwise to a mixture of the amine hydrochloride salt (compound 4, 0.70 g, 3.1 mmol) and methane sulfonyl chloride (0.36 g, 6.3 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (35 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 2 hours, the mixture was filtered, diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with dilute hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, and water, dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered, and evaporated to dryness. The residue was crystallized from ethyl acetate/heptane to give colorless crystals (0.39 g, 47%); mp 86-88°C.

¹H NMR 400 MHz (d₆-DMSO): δ 1.35-1.50 (m, 10H), 1.55-1.60 (m, 2H), 2.89 (s, 3H), 2.99-3.06 (m, 2H), 4.55 (s, 2H), 6.93 (t, J = 6 Hz, 1H).

Analysis calculated for C₁₀H₂₀N₂O₄S:

C, 45.44; H, 7.63; N, 10.60; S, 12.13.

Found: C, 45.77; H, 7.64; N, 10.58; S, 12.17.

N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-cyclohexyl)-ethyl]-methanesulfonamide hydrochloride (6)

Ten percent Palladium on carbon was added under nitrogen to a solution of compound 5 (0.35 g, 1.3 mmol) in methanol (50 mL). The mixture was shaken under 40 psi hydrogen for 6 hours and then filtered through keiselguhr. The filtrate was evaporated to dryness. 4N HCl in dioxane was added followed by ether to give the product as a colorless crystalline solid (0.33 g, 92%); mp 196-199°C.

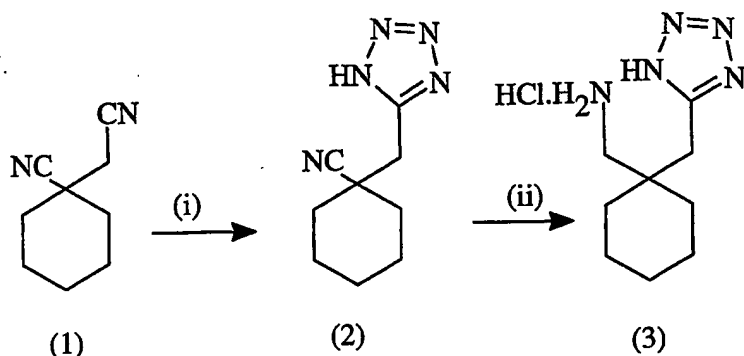
¹H NMR 400 MHz (d₆-DMSO): δ 1.25-1.45 (m, 10H), 1.55-1.60 (m, 5H), 2.70-2.75 (m, 2H), 2.90-2.95 (m, 5H), 6.86 (t, J = 6.0 Hz, 1H), 7.86 (bs, 3H).

Analysis calculated for C₁₀H₂₂N₂O₂S•HCl•0.25H₂O:

C, 43.63; H, 8.60; N, 10.17.

Found: C, 43.43; H, 8.64; N, 9.95.

EXAMPLE 2



Reagents:

- (i) Trimethylsilylazide, trimethylaluminum (2 M in hexanes), toluene;
 (ii) Raney Nickel, hydrogen gas, methanol then HCl.

1-(1H-Tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cyclohexanecarbonitrile (2)

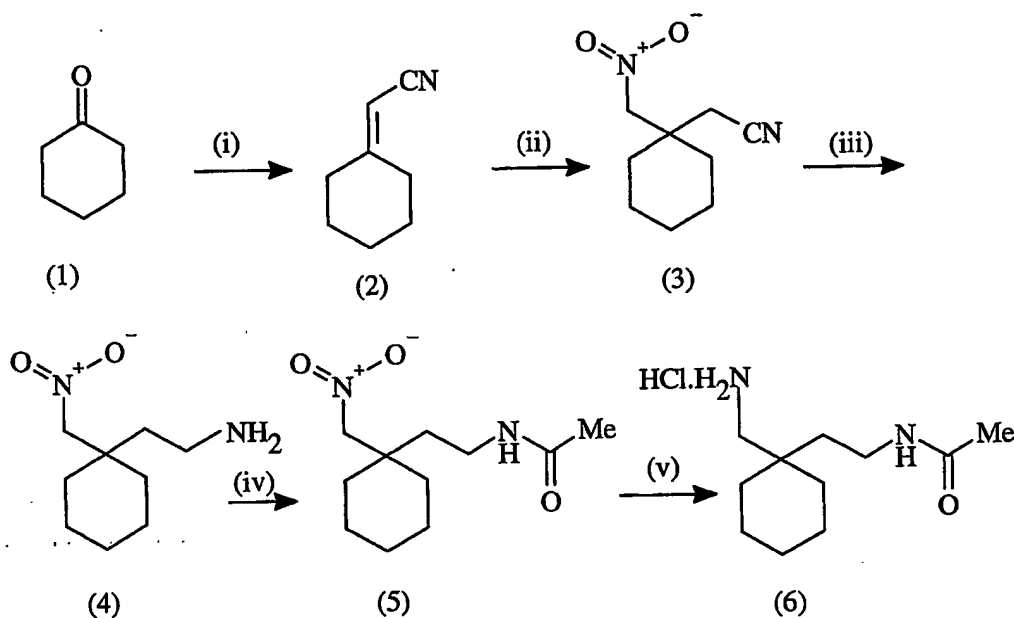
To a solution of the bis nitrile (Griffiths G., Mettler H., Mills L.S., and Previdoli F., *Helv. Chim. Acta*, 74:309 (1991)) (1.48 g, 10 mmol) in toluene (20 mL) under nitrogen was added trimethylsilylazide (1.15 g, 10 mmol) followed by trimethylaluminum (5 mL, 2.0 M in hexanes, 10 mmol). After heating to 90°C overnight, the mixture was allowed to cool and added carefully to ethyl acetate, ice and 6N hydrochloric acid. The aqueous phase was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the extracts washed with water, dried over magnesium sulphate, and evaporated to dryness. Crystallization gave the required compound (158 mg, 8%).

C-[1-(1H-Tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cyclohexyl]-methanamine hydrochloride (3)

The tetrazole (compound 2, 158 mg, 0.83 mmol) in methanol was added to a washed suspension of Raney nickel in methanol. The mixture was shaken under 40 psi hydrogen for 3.5 hours and then filtered to remove the catalyst and evaporated to dryness. The residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate and dilute hydrochloric acid. The aqueous phase was separated and evaporated to dryness. Recrystallization from methanol/ether gave the required product (44 mg, 23%); mp 176-179°C.

¹H NMR 400 MHz (d₆-DMSO): δ 1.20-1.60 (m, 10H), 2.84 (s, 2H), 3.07 (s, 2H), 8.06 (bs, 3H).

EXAMPLE 3



Reagents:

- (i) Diethylcyanomethyl phosphonate, NaH, tetrahydrofuran;
- 5 (ii) Nitromethane, tetrabutylammonium fluoride, tetrahydrofuran;
- (iii) Borane methyl sulphide, toluene;
- (iv) Triethylamine, acetyl chloride, tetrahydrofuran;
- (v) 10% Pd-C, hydrogen gas, methanol then HCl

Cyclohexylidene-acetonitrile (2)

- 10 Sodium hydride (60% in oil, 0.80 g, 20 mmol) was suspended in 50 mL tetrahydrofuran and chilled in ice under nitrogen. Diethylcyanomethyl phosphonate (3.85 g, 22 mmol) was added dropwise in 10 mL tetrahydrofuran and stirring continued for 15 minutes to give a clear solution. Cyclohexanone (1.90 g, 19 mmol) was added in 5 mL tetrahydrofuran and the reaction mixture allowed to
- 15 warm up to room temperature. The liquor was decanted and the residue washed three times with ether. The liquor and washings were combined, washed with dilute hydrochloric acid and water, dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered, and evaporated to dryness. The residue was purified by chromatography on silica eluting with heptane/ethyl acetate 4:1 to give the required product as a colorless
- 20 oil (1.5 g, 67%).

-56-

^1H NMR 400 MHz (CDCl_3): δ 1.50 (m, 6H), 2.25 (t, $J = 5.6$ Hz, 2H), 2.49 (t, $J = 6.8$ Hz, 2H), 5.04 (s, 1H).

IR ν_{max} 2933, 2859, 2217, 1633, 1449.

(1-Nitromethyl-cyclohexyl)-acetonitrile (3)

5 The nitrile (compound 2, 0.78 g, 6.44 mmol), nitromethane (0.80 g, 13.11 mmol) and tetrabutyl ammonium fluoride (1.0 M in tetrahydrofuran, 10 mL, 10 mmol) were heated in 20 mL tetrahydrofuran to 70°C overnight. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with dilute hydrochloric acid and water, dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered, and evaporated to dryness.

10 The residue was purified by chromatography on silica eluting with heptane/ethyl acetate 3:1 to give the required product as a yellow oil (0.83 g, 71%).

^1H NMR 400 MHz (CDCl_3): δ 1.57 (s, 10H), 2.63 (s, 2H), 4.52 (s, 2H).

Analysis calculated for $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{13}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2$:

C, 59.32; H, 7.74; N, 15.37.

15 Found: C, 59.40; H, 7.65; N, 15.18.

2-(1-Nitromethyl-cyclohexyl)-ethylamine (4)

20 Borane methyl sulphide (2.0 M in toluene, 1.3 mL, 2.6 mmol) was added to compound 3 (0.4 g, 2.2 mmol) in toluene (10 mL) under nitrogen. After heating to 60°C for 3 hours, the mixture was allowed to cool, and 15 mL methanol was added followed by 15 mL 4 M HCl in dioxane. After reflux for 1 hour, the mixture was evaporated to dryness. Crystallization from ethyl acetate gave the required product as colorless crystals (0.23 g, 47%); mp 170-173°C.

^1H NMR 400 MHz ($d_6\text{-DMSO}$): δ 1.30-1.50 (m, 10H), 1.64-1.69 (m, 2H), 2.82-2.86 (m, 2H), 4.57 (s, 2H), 7.89 (s, 3H).

25 Analysis calculated for $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{18}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2 \cdot \text{HCl} \cdot 0.2\text{H}_2\text{O}$:

C, 47.77; H, 8.64; N, 12.38.

Found: C, 47.80; H, 8.66; N, 12.64.

-57-

N-[2-(1-Nitromethyl-cyclohexyl)-ethyl]-acetamide (5)

The amine hydrochloride salt (compound 4, 0.50 g, 2.25 mmol) was reacted with acetyl chloride (0.20 g, 2.55 mmol) and triethylamine (0.45 g, 4.45 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran following the procedure described in Example 1, Step 4. Purification by chromatography on silica eluting with ethyl acetate gave the required product as a crystalline solid (0.35 g, 69%); mp 68-70°C.

¹H NMR 400 MHz (CDCl₃): δ 1.40-1.60 (m, 10H), 1.60-1.65 (m, 2H), 1.98 (s, 3H), 3.30-3.40 (m, 2H), 4.40 (s, 2H), 5.59 (bs, 1H).

N-[2-(1-Aminomethyl-cyclohexyl)-ethyl]-acetamide hydrochloride (6)

Compound 5 (0.30 g, 1.3 mmol) was hydrogenated in the presence of 10% palladium on carbon following the procedure described in Example 1, Step 5 to give the product as the hydrochloride salt (0.35 g, 100%).

¹H NMR 400 MHz (d₆-DMSO): δ 1.20-1.40 (m, 10H), 1.40-1.50 (m, 2H), 1.81 (s, 3H), 2.75 (q, J = 6.0 Hz, 2H), 2.95-3.05 (m, 2H), 7.99 (bs, 3H), 8.06 (t, J = 4.8 Hz, 1H).

IR ν_{max} 3265, 2929, 1628, 1553, 1446, 1373, 1298.

EXAMPLE 4**3-(1-Aminomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one; hydrochloride****[1-(tert-Butoxycarbonylamino-methyl)-cyclohexyl]-acetic acid (2)**

A solution of Gabapentin (1) (9.37g, 0.0547 mol) in 125 mL 1N NaOH and 50 mL THF was cooled to 0°C and a solution of di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (13.1 g, 0.06 mol) in 200 mL THF was slowly added. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature 2 hours and concentrated on a rotary evaporator to remove THF. The concentrate was saturated with KH₂PO₄ and extracted 3X EtOAc. The EtOAc extracts were washed 2X brine and dried over MgSO₄. Evaporation yielded 14.8 g (100%) white solid, mp 109-111°C.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.2-1.4 (m, 19H), 2.27 (s, 2H), 3.11 (d, 2H, J = 6.84 Hz), 4.95 (broad, 1H).

MS (APCI) m/z 272 (M + 1).

-58-

Analysis calculated for $C_{14}H_{25}NO_4$:

C, 61.97; H, 9.29; N, 5.16.

Found: C, 62.36; H, 9.27; N, 5.19.

(1-Carbamoylmethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester (3)

5 [1-(tert-Butoxycarbonylamino-methyl)-cyclohexyl]-acetic acid (2) (152 g, 0.56 mol) was taken up in 1 L THF and triethylamine (66.2 g, 0.65 mol) and cooled to -10°C . Over a 1-hour period, isobutyraldehyde was added (84.7 g, 0.62 mol), and the heterogeneous mixture was stirred at 0°C for 15 minutes. Ammonia gas was bubbled into the cold reaction mixture for 30 minutes, and the
10 mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature. After 16 hours stirring, the reaction mixture was evaporated to dryness on a rotary evaporator, and the residue was taken up in water, extracted 3X EtOAc, washed 2X brine and dried over MgSO_4 . Evaporation yielded an oil which was crystallized from pentane to yield 116.5 g (77%) white crystals; mp $123-125^{\circ}\text{C}$.

15 $^1\text{H NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ 1.2-1.6 (m, 19H), 2.12 (s, 2H), 3.13 (d, 2H, $J = 7.08$ Hz), 4.97 (s, 1H), 5.43 (s, 1H), 7.34 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI) 271 m/z. (M + 1).

Analysis calculated for $C_{14}H_{26}N_2O_3$:

C, 62.19; H, 9.69; N, 10.36.

20 Found: C, 62.00; H, 9.72; N, 9.96.

(1-Cyanomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester (4)

Cyanuric chloride (39.5 g, 0.214 mol) was added to (1-carbamoylmethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester (3) (116 g, 0.429 mol) in 400 mL DMF. An ice-water bath was used to moderate the exotherm, and the reaction
25 mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hours. The mixture was poured into ice-water containing 120 g (1.43 mol) NaHCO_3 and was extracted 4X EtOAc. The extracts were washed 1X water, 2X brine and dried over Na_2SO_4 . Evaporation yielded an oil which was taken up in 3:1 hexane/EtOAc and filtered through silica gel. Evaporation yielded white crystals (86.5 g, 80%); mp $54-58^{\circ}\text{C}$.

-59-

^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 1.3-1.5 (m, 19H), 2.30 (s, 2H), 3.15 (d, 2H, $J = 7.00$ Hz), 4.60 (broad, 1H).

MS (APCI) m/z 253 ($M + 1$).

Analysis calculated for $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{24}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2$:

5 C, 66.63; H, 9.59; N, 11.10.

Found: C, 66.64; H, 9.52; N, 10.80.

[1-(N-Hydroxycarbamimidoylmethyl)-cyclohexylmethyl]-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester (5)

A suspension of hydroxylamine hydrochloride (69.5 g, 1.00 mol) in
10 DMSO (300 mL) was cooled in ice-water, and triethylamine (106.7 g, 1.05 mol) was added. The resulting exotherm brought the temperature to 20°C . The mixture was stirred at this temperature 15 minutes, and triethylamine hydrochloride was filtered off and washed with THF. The filtrate was concentrated to remove THF, and (1-cyanomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester (4) (50.4 g,
15 0.2 mol) was added, and the mixture was heated at 75°C for 15 hours. After cooling, the reaction mixture was diluted with water (1 L) and extracted 3X EtOAc. The EtOAc extracts were washed 1X saturated KH_2PO_4 , 1X saturated NaHCO_3 , 2X brine and dried over Na_2SO_4 . Evaporation yielded a gummy solid which was triturated in Et_2O to give white crystals, 25.2 g (44%); mp $125\text{--}127^\circ\text{C}$.

20 ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 1.3-1.5 (m 19H), 1.99 (s, 2H), 3.12 (d, 2H $J = 6.84$ Hz), 4.93 (t, 1H, $J = 6.84$ Hz), 5.40 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI) m/z 286 ($M + 1$).

Analysis calculated for $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{27}\text{N}_3\text{O}_3$:

C, 58.92; H, 9.54; N, 14.72.

25 Found: C, 58.96; H, 9.80; N, 14.65.

BOC-Gabapentin amidoxime carbamate (6)

A solution of [1-(N-Hydroxycarbamimidoylmethyl)-cyclohexylmethyl]-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester (5) (25.1 g, 0.088 mol) and pyridine (7.82 g, 0.099 mol) in DMF (200 mL) was cooled in ice-water as isobutyraldehyde
30 (12.32 g, 0.09 mol) was added dropwise. After 15 minutes, the bath was removed

-60-

and the mixture was stirred at room temperature 2 hours, diluted with water, and extracted 3X EtOAc. The extracts were washed 1X water, 2X brine and dried over Na₂SO₄. Evaporation yielded an oil, 34 g (100%) which was used without further purification.

5 MS (APCI) m/z 386 (M + 1).

**[1-(5-Oxo-4,5-dihydro-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-3-ylmethyl)-cyclohexylmethyl]-
carbamic acid tert-butyl (7)**

10 BOC-Gabapentin amidoxime carbamate (33.88 g, 0.088 mol) was taken up in xylene (250 mL) and heated under reflux 2.5 hours. The xylene was evaporated off and the residue taken up in Et₂O and extracted 3X 75 mL 1N NaOH. The alkaline extracts were acidified with saturated KH₂PO₄ and extracted 3X Et₂O. The Et₂O extracts were washed 1X saturated KH₂PO₄, 2X brine and dried over Na₂SO₄. Evaporation yielded 17.9 g (65%) of a cream-colored solid, mp 140-143°C.

15 ¹HNMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.0-1.6 (m, 19H), 2.42 (s, 2H), 3.00 (d, 2H, J = 7.32 Hz), 4.86 (t, 1H, J = 7.08 Hz), 11.30 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI) m/z 312 (M + 1).

Analysis calculated for C₁₅H₂₅N₃O₄:

C, 57.86; H, 8.09; N, 13.49.

20 Found: C, 58.21; H, 8.31; N, 13.30.

**3-(1-Aminomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one;
hydrochloride (8)**

25 A solution of BOC-Gabapentin oxadiazolone (17.7 g, 0.0568 mol) in 4 M HCl in dioxane (200 mL) was allowed to stand 1.5 hours. Concentration to half volume followed by addition of Et₂O gave a precipitate which was filtered off and recrystallized from MeOH to give white crystals (12.98 g, 92.7%), mp 209-212°C.

¹HNMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 1.2-1.5 (m, 10H), 2.64 (s, 4H), 2.79 (s, 2H), 7.98 (s, 3H), 12.35 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI) m/z 212 (M + 1).

-61-

Analysis calculated for $C_{10}H_{17}N_3O_2 \cdot HCl$:

C, 48.49; H, 7.32; N, 16.96; Cl, 14.31.

Found: C, 48.71; H, 7.18; N, 17.03; Cl, 14.32.

EXAMPLE 5

5 [1-(5-Thioxo-4,5-dihydro-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-3-ylmethyl)-cyclohexylmethyl]- carbamic acid tert-butyl ester (9)

A mixture of [1-(N-Hydroxycarbamimidoylmethyl)-cyclohexylmethyl]-
carbamic acid tert-butyl ester (4.85 g, 0.017 mol), 90% 1,1'-
thiocarbonyldiimidazole (3.96 g, 0.02 mol) and DBU (10.39 g, 0.068 mol) in
10 MeCN (150 mL) was stirred at room temperature 19 hours. The reaction mixture
was evaporated to dryness, suspended in saturated KH_2PO_4 and extracted 3X
EtOAc. The EtOAc extracts were washed 2X saturated KH_2PO_4 , 2X brine and
dried over Na_2SO_4 . Evaporation followed by filtration through silica gel, eluting
with 3:1 EtOAc/hexane yielded, upon evaporation, a solid which was
15 recrystallized from Et_2O /hexane to give a pale pink solid, 2.6 g (47%),
mp 160-161°C.

1H NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ 1.1-1.6 (m, 19H), 2.53 (s, 2H), 3.00 (d, 2H, $J = 7.33$ Hz),
4.90 (t, 1H, $J = 7.08$ Hz), 12.88 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI) m/z 328 ($M + 1$).

20 Analysis calculated for $C_{15}H_{25}N_3O_3S$:

C, 55.02; H, 7.70; N, 12.83; S, 9.79.

Found: C, 55.34; H, 7.80; N, 12.72; S, 9.43.

3-(1-Aminomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-thione; hydrochloride (10)

25 [1-(5-Thioxo-4,5-dihydro-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-3-ylmethyl)-cyclohexylmethyl]- carbamic acid tert-butyl ester (9)

(2.5 g, 0.0076 mol) was taken up in 4 M HCl in 1,4-dioxane (75 mL) and
stirred at room temperature. The precipitate which formed was filtered off and
recrystallized from MeOH- Et_2O to yield 1.31 g (66%) white solid,
30 mp 210-212°C.

-62-

^1H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ 1.2-1.5 (m, 10H), 2.79-2.85 (m, 4H), 7.99 (s, 3H).

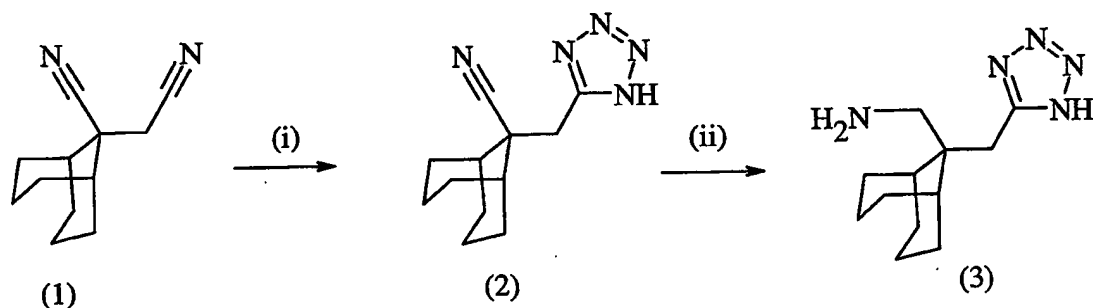
MS (APCI) m/z 228 (M + 1).

Analysis calculated for $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{17}\text{N}_3\text{OS}\cdot\text{HCl}$:

C, 45.53; H, 6.88; N, 15.93; S, 12.16; Cl, 13.44.

5 Found: C, 45.92; H, 6.71; N, 15.83; S, 11.81; Cl, 13.48.

EXAMPLE 6



Reagents:

- 10 (i) Trimethylsilylazide, dibutyl tin oxide, toluene
 (ii) Nickel catalyst, Methanol

Synthesis of 9-(1H-Tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-bicyclo[3.3.1]nonane-9-carbonitrile (2)

15 To a solution of the bis nitrile (ref WO 9733859) (1.2 g, 6.38 mmol) in toluene (10 mL) was added trimethylsilylazide (1.48 g, 12.87 mmol) followed by dibutyl tin oxide (0.16 g, 0.64 mmol). After heating to 95° for 3 days the mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with 1N HCl and water, dried over magnesium sulphate, and evaporated to dryness. Crystallization gave the required compound (0.3 g, 20%); mp 189-191°C.

20 400 MHz NMR (d_6 -DMSO) δ 1.50-1.70 (m, 4H), 1.75-2.10 (m, 10H), 3.48 (s, 2H).

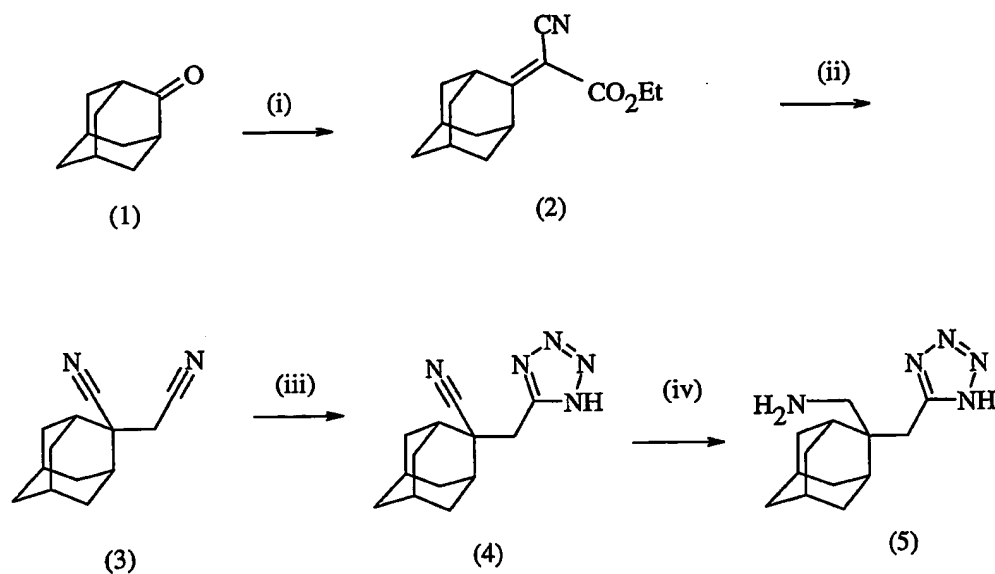
-63-

Synthesis of C-[9-(1H-Tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-bicyclo[3.3.1]non-9-yl]-methylamine hydrochloride (3)

The tetrazole obtained in Step 1 (0.60 g, 2.59 mmol) in methanol (100 mL) was added to a washed suspension of nickel catalyst in methanol. The mixture was shaken under 40 psi hydrogen overnight and then filtered to remove the catalyst and evaporated to dryness. The residue was dissolved in methanol and ethereal hydrogen chloride added. Addition of ether and filtration gave the required product (0.19 g, 22%). mp 232-236°C.

400 MHz NMR (d_6 -DMSO) δ 1.40-1.70 (m, 8H), 1.75-1.95 (m, 4H), 2.05-2.15 (m, 2H), 3.13 (s, 2H), 3.29 (s, 2H), 8.0 (bs, 3H).

EXAMPLE 7



Reagents:

- Ethylcyanoacetate, NaH, THF;
- KCN, EtOH, water, reflux;
- Trimethylsilylazide, dibutyltin oxide, toluene;
- Nickel catalyst, Methanol

Synthesis of 2-(1H-Tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-adamantane-2-carbonitrile (4)

Prepared in the same manner as 9-(1H-Tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-bicyclo[3.3.1]nonane-9-carbonitrile in Example 4.

-64-

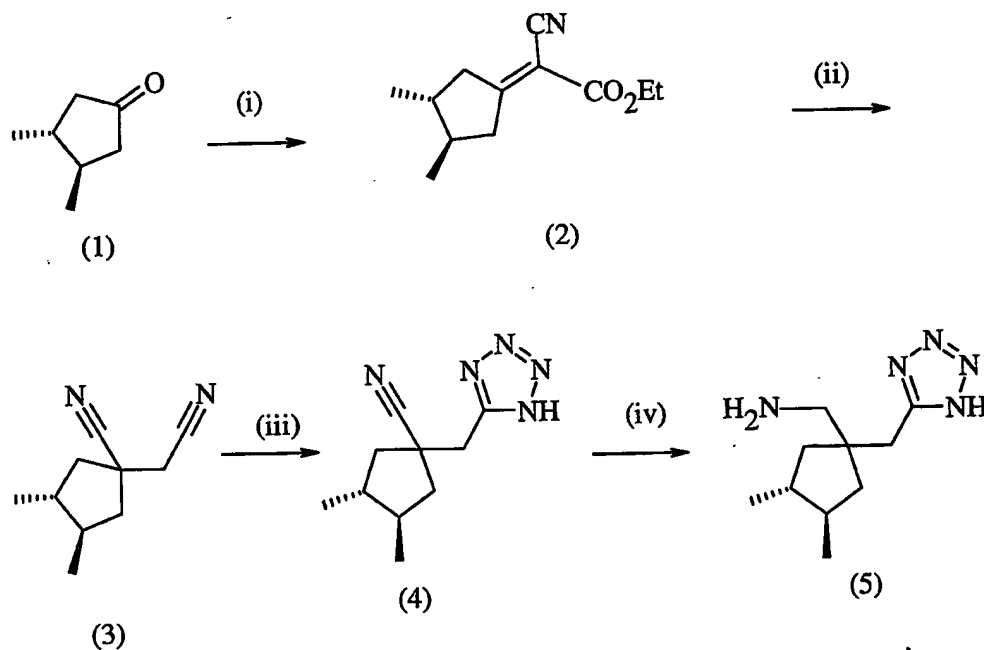
Synthesis of C-[2-(1H-Tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-adamantan-2-yl]-methylamine hydrochloride (5)

The nitrile obtained in Step 3 was prepared in an analogous manner to (0.47 g, 1.9 mmol) was shaken with nickel catalyst (one spatula full, washed) under 50 psi hydrogen overnight. Filtration through kieselguhr and evaporation followed by treatment with methanol and ethereal hydrogen chloride gave the required product which was crystallized from methanol and acetonitrile (25 mg, 5%); mp 250-252°C.

400 MHz NMR δ 1.49 (s, 2H), 1.54 (d, $J = 13.7$ Hz, 2H), 1.59 (d, $J = 13.7$ Hz), 1.67 (s, 2H), 1.83 (s, 1H), 1.90 (s, 1H), 1.97 (d, $J = 12.9$ Hz, 2H), 2.19 (d, $J = 12.7$ Hz, 2H), 3.15 (s, 2H), 3.34 (s, obscured by water), 7.99 (bs, 3H).

Mass Spec ES^+ 248 (100%, $(M+H)^+$).

EXAMPLE 8



15

Reagents:

- (i) Ethyl cyanoacetate, ammonium acetate, acetic acid, toluene
- (ii) Potassium cyanide, aqueous ethanol
- (iii) Trimethylsilylazide, dibutyltin oxide, toluene
- (iv) nickel catalyst, methanol

-65-

Synthesis of (trans)Cyano-(3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentylidene)-acetic acid ethyl ester (2)

Trans-3,4-dimethyl cyclopentanone (2.91 g, 25.94 mmol), ethyl cyanoacetate (2.93 g, 25.93 mmol), ammonium acetate (0.20 g, 2.60 mmol), and acetic acid (0.31 g, 5.17 mmol) were heated together in refluxing toluene under a Dean-Stark trap for 24 hours. After cooling and filtration through kieselguhr, evaporation gave the required product as an off-white solid (5.0 g, 93%).

400 MHz NMR δ 1.08 (d, J = 6.0 Hz, 3H), 1.09 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 3H), 1.34 (t, J = 7.2 Hz, 3H), 1.55-1.70 (m, 2H), 2.30-2.45 (m, 2H), 3.08 (dd, J = 20.0 Hz, 8.0 Hz, 1H), 3.43 (dd, J = 20.0 Hz, 7.0 Hz, 1H), 4.26 (q, J = 7.1 Hz, 2H).

Mass Spec ES⁺ 208.19 (M+H)⁺, 225.19, 230.16 (100%, (M+Na)⁺).

Synthesis of (trans)1-Cyanomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentanecarbonitrile (3)

The product from Step 1 (5.0 g, 24.1 mmol) was refluxed with potassium cyanide (1.57 g, 24.2 mmol) in ethanol/10%water (50 mL) overnight. Evaporation to dryness and purification by chromatography eluting with ethyl acetate/heptane 1:1 gave the required product as a yellow oil 2.9 g (74%). tlc rf 0.45 ethyl acetate/heptane 1:1.

400 MHz NMR δ 1.05 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 3H), 1.07 (d, J = 8.8 Hz, 3H), 1.49 (dd, J = 13.2, 11.6 Hz, 1H), 1.60-1.70 (m, 1H), 1.75-1.90 (m, 1H), 1.96 (dd, J = 13.6, 14.8 Hz, 1H), 2.19 (dd, J = 14.0, 8.4 Hz, 1H), 2.48 (dd, J = 13.2, 6.4 Hz, 1H), 2.73 (s, 2H).

Synthesis of (trans)3,4-Dimethyl-1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cyclopentanecarbonitrile (4)

The bis-nitrile from Step 2 (1.62 g, 10 mmol) was heated with trimethylsilyl azide (2.84 g, 24.7 mmol) and di-butyl tin oxide (0.24 g, 0.96 mmol) in toluene (50 mL) to 100°C overnight. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with dilute hydrochloric acid and water. The solution was dried over magnesium sulphate and evaporated to dryness. Purification by chromatography eluting with ethyl acetate gave the required product as a colorless oil 0.94 g, (46%).

-66-

Mass Spec ES⁺ 206.23 (M+H)⁺, 228.26 (M+Na)⁺.

400 MHz NMR CDCl₃ δ 1.04 (d, J = 7.2 Hz, 3H), 1.05 (d, J = 6.4 Hz), 1.56 (dd, J = 11.6, 11.6 Hz, 1H), 1.55-1.65 (m, 1H), 1.65-1.75 (m, 1H), 1.83 (dd, J = 13.6, 9.2 Hz, 1H), 2.27 (dd, J = 14.0, 8.0 Hz), 2.35 (dd, J = 13.0, 6.8 Hz, 1H), 3.36 (s, 2H).

5

Synthesis of (trans)C-[3,4-Dimethyl-1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cyclopentyl]-methylamine hydrochloride (5)

The tetrazole obtained in Step 3 (0.90 g, 0.44 mmol) and nickel catalyst (one spatula full, washed) were shaken together in methanol (200 mL) overnight.

10 The mixture was filtered through kieselguhr and evaporated to dryness. The residue was treated with methanol and ethereal hydrogen chloride and then stirred with di-tertiarybutyl dicarbonate (0.80 g, 3.67 mmol) and sodium bicarbonate (0.80 g, 9.52 mmol) in aqueous dioxane (1:1, 20 mL) overnight. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and the aqueous phase separated, acidified, and

15 extracted 3X with ethyl acetate. The extracts were dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered and evaporated to give a colorless oil. This oil was stirred with 4 M hydrogen chloride in dioxane (5 mL) overnight and then evaporated to dryness to give the required product 0.24 g (76%).

400 MHz d₆-DMSO δ 0.88 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 3H), 0.89 (d, J = 5.6 Hz, 3H), 1.15-1.25 (m, 3H), 1.35-1.45 (m, 1H), 1.70-1.80 (m, 2H), 2.82 (d, J = 13.2 Hz, 1H), 2.89 (d, J = 13.2 Hz, 1H), 3.04 (d, J = 15.2 Hz, 1H), 3.05 (d, J = 15.2 Hz, 1H).

20

Mass Spec ES⁺ 210 100%, (M+H)⁺.

Elemental analysis calculated for C₁₀H₁₉N₅·HCl·0.5H₂O:

25 C, 47.14; H, 8.31; N, 27.49.

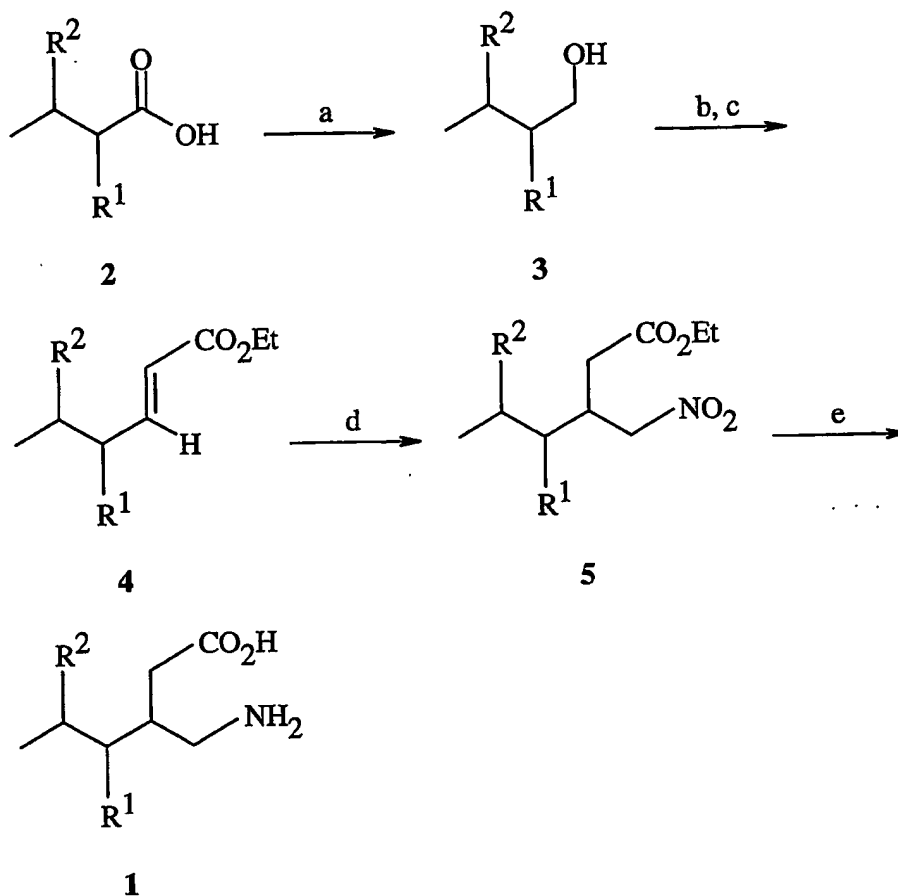
Found: C, 47.23; H, 7.97; N, 27.16.

Compounds of Formula IV wherein R¹ and R² are as defined above may be prepared according to the following methods.

-67-

General synthetic schemes

Method 1 (Scheme 9)



5

a) LiAlH_4 ;

b) pyridinium dichromate;

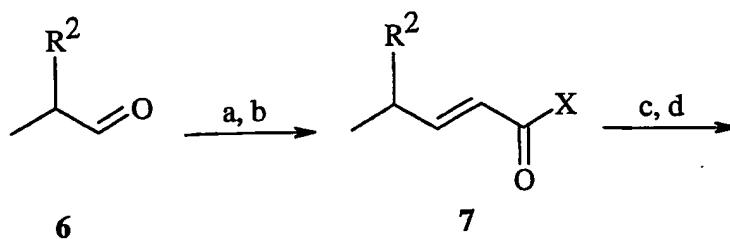
c) triethylphosphonoacetate, NaH ;

d) Nitromethane DBU;

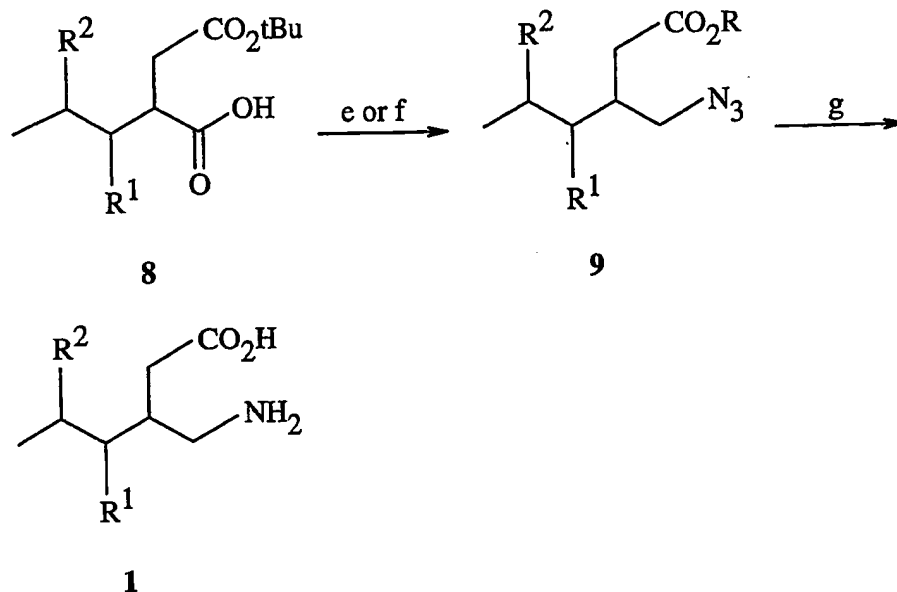
10

e) i. H_2 Pd/C; ii. HCl ; iii ion exchange chromatography.

Method 2 (Scheme 10)



-68-

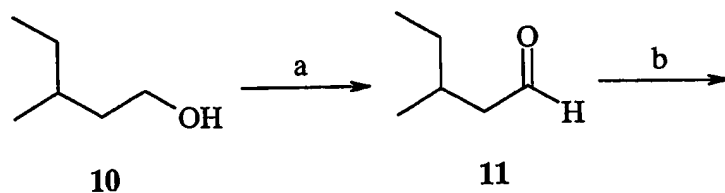


X = OEt or chiral oxazolidine auxiliary.

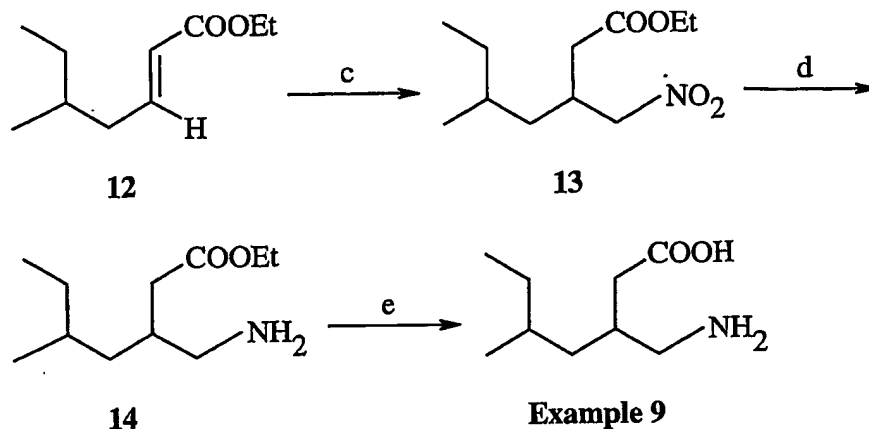
- 5 a) Triethylphosphonoacetate, NaH;
 b) i. NaOH, ii. Pivaloyl chloride, Et₃N, XH;
 c) R¹MgBr, CuBr₂ DMS;
 d) NaHMDS, BrCH₂CO₂tBu;
 e) R = tBu i. LiOH, H₂O₂; ii. BH₃, iii. TsCl, Et₃N, iv. NaN₃, DMSO;
 f) R = Et i. LiOH, H₂O₂; ii. BH₃, iii. PTSA, THF; iv HBr EtOH,
 10 v. NaN₃ DMSO;
 g) i. H₂ Pd/C; ii. HCl, iii. Ion exchange chromatography.

Specific Examples

Synthesis of Example 9: 3-Aminomethyl-5-methylheptanoic acid



-69-

a) PDC, CH₂Cl₂;

b) NaH, triethylphosphonoacetate;

5 c) DBU, CH₃NO₂;d) H₂, 10% Pd/C;

e) 6N HCl, reflux, ion exchange resin (Dowex 50WX8, strongly acidic).

3-Methyl-1-pentanal 11

10 To a stirred suspension of pyridinium dichromate (112.17 g, 298.1 mmol) in dichloromethane 500 mL was added 3-methyl-1-pentanol **10** (15 g, 146.79 mmol). After stirring for 2.5 hours, ether 400 mL was added, and stirring was continued for another 5 minutes. The filtrate from the mixture was concentrated to a small volume and applied to a column of Florisil. The compound was eluted with petroleum ether, and further chromatographed on silica gel

15 column using 10% ether in petroleum ether as eluent gave **11** (6.5 g, 44%). ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ 9.72, (d, -CHO), 2.38 (dd, 1H, -CH₂CHO), 2.19 (dd, 1H, -CH₂CHO), 1.95 (m, 1H, C₂H₅(CH₃)CHCH₂-), 1.4-1.0 (m), 0.9-0.8 (m).

Ethyl 5-methyl-2-heptenoate 12

20 Sodium hydride (60% dispersion, 2.4 g, 65 mmol) was washed with hexane and suspended in dimethoxyethane 60 mL. While cooling in ice water bath triethyl phosphonoacetate was slowly added, calcd. 5 minutes. The reaction was stirred for 15 minutes at 0°C and a solution of 3-methyl-1-pentanal **11** (6.5 g, 65 mmol) in methoxyethane 20 mL was added. After refluxing overnight, it was

-70-

concentrated, water and hexane were added, the organic phase was separated, and the aqueous portion discarded. The solution was washed twice with brine and dried on magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated to give **12** (6.75 g, 61%).
 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ 6.89 (m, 1H, $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CHCOOEt}$), 5.77 (d, 1H, $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CHCOOEt}$), 4.16 (q, 2H, $-\text{COOCH}_2\text{CH}_3$), 2.15 and 1.98 (1H each and a multiplet, $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CHCOOEt}$), 1.48 (m, 1H, $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5(\text{CH}_3)\text{CHCH}_2$), 1.30-1.10 (m), and 0.83.

Ethyl 5-methyl-3-nitromethylheptanoate **13**

Ethyl 5-methyl-2-heptanoate **12** (6.75 g, 39.70 mmol), DBU (6.0 g, 39.7 mmol), nitromethane (21.97 g, 359.9 mmol) in acetonitrile 80 mL was stirred at room temperature under nitrogen atmosphere overnight. The mixture was concentrated to an oil. A solution of the oil in ether was washed with 1N HCl, brine and dried. It was evaporated to give a light oil which was chromatographed on silica gel, eluting with 5% to 10% ether in Pet. ether to give **13** (3.6 g, 42%).
 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ 4.49-4.39 (m), 4.12-4.07 (m), 3.61 (m), 2.36 (m), 1.36-1.18 (m), 0.86-0.79.

3-Aminomethyl-5-methylheptanoic acid (Example 9)

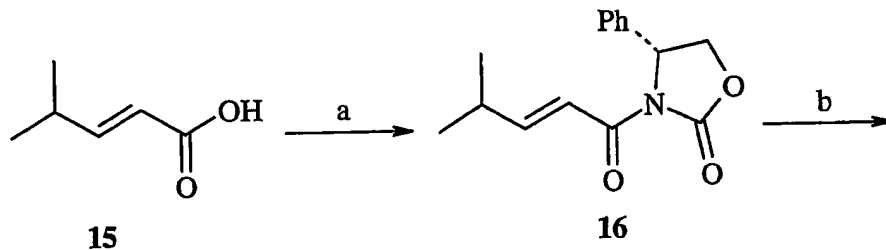
Ethyl 5-methyl-3-nitromethylheptanoate **13** (3.6 g) was hydrogenated in ethanol in the presence of 20% Pd/C and evaporated to give **14**. Six normal hydrochloric acid 30 mL was added and refluxed overnight. The solvent was evaporated at reduced pressure, and the residue was azeotroped with toluene. Aqueous solution of the residue was applied to Dowex 50WX 8-100 ion exchange resin that had been washed to neutral pH with HPLC grade water. The column was eluted with water until eluent was neutral pH, and then with 0.5N. NH_4OH solution to give fractions containing 3-aminomethyl-5-methylheptanoic acid. The fractions were combined and further chromatographed on a C_{18} column. The compound was eluted with 40% water in methanol and crystallized from methanol-ether to give **Example 9** 630 mg. $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CD_3OD) δ 2.83 (m, 1H), 2.75 (m, 1H), 2.35 (m, 1H), 2.15 (m, 1H), 1.95 (1H, bs), 1.38 (1H, m),

1.3-1.15 (m, 2H), 1.14-0.95 (m, 2H). 0.80 (m, 2CH₃). MS found molecular ion at (M+1) 174 and other ions at 156, 139, and 102. Anal. Calcd. for C₉H₁₉NO₂: C, 62.39; H 11.05; N 8.08. Found C, 62.00; H, 10.83; N, 7.98.

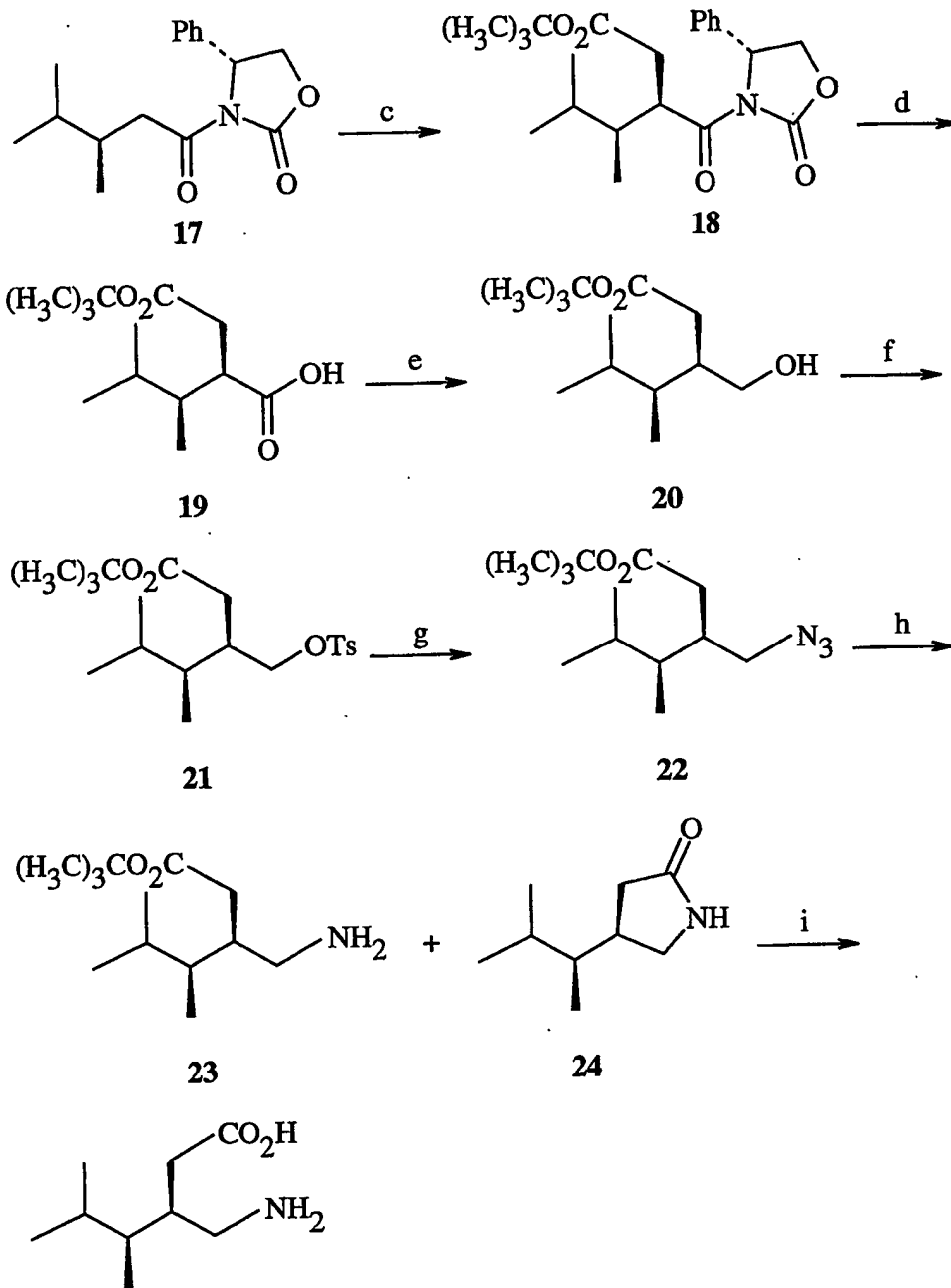
In a similar way the following examples can be prepared.

- 5 3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-nonanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-decanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-undecanoic acid;
10 3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-dodecanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-tridecanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-cyclopropyl-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-cyclobutyl-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-cyclopentyl-hexanoic acid;
15 3-Aminomethyl-5-cyclohexyl-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-trifluoromethyl-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-phenyl-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-(2-chlorophenyl)-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-(3-chlorophenyl)-hexanoic acid;
20 3-Aminomethyl-5-(4-chlorophenyl)-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-(2-methoxyphenyl)-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-(3-methoxyphenyl)-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-(4-methoxyphenyl)-hexanoic acid; and
3-Aminomethyl-5-(phenylmethyl)-hexanoic acid.

25 **Synthesis of Example 10: (3R,4S)3-Aminomethyl-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid**



-72-

**Example 10**

5

Reagents and Conditions:

a) *(R)*-(-)-4-phenyl-2-oxazolidinone, $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CCOCl}$, Et_3N , LiCl , THF, -20 to 23°C ;

b) MeMgCl , CuBrSMe_2 , THF, -35°C ;

10 c) NaHMDS , $\text{BrCH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{tBu}$, THF, -78°C to -40°C ;

-73-

- d) LiOH, H₂O₂, THF, H₂O, 25°C;
e) BH₃SMe₂, THF, 0 to 25°C;
f) pTsCl, pyridine, 25°C;
g) NaN₃, DMSO, 60°C;
5 h) Raney nickel, MeOH, H₂; i) 3M HCl, reflux, ion exchange resin
(Dowex 50WX8, strongly acidic).

[*R*-(*E*)]3-(4-Methyl-pent-2-enoyl)-4-phenyl-oxazolidin-2-one 16

Trimethylacetyl chloride (7.8 g, 0.065 mol) was added to acid **14** (6.9 g, 0.06 mol) and triethylamine (18 g, 0.187 mol) in THF (200 mL) at -20°C. After
10 1 hour, lithium chloride (2.35 g, 0.55 mol) and (*R*)-(-)-4-phenyl-2-oxazolidinone
(8.15 g, 0.05 mol) were added and the thick suspension warmed to room
temperature. After 20 hours, the suspension was filtered and the filtrate
concentrated. The resultant solid was recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate
(5:1) to give the oxazolidinone **16** as a white solid (8.83 g, 68%). ¹H NMR
15 (CDCl₃) δ 7.35 (m, 5H), 7.18 (dd, 1H, *J* = 15.4 and 1.2 Hz), 7.02 (dd, 1H,
J = 15.4 and 6.8 Hz), 5.45 (dd, 1H, *J* = 8.8 and 3.9 Hz), 4.68 (t, 1H, *J* = 8.8 Hz),
4.22 (dd, 1H, *J* = 8.8 and 3.9 Hz), 2.50 (m, 1H), 1.04 (d, 1H, *J* = 1.4 Hz), 1.02 (d,
1H, *J* = 1.4 Hz). MS, *m/z* (relative intensity): 260 [M+H, 100%].

(3*R*,3*R)3-(3,4-Dimethyl-pentanoyl)-4-phenyl-oxazolidin-2-one 17**

20 To copper(I) bromide-dimethyl sulphide complex in THF (45 mL) at
-20°C was added methylmagnesium chloride (as a 3 M solution in THF). After
20 minutes, the oxazolidinone **16** (3.69 g, 0.014 mol) in THF (20 mL) was added
dropwise over 10 minutes. After 2.5 hours, the reaction was quenched through the
addition of a saturated aqueous solution of ammonium chloride. The resultant two
25 layers were separated and the aqueous phase extracted with ether. The combined
organic phases were washed with 1 M hydrochloric acid, then with 5% aqueous
ammonium hydroxide. The organic phases were dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated
to give the oxazolidinone **17** as a white solid (3.39 g, 88%). ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ
7.30 (m, 1H), 5.40 (dd, 1H, *J* = 8.8 and 3.7 Hz), 4.63 (t, 1H, *J* = 8.8 Hz), 4.21 (dd,

-74-

1H, $J = 8.8$ and 3.7 Hz), 2.85 (dd, 1H, $J = 16.1$ and 5.6 Hz), 2.8 (dd, 1H, $J = 16.1$ and 8.5 Hz), 1.90 (m, 1H), 1.56 (m, 2H), 0.83 (d, 3H, $J = 6.8$ Hz), 0.78 (d, 3H, $J = 6.8$ Hz), 0.75 (d, 3H, $J = 6.8$ Hz). MS, m/z (relative intensity): 276 [M+H, 100%].

5 **[3R-(3R*(R*),4S*)]-4,5-Dimethyl-3-(2-oxo-4-phenyl-oxazolidine-3-carbonyl)-hexanoic acid tert-butyl ester 18**

Sodium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide (14.4 mL, 0.014 mol of a 1 M solution in THF) was added to a solution of the oxazolidinone **17** (3.37 g, 0.012 mol) in THF (35 mL) at -78°C . After 35 minutes, *tert*-butyl bromoacetate (3.5 g, 0.018 mol) was added and the solution immediately warmed to -40°C . After 3 hours, the reaction was quenched through the addition of a saturated aqueous solution of ammonium chloride. The resultant two layers were separated and the aqueous phase extracted with ether. The combined organic phases were dried (MgSO_4) and concentrated. Flash chromatography (9:1 to 5:1 hexane/ethyl acetate gradient) gave the ester **18** (3.81 g, 82%) as a white solid. ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 7.35 (m, 5H), 5.37 (dd, 1H, $J = 8.4$ and 3.1 Hz), 4.67 (t, 1H, $J = 8.7$ Hz), 4.41 (dt, 1H, $J = 12.0$ and 3.5 Hz), 4.25 (dd, 1H, $J = 8.68$ and 3.1 Hz), 2.65 (dd, 1H, $J = 16.9$ and 12.0 Hz), 2.25 (dd, 1H, $J = 16.9$ and 3.5 Hz), 1.6 (m, 1H), 1.45 (m, 1H), 1.23 (s, 9H), 1.02 (d, 1H, $J = 6.5$ Hz), 0.93 (d, 1H, $J = 6.7$ Hz), 0.80 (d, 1H, $J = 7.0$ Hz). MS, m/z (relative intensity): 429 [M-H+ CH_3CN , 100%], 388 [M-H, 20%].

(3R,4S)-2-(1,2-Dimethyl-propyl)-succinic acid 4-*tert*-butyl ester 19

To the oxazolidinone **18** (3.62 g, 9.3 mmol) in THF (54 mL)/water (15 mL) was added a premixed solution of lithium hydroxide (20 mL of a 0.8 M aqueous solution, 0.016 mol)/ H_2O_2 (5.76 mL of a 30% aqueous solution). After 7 hours, the solution was diluted with water and sodium bisulfite added (~10 g). After stirring for a further 0.5 hours, the two layers were separated and the aqueous phase extracted with ether. The aqueous phase was then rendered acidic (pH 2) with 1 M hydrochloric acid and extracted with ether. The combined organic phases were dried (MgSO_4) and concentrated. Flash chromatography

-75-

(5:1 hexane/ethyl acetate) gave the acid **19** (2.1 g, 95%) as a colorless oil. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 3.0 (m, 1H), 2.55 (dd, 1H, *J* = 16.6 and 11.2 Hz), 2.27 (dd, 1H, *J* = 16.6 and 3.4 Hz), 1.70 (m, 1H), 1.53 (m, 1H), 1.45 (m, 1H), 1.43 (s, 9H), 0.95 (d, 1H, *J* = 6.8 Hz), 0.90 (d, 1H, *J* = 6.6 Hz), 0.83 (d, 1H, *J* = 6.8 Hz). MS, *m/z* (relative intensity): 243 [M-H, 100%].

(3R,4S)-3-Hydroxymethyl-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid tert-butyl ester 20

Borane-methyl sulfide complex (16 mL, 0.032 mol of a 2 M solution in THF) was added to a stirred solution of the acid **19** (1.96 g, 8 mmol) in THF (20 mL) at 0°C. After 20 hours, methanol was added until effervescence ceased and the solution concentrated. Flash chromatography (5:1 hexane/ethyl acetate gradient) gave the alcohol **20** (1.29 g, 70%) as a colorless oil. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 3.62 (m, 1H), 2.32 (m, 1H), 2.14 (m, 1H), 1.6 (m, 1H), 1.45 (s, 9H), 1.35 (m, 1H), 0.93 (d, 1H, *J* = 6.8 Hz), 0.86 (d, 1H, *J* = 6.8 Hz), 0.77 (d, 1H, *J* = 6.9 Hz). MS, *m/z* (relative intensity): 175 [M-tBu, 100%].

(3R,4S)-4,5-Dimethyl-3-(toluene-4-sulfonyloxymethyl)-hexanoic acid tert-butyl ester 21

p-Toluenesulfonyl chloride (847 mg, 4.4 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of the alcohol **6** (850 mg, 3.7 mmol), DMAP (10 mg, 0.08 mmol) and triethylamine (1.23 mL, 8.88 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (20 mL) at 0°C and the solution warmed to room temperature. After 15 hours, the solution was washed with 1N hydrochloric acid then with brine. The combined organic phases were dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated. Flash chromatography (100 to 92% hexane/ethyl acetate gradient) gave the tosylate **7** (1.22 g, 86%) as a thick gum. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 7.80 (d, 2H, *J* = 8.2 Hz), 7.25 (d, 2H, *J* = 8.2 Hz), 3.92 (m, 1H), 2.38 (s, 3H), 2.20 (m, 2H), 1.95 (m, 1H), 1.40 (m, 1H), 1.32 (s, 9H), 1.27 (m, 1H), 0.78 (d, 1H, *J* = 6.6 Hz), 0.73 (d, 1H, *J* = 6.6 Hz), 0.63 (d, 1H, *J* = 7.1 Hz). MS, *m/z* (relative intensity): 311 [85%], 198 [100%], 157 [95%].

-76-

(3R,4S)-3-Azidomethyl-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid tert-butyl ester 22

A solution of the tosylate **21** (1.19 g, 3.1 mmol) and sodium azide (402 mg, 6.2 mmol) in DMSO (15 mL) was warmed to 60°C for 2.5 hours. Water (100 mL) was added and the solution extracted with ether. The combined organic phases were dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated. Flash chromatography (9:1 hexane/ethyl acetate) gave the azide **22** (628 mg, 80%) as a colorless oil. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 3.4 (dd, 1H, *J* = 12.21 and 6.11 Hz), 3.3 (dd, 1H, *J* = 21.11 and 6.59 Hz), 2.30 (dd, 1H, *J* = 15.14 and 3.66 Hz), 2.25 (m, 1H), 2.05 (dd, 1H, *J* = 15.14 and 9.04 Hz), 1.55 (m, 1H), 1.45 (s, 9H), 1.35 (m, 1H), 0.95 (d, 1H, *J* = 6.59 Hz), 0.90 (d, 1H, *J* = 6.83 Hz), 0.80 (d, 1H, *J* = 7.08 Hz). MS (*m/z*): (relative intensity): 228 [M-N₂, 35%], 172 [M-N₂-tBu, 100%].

(3R,4S)-3-Aminomethyl-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid tert-butyl ester 23 and [4R-[4R*(S*)]]-4-(1,2-Dimethyl-propyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one 24

The azide **8** (640 mg, 2.5 mmol) and Raney nickel (1 g) in methanol (50 mL) were shaken under an atmosphere of hydrogen for 4 hours. The solution was filtered and the filtrate concentrated to give a mixture of the amine **23** and lactam **24** which was used without further purification in the next step.

(3R,4S)-3-Aminomethyl-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid (Example 10)

A solution of the amine **23** and lactam **24** (500 mg) in 3 M hydrochloric acid were heated to reflux for 9 hours, then stirred at room temperature for 15 hours. The solution was concentrated and the resultant solid subjected to a sequential purification which involved ion exchange chromatography (Dowex 50WX8, strongly acidic), oxalate salt formation then further purification by ion exchange chromatography (Dowex 50WX8, strongly acidic) to give the Example 10 (343 mg) as a white solid. ¹H NMR (D₂O) δ 2.87 (m, 2H), 2.22 (dd, 1H, *J* = 15.4 and 3.4 Hz), 2.12 (m, 1H), 1.93 (dd, 1H, *J* = 15.4 and 9.5 Hz), 1.38 (m, 1H), 1.12 (m, 1H), 0.77 (d, 1H, *J* = 6.6 Hz), 0.74 (d, 1H, *J* = 6.6 Hz), 0.70 (d, 1H, *J* = 6.8 Hz). MS, *m/z* (relative intensity): 174 [M+H, 100%].

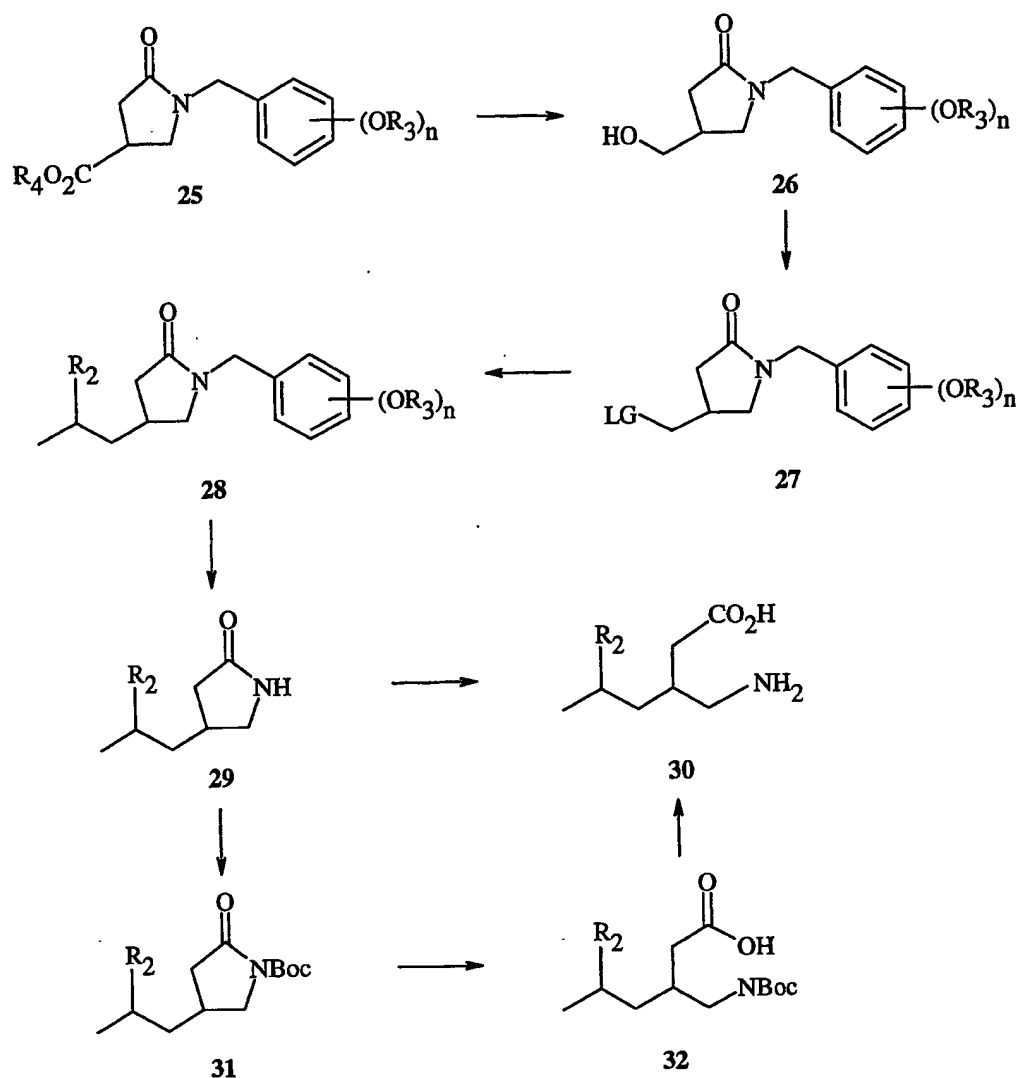
In a similar way, the following examples can be prepared:

-77-

- 3-Aminomethyl-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid;
(3R,4S)-3-Aminomethyl-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid MP;
(3S,4S)-3-Aminomethyl-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid;
(3R,4R)-3-Aminomethyl-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid MP;
5 3-Aminomethyl-4-isopropyl-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-4-isopropyl-heptanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-4-isopropyl-octanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-4-isopropyl-nonanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-4-isopropyl-decanoic acid; and
10 3-Aminomethyl-4-phenyl-5-methyl-hexanoic acid.

-78-

Method 3 (Scheme 11)



5 A compound of structure 30 could be prepared from a compound of structure 29 by treatment with an aqueous acid such as hydrochloric acid and alike at a temperature between room temperature and reflux. As an alternative, a compound of structure 30 can be prepared from a compound of structure 32 by treatment with trifluoroacetic acid in a solvent such as CH_2Cl_2 or EtOAc and alike. Compound 32 could be prepared by base mediate hydrolysis of a Boc

-79-

protected lactam such as compound **31** which itself could be prepared from a compound of structure **29** by treatment with di-tert-butyl dicarbonate in a solvent such as THF and alike. The treatment of the Boc-lactam **31** with aqueous sodium hydroxide for example would give rise to the acid **32**.

5 A compound of structure **29** could be prepared from compound of structure **28** ($n = 0$) by treatment with sodium or lithium metal in ammonia. Preferably, the reaction is carried out with sodium metal in ammonia. Alternatively, a compound of structure **29** could be prepared from compound of structure **28** ($n = 1$ or 2) by treatment with ceric ammonium nitrate in a mixture of
10 acetonitrile and water. Other methods known in the literature for the removal of substituted alkoxy benzyl groups from nitrogen are described in Green, *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, Wiley, 2 ed, 1991 and could be utilized.

 A compound of structure **28** could be prepared from a compound of structure **27** (where LG is a suitable leaving group such as a halide or an alkyl
15 sulphonate, preferably an iodide would be used) by carbon-carbon bond forming reactions known in the art. Several methods exist in the literature for the coupling of organohalides or organoalkyl sulphonates with organometallic reagents in the presence of various metal salts as summarized in *Comprehensive Organic Synthesis*, volume 3:413 which could be utilized. For example, a compound of
20 structure **28** could be prepared from a compound of structure **27** (where LG is iodide) by treatment with a suitable secondary halide (chloride or iodide) in the presence of magnesium metal, iodine and copper bromide dimethylsulphide in a solvent such as tetrahydrofuran and alike. Alternatively the method according to El Marini, *Synthesis*, 1992:1104 could be used. Hence, a compound of
25 structure **28** could be prepared from a compound of structure **27** (where LG is iodide) by treatment with suitable methyl-substituted secondary halide such as an iodide in the presence of magnesium, iodine and lithium tetrachlorocuprate in a solvent such as tetrahydrofuran and alike.

 A compound of structure **27** incorporates a suitable leaving group, which
30 would undergo nucleophilic substitution with suitable nucleophile. Examples of such leaving groups include halides such as chloride, bromide, or iodide, and sulphonic esters such as mesylate, tosylate, triflate, nosylate, and alike. A compound of structure **27** (where LG = iodide) could be prepared from a

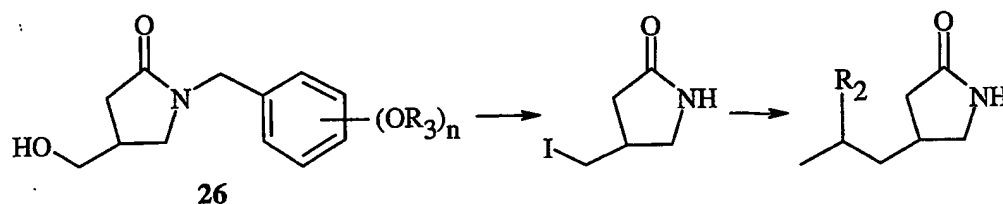
-80-

compound of structure 26 through treatment with iodine, triphenylphosphine, and imidazole in a solvent such as toluene and alike.

5 A compound of structure 26 could be prepared from compound of structure 25 by treatment with a metal borohydride, such as sodium borohydride in a solvent such as tetrahydrofuran or DME and alike.

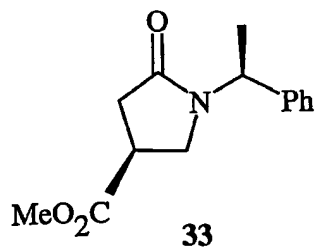
Compound 25 could be prepared in a similar fashion to the procedures of Zoretic et al, *J. Org. Chem.*, 1980;45:810-814 or Nielsen et al *J. Med. Chem.*, 1990;33:71-77 using an appropriate benzylamine, such as but not limited to benzylamine, 4-methoxybenzylamine or 2,4-dimethoxybenzylamine.

10 As an alternative approach, a compound of structure 26 could be treated with sodium metal and ammonia to give 4-hydroxymethyl-pyrrolidinone which could be iodinated affording 4-iodomethyl-pyrrolidinone. 4-iodomethyl-pyrrolidinone could then be coupled with organometallic reagents according to the above procedures avoiding protection of the lactam nitrogen as below.



15

Analogous to the above methods a lactam of structure 33 (see Nielsen et. al., *J. Med. Chem.*, 1990;33:71-77 for general method of preparation) could be employed thus establishing fixed stereochemistry at C3 of the final amino acids.



20

Compounds which could be prepared in this manner include:

3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-phenyl-hexanoic acid;

-81-

- 3-Aminomethyl-6-(4-chloro-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-6-(3-chloro-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-6-(2-chloro-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-6-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
5 3-Aminomethyl-6-(3-fluoro-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-6-(2-fluoro-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-phenyl-heptanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-7-(4-chloro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-7-(3-chloro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
10 3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-chloro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-7-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-7-(3-fluoro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-fluoro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-cyclopropyl-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
15 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-cyclobutyl-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-cyclopentyl-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-cyclohexyl-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-cyclopropyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-cyclobutyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
20 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-cyclopentyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-cyclohexyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-8-cyclopropyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-8-cyclobutyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-8-cyclopentyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
25 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-8-cyclohexyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-nonanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-decanoic acid;
30 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-undecanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5,7-dimethyl-octanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5,8-dimethyl-nonanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5,9-dimethyl-decanoic acid;

-82-

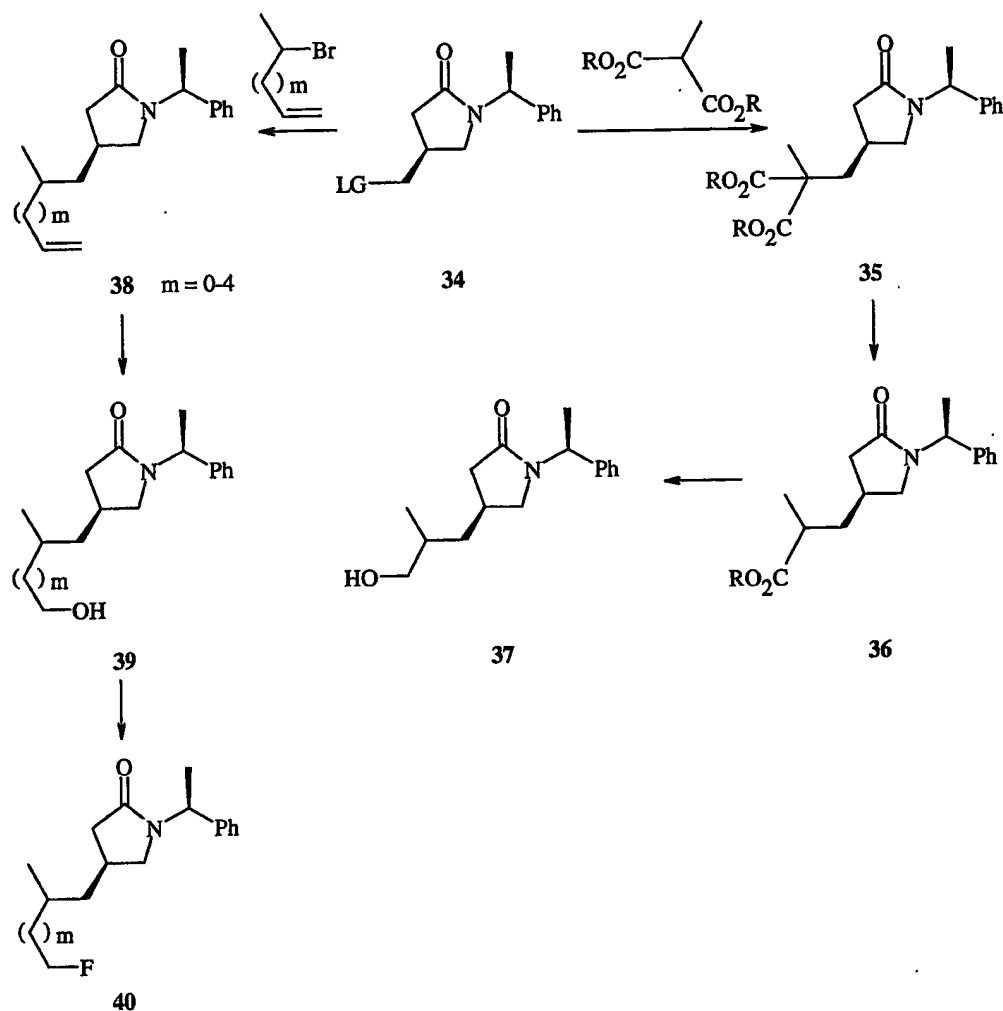
- (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5,6-dimethyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5,6,6-trimethyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-cyclopropyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
5 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-fluoro-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-8-fluoro-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7,7,7-trifluoro-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-8,8,8-trifluoro-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-hept-6-enoic acid;
10 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-oct-7-enoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-non-8-enoic acid;
(E)-(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-oct-6-enoic acid;
(Z)-(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-oct-6-enoic acid;
(E)-(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-non-6-enoic acid;
15 (Z)-(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-non-6-enoic acid;
(E)-(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-non-7-enoic acid;
(Z)-(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-non-7-enoic acid;
(E)-(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-dec-7-enoic acid;
(Z)-(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-dec-7-enoic acid;
20 3-Aminomethyl-6-cyclopropyl-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-6-cyclobutyl-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-6-cyclopentyl-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-6-cyclohexyl-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-7-cyclopropyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
25 3-Aminomethyl-7-cyclobutyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-7-cyclopentyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-7-cyclohexyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-8-cyclopropyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-8-cyclobutyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
30 3-Aminomethyl-8-cyclopentyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-8-cyclohexyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;

-83-

- 3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-nonanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-decanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-undecanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5,7-dimethyl-octanoic acid;
5 3-Aminomethyl-5,8-dimethyl-nonanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5,9-dimethyl-decanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5,6-dimethyl-heptanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5,6,6-trimethyl-heptanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-cyclopropyl-hexanoic acid;
10 3-Aminomethyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-7-fluoro-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-8-fluoro-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-7,7,7-trifluoro-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-8,8,8-trifluoro-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
15 3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-hept-6-enoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-oct-7-enoic acid;
3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-non-8-enoic acid;
(E)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-oct-6-enoic acid;
(Z)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-oct-6-enoic acid;
20 (E)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-non-6-enoic acid;
(Z)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-non-6-enoic acid;
(E)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-non-7-enoic acid;
(Z)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-non-7-enoic acid;
(E)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-dec-7-enoic acid; and
25 (Z)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-dec-7-enoic acid.

-84-

Method 4 (Scheme 12)



A compound of structure 40 could be prepared from compound of structure 39 through treatment with diethylaminosulphur trifluoride in a solvent such as methylene chloride at a temperature between -78°C and room temperature. Other methods for the fluorination of alcohols are known and could be utilized as exemplified in Wilkinson, *Chem. Rev.* 1992;92:505-519. Compounds of structure 40 can be converted to the requisite γ -amino acid as described in method 3 above.

A compound of structure 39 could be prepared from compound of structure 38 through treatment with osmium tetroxide and sodium periodate in a

solvent such as THF and water and reduction of the resultant intermediate with sodium borohydride in a solvent such as ethanol.

Compounds of structures 38 and 34 could be prepared from compound of structure 33 according to the principles described in method 3.

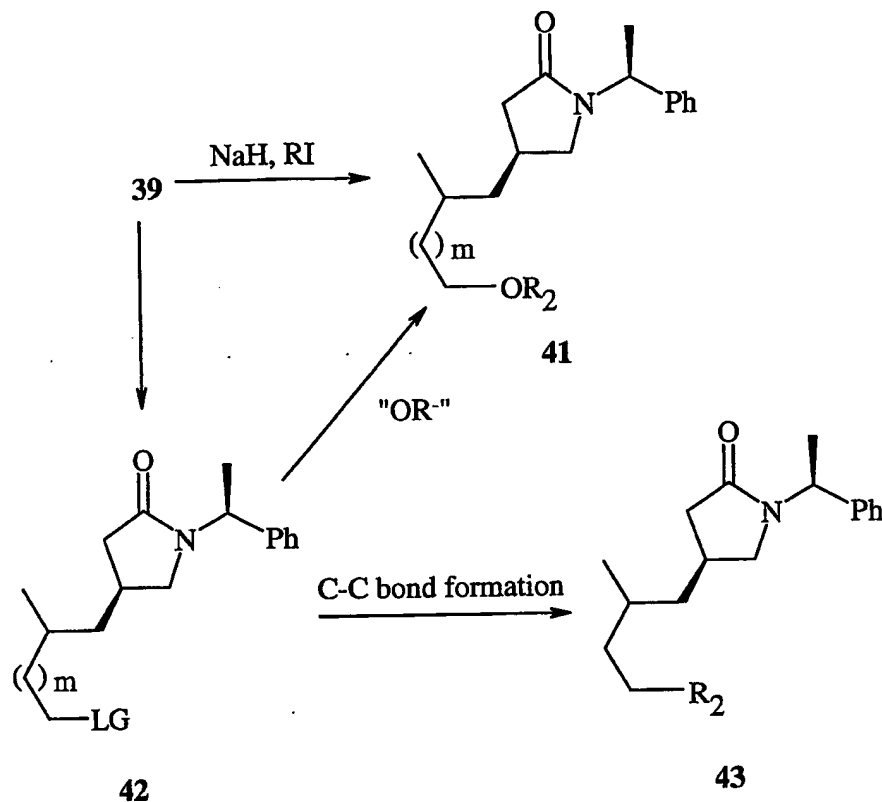
5 An alternative procedure for the synthesis of alcohol 39 (n =0) involves the treatment of a compound of structure 36 with a metal borohydride, such as sodium borohydride in a solvent such as tetrahydrofuran or DME and alike to give a compound of structure 37, the fluorination of which could be achieved in a similar manner to the preparation of a compound of structure 40. A compound of
10 structure 36 could be prepared from compound of structure 35 through treatment with sodium or lithium chloride in aqueous DMSO at a temperature between room temperature and reflux. Preferably the reaction is carried out using sodium chloride in aqueous DMSO at reflux. A compound of structure 35 could be prepared from compound of structure 34 through treatment with a suitable methyl
15 malonic acid diester, such as dimethyl methylmalonate and alike with sodium hydride in a solvent such as DMSO or THF and alike. Preferably the reaction is carried out by adding NaH to a solution of dimethyl methylmalonate in DMSO followed by the addition of the lactam 34 (where LG is preferably iodide or as defined in method 3) pre-dissolved in DMSO.

20 Compounds 39 and 37 can be converted to the free amino acids bearing a hydroxyl group by the methods described above.

The following compounds could be prepared in this manner:

(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
25 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-fluoro-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-8-fluoro-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-9-fluoro-5-methyl-nonanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-hydroxy-5-methyl-heptanoic acid; and
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-hydroxy-5-methyl-hexanoic acid.

Method 5 (Scheme 13)



A compound of structure 41 could be prepared from compound of structure 39 through treatment with a suitable alkyl iodide (or alkyl sulphonate), such as methyl iodide and alike, and a base such as n-butyl lithium or sodium hydride and alike, in a solvent such as DMSO or THF and alike. Preferably the reaction is carried out by adding NaH to a solution of the alcohol in DMSO followed by the addition of the alkyl iodide and heating of the reaction mixture at a temperature between room temperature and reflux. The conversion of compounds of structure 41 to the γ -amino acids has been described above.

Alternatively, compounds of structure 41 could be derived from compounds of structure 42 (where LG = iodide, bromide or an sulphonic acid ester, as exemplified in method 3) by treatment of an appropriate alkoxy anion in a solvent such as DMSO or THF and alike. A compound of structure 42 would also serve as a substrate for carbon-carbon bond forming procedures as outlined in method 3.

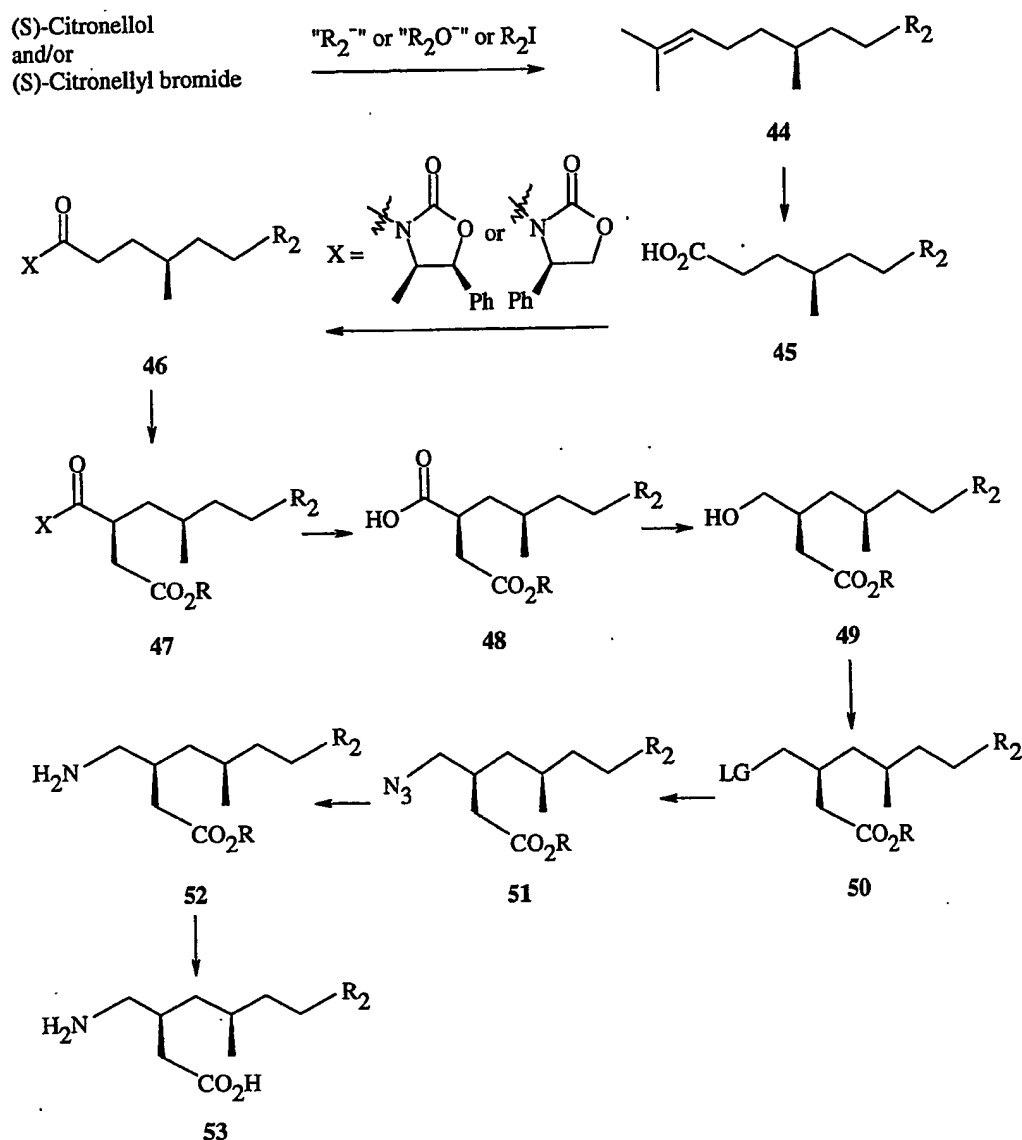
Compounds which could be prepared in this manner include:

-87-

- (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-hydroxy-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-methoxy-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-ethoxy-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-propoxy-heptanoic acid;
5 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-fluoromethoxy-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-fluoro-ethoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-(3,3,3-trifluoro-propoxy)-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-hydroxy-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-methoxy-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
10 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-ethoxy-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-propoxy-hexanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-fluoromethoxy-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(2-fluoro-ethoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid; and
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-(3,3,3-trifluoro-propoxy)-hexanoic acid.

-88-

Method 6 (Scheme 14)



Compounds of structure **53** could be prepared from a compound of structure **45** as shown above and by the general procedures described in Hoekstra et. al., *Organic Process Research and Development*, 1997;1:26-38.

Compounds of structure **45** can be prepared from compounds of structure **44** by treatment with a solution of chromium trioxide in water/sulfuric acid. Alternative methods of cleaving the olefin in **44** could be utilized as detailed in Hudlicky, *Oxidations in Organic Chemistry*, ACS Monograph 186, ACS 1990:77.

Compounds of structure **44** (where R₂ = alkyl, branched alkyl, cycloalkyl, alkyl-cycloalkyl) could be prepared from (S)-citronellyl bromide by carbon-carbon bond forming reactions known in the art and as described in method 3. The substitution of the halide in (S)-citronellyl bromide with alkoxy anions could also
5 be used to provide compounds of structure **44** where R = alkoxy or phenoxy ethers (and appropriate substitutions thereof as according to Formula 1). Alternatively (S)-citronellol could be utilized to afford compounds of structure **44** by treatment of (S)-citronellol with a base such as sodium hydride, and treatment of the resultant alkoxide with an appropriate alkyl halide to afford ethers. In another
10 method (S)-citronellyl bromide (or an appropriate sulphonic ester such as, but not limited to, methanesulfonic acid (S)-3,7-dimethyl-oct-6-enyl ester) could be reduced with an appropriate metal borohydride or with an aluminum hydride species, such as LAH, to provide (R)-2,6-dimethyl-oct-2-ene.

To one skilled in the art it will be appreciated that rational choice of either
15 *R*- or *S*-citronellol or *R*- or *S*-citronellyl bromide would give rise to the requisite isomer at C5 of the final amino acid.

Compounds which could be prepared in this manner include:

- (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-methoxy-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
- (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-ethoxy-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
- 20 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-propoxy-heptanoic acid;
- (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-isopropoxy-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
- (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-*tert*-butoxy-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
- (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-fluoromethoxy-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
- (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-fluoro-ethoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
- 25 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-(3,3,3-trifluoro-propoxy)-heptanoic acid;
- (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-benzyloxy-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
- (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-phenoxy-heptanoic acid;
- (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(4-chloro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
- 30 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
- (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
- (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(4-fluoro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;

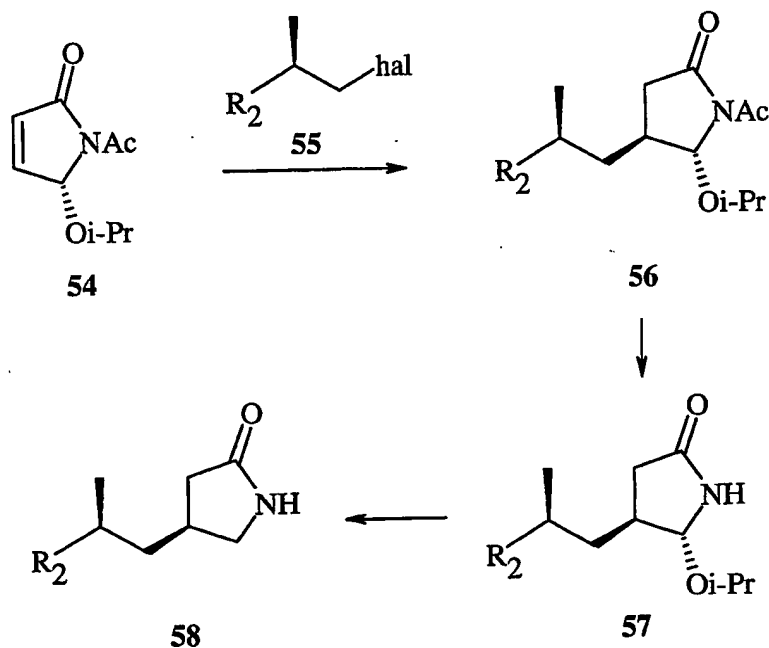
-90-

- (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(3-fluoro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-fluoro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(3-methoxy-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
5 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-methoxy-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-(4-trifluoromethyl-phenoxy)-
heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-(3-trifluoromethyl-phenoxy)-
heptanoic acid;
10 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-(2-trifluoromethyl-phenoxy)-
heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-(4-nitro-phenoxy)-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-(3-nitro-phenoxy)-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-(2-nitro-phenoxy)-heptanoic acid;
15 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-cyclopropyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-cyclobutyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-cyclopentyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-cyclohexyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-8-cyclopropyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
20 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-8-cyclobutyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-8-cyclopentyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-8-cyclohexyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
25 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-nonanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-decanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-undecanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5,9-dimethyl-decanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5,8-dimethyl-nonanoic acid;
30 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-fluoro-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-8-fluoro-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-8,8,8-trifluoro-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-phenyl-heptanoic acid;

-91-

- (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(4-chloro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(3-chloro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-chloro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
 5 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(3-methoxy-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-methoxy-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(3-fluoro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-fluoro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid; and
 10 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5,10-dimethyl-undecanoic acid.

Method 7 (Scheme 15)



- A compound of structure 58 can be prepared from a compound of structure 57 by treatment with borontrifluoride diethyletherate and triethylsilane in a solvent such as CH₂Cl₂. Alternatively the method described in Meyers, *J. Org. Chem.*, 1993;58:36-42, could be utilized thus treating a compound of structure 57 with sodium cyanoborohydride in a solvent such as THF/methanol with 3% HCl in methanol.
- 15

-92-

A compound of structure 57 can be prepared from a compound of structure 56 by treatment with dimethylamine in a solvent such as DMF and alike according to the procedure of Koot, *Tetrahedron Lett.*, 1992;33:7969-7972.

5 A compound of structure 56 can be prepared from a compound of structure 54 by treatment of a suitable primary halide 55 (iodide, bromide, or chloride) under standard transmetallation conditions with tBuLi and treatment of the resultant organometallic reagent with suitable copper salt, such as but not limited to, copper bromide or copper iodide. The resultant organo-cuprate is added to lactam (see Koot et al, *J. Org. Chem.*, 1992;57:1059-1061 for the preparation of
10 the chiral lactam 54) in a solvent such as THF and alike. The procedure of Koot, *Tetrahedron Lett.*, 1992;33:7969-7972 exemplifies this method.

To one skilled in the art it will be appreciated that rational choice of either R- or S-primary halides 55 would give rise to the requisite isomer at C5 of the final amino acid.

15 Compounds which could be prepared in this manner include:
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methoxy-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-ethoxy-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-propoxy-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-isopropoxy-hexanoic acid;
20 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-tert-butoxy-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-fluoromethoxy-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(2-fluoro-ethoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(3,3,3-trifluoro-propoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-phenoxy-hexanoic acid;
25 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(4-chloro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(4-fluoro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(3-fluoro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
30 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(2-fluoro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(3-methoxy-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(2-methoxy-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;

-93-

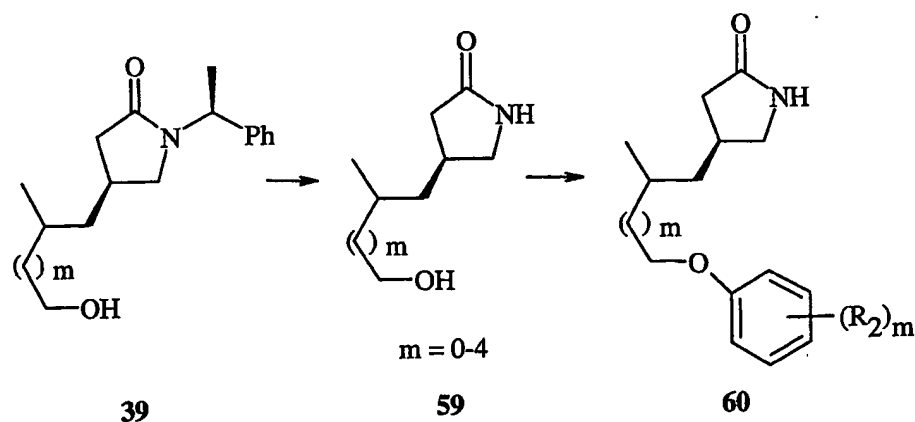
- (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(4-nitro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(3-nitro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-(2-nitro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-methoxy-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
5 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-ethoxy-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-propoxy-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-isopropoxy-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-*tert*-butoxy-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-fluoromethoxy-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
10 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(2-fluoro-ethoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-(3,3,3-trifluoro-propoxy)-hexanoic
acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-phenoxy-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(4-chloro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
15 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(4-fluoro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(3-fluoro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(2-fluoro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
20 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(3-methoxy-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(2-methoxy-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-(4-trifluoromethyl-phenoxy)-hexanoic
acid;
25 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-(3-trifluoromethyl-phenoxy)-hexanoic
acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-(2-trifluoromethyl-phenoxy)-hexanoic
acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-(4-nitro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
30 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-(3-nitro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-(2-nitro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-benzyloxy-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-6-cyclopropyl-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;

- (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-6-cyclobutyl-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-6-cyclopentyl-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-6-cyclohexyl-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
5 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-nonanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-decanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-undecanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-dodecanoic acid;
10 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5,7-dimethyl-octanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5,8-dimethyl-nonanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5,9-dimethyl-decanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5,10-dimethyl-undecanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5,6-dimethyl-heptanoic acid;
15 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5,6, 6-trimethyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-cyclopropyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-fluoro-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-8-fluoro-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
20 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-7,7,7-trifluoro-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-8,8,8-trifluoro-5-methyl-octanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-phenyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(4-chloro-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(3-chloro-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
25 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(2-chloro-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(3-methoxy-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(2-methoxy-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
30 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(3-fluoro-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(2-fluoro-phenyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-phenyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(4-chloro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;

-95-

- (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(3-chloro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-chloro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(3-methoxy-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
 5 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-methoxy-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(3-fluoro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-fluoro-phenyl)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-hept-6-enoic acid;
 10 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-oct-7-enoic acid;
 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-non-8-enoic acid;
 (E)-(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-oct-6-enoic acid;
 (Z)-(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-oct-6-enoic acid;
 (Z)-(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-non-6-enoic acid;
 15 (E)-(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-non-6-enoic acid;
 (E)-(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-non-7-enoic acid;
 (Z)-(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-non-7-enoic acid;
 (Z)-(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-dec-7-enoic acid; and
 (E)-(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-undec-7-enoic acid.

20 Method 8 (Scheme 16)



A compound of structure **60** can be prepared from a compound of structure **59** through treatment with an appropriately substituted phenol (including phenol itself) under conditions described by Mitsunobu, *Synthesis*, 1981:1.

5 A compound of structure **59** could be prepared from compound of structure **39** by treatment with sodium or lithium metal and alike in ammonia. Preferably, the reaction is carried out with sodium metal in ammonia.

The direct hydrolysis of compound **60** would give rise to the desired amino acid or the approach via hydrolysis of the Boc protected lactam could be utilized.

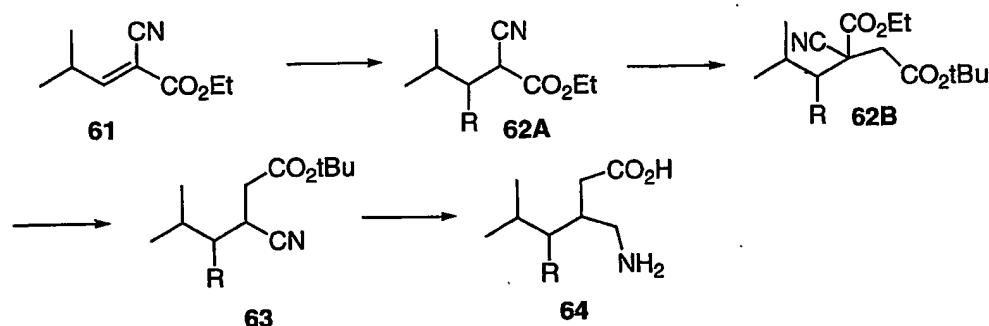
Compounds which could be prepared in this manner include:

- 10 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-phenoxy-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(4-chloro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(4-fluoro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
15 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(3-fluoro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-fluoro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(3-methoxy-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-(2-methoxy-phenoxy)-5-methyl-heptanoic acid;
20 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-(4-trifluoromethyl-phenoxy)-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-(3-trifluoromethyl-phenoxy)-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-(2-trifluoromethyl-phenoxy)-heptanoic acid;
25 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-(4-nitro-phenoxy)-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-(3-nitro-phenoxy)-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-7-(2-nitro-phenoxy)-heptanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
30 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(4-fluoro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(3-fluoro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(2-fluoro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;

-97-

(3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(4-methoxy-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(3-methoxy-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(2-methoxy-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid;
 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl 6-(4-trifluoromethyl-phenoxy)-hexanoic
 5 acid;
 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl 6-(3-trifluoromethyl-phenoxy)-hexanoic
 acid;
 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl 6-(2-trifluoromethyl-phenoxy)-hexanoic
 acid;
 10 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl 6-(4-nitro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl 6-(3-nitro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl 6-(2-nitro-phenoxy)-hexanoic acid;
 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-6-phenoxy-hexanoic acid; and
 (3S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-(4-chloro-phenoxy)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid.

15 Method 9 Synthesis of C-4 substituted analogs (Scheme 17)



A compound of structure **64** could be prepared from compound of structure **63** by treatment of **63** with hydrogen at 50 psi in the presence of a catalyst such as Raney nickel in the presence of a base such as triethyl amine in an organic solvent for example methanol. The resulting product is then treated with an aqueous acid such as 6N HCl at a temperature between room temperature and reflux. The resulting mixture could be subjected to ion exchange chromatography to isolate the product **64**.

A compound of structure **63** can be prepared from a compound of structure **62B** by treatment with an appropriate base, such as but not limited to

-98-

sodium hydride, n-butyl lithium and alike, and an alkylating reagent such as t-butylbromoacetate or benzylbromoacetate in a solvent such as DMSO or THF and alike. Preferably, the reaction is carried out by treating a solution of a compound of structure **62B** in THF with sodium hydride and alkylation of the resultant anion with t-butylbromoacetate.

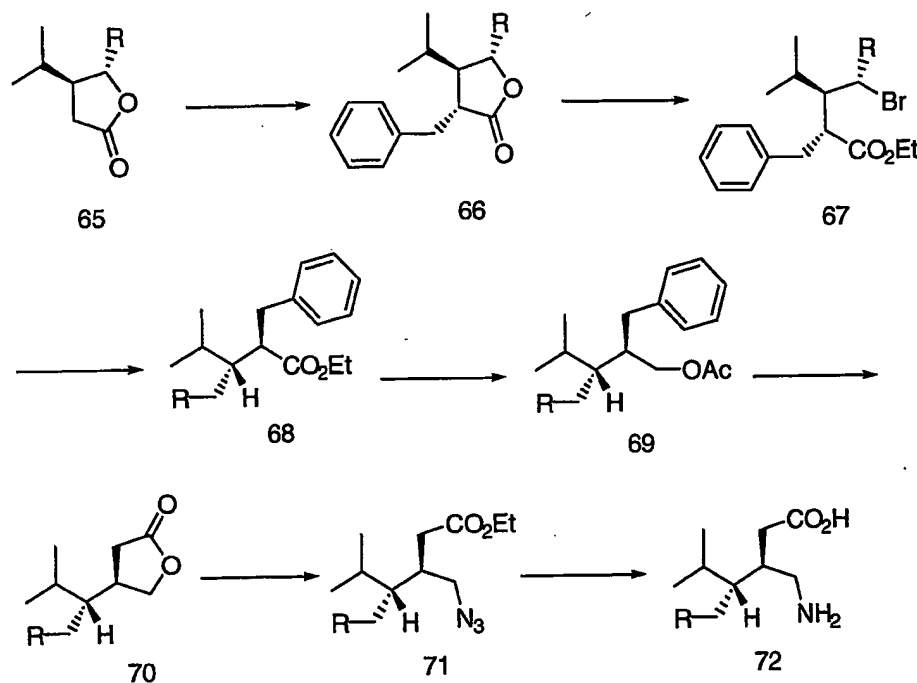
A compound of structure **62B** can be prepared from a compound of structure **62A** by treatment with sodium chloride in a solvent such as aqueous DMSO at a temperature between 50°C and reflux.

A compound of structure **62A** can be prepared from a compound of structure **61** by treatment with an appropriate alkylmetalhalide such as an alkyl lithium reagent or an organomagnesium halide in a solvent such as THF or ether in the presence of a copper salt, such as but not limited to copper iodide, copper bromide dimethylsulphide. Alternatively, the reaction may be carried out by the treatment of the nitrile in a solvent such as ether at, or below, room temperature with an alkylmagnesium chloride.

A compound such as **61** can be prepared according to known literature procedures between the condensation of isobutyraldehyde and methylcyanoacetate.

-99-

Method 10: C-4 Substitution (Scheme 18)



Doubly branched 3-substituted $\alpha_2\delta$ ligands **72** can be prepared in two steps from the azide **71** through hydrogenation of the azide **71** in the presence of a noble metal catalyst such as 5% palladium on carbon and hydrolysis of the resulting lactam with a strong acid such as 6 N HCl at reflux. The final product **72** can then be isolated using ion exchange chromatography.

Compound **71** can be prepared in two steps by treatment of a lactone such as **70** with HBr in a solvent such as ethanol at a temperature such as 0°C and reacting the resulting bromide with sodium azide in a solvent such as dimethyl sulfoxide at a temperature between 10°C and 80°C.

Lactone **70** can be prepared in two steps by oxidation of a compound such as **69** with an oxidant such as sodium periodate in the presence of a catalytic amount of ruthenium trichloride in a solvent such as acetonitrile at a temperature between 0°C and 100°C and treatment of the resulting compound with potassium carbonate in methanol followed at a temperature between 25°C and 70°C and then treatment with an acid such as p-toluene sulfonic acid in a solvent such as THF at reflux or an aqueous acid such as HCl in water at ambient temperature.

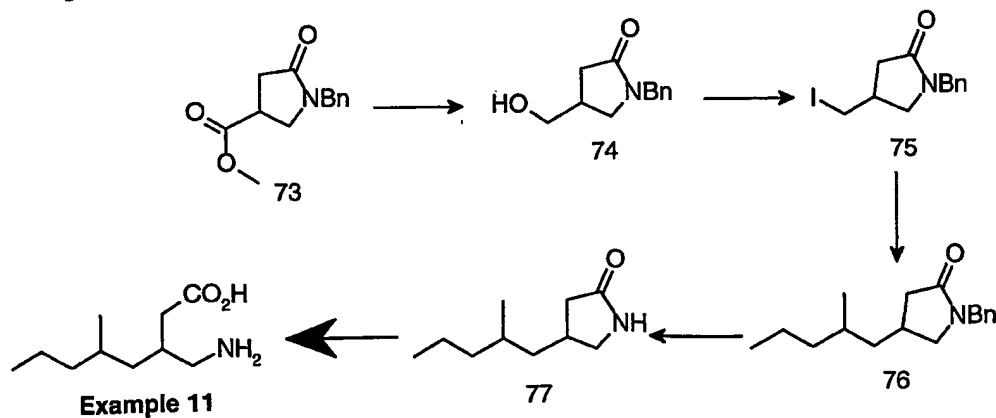
-100-

A compound such as **69** can be prepared by a reduction of a compound such as **68** with a hydride reducing agent such as lithium aluminum hydride in a solvent such as ether or THF and reaction of the resulting alcohol with an acylating agent such as acetic anhydride in the presence of a base such as triethyl amine or pyridine or the like.

Compounds of structure **68** can be prepared by reaction of a compound such as **67** with hydrogen at approximately 50 psi in the presence of a noble metal catalyst such as 5% palladium on carbon in a solvent such as ethanol. A compound of the formula **67** can be prepared by reaction of a compound of structure **66** with a solution of ethanol saturated with hydrogen bromide gas. A compound such as **66** can be prepared from a compound such as **65** by treatment of a compound such as one with a strong base such as lithium diisopropyl amine in a solvent such as THF at a temperature such as -78°C and reaction of the resulting anion with a compound such as benzyl bromide or benzyl iodide. Compounds of the structure **66** ($\text{R} = \text{H}$ or lower alkyl) can be prepared in optical form from methods known in the literature (Davies, *J. Org. Chem.*, 1999;64(23):8501-8508; Koch *J. Org. Chem.*, 1993;58(10):2725-37; Afonso, *Tetrahedron*, 1993;49(20):4283-92; Bertus, *Tetrahedron*, Asymmetry 1999;10(7):1369-1380; Yamamoto, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1992;114(20):7652-60).

Specific Examples

Example 11: Synthesis of 3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid



-101-

1-Benzyl-4-hydroxymethyl-pyrrolidine-2-one 74

Sodium borohydride (8.0 g, 0.211 mol) was added to a solution of methyl-1-benzyl-5-oxo-3-pyrrolidnecarboxylate **73** (See Zoretic et al, *J. Org. Chem.*, 1980;45:810-814 for general method of synthesis) (32.0 g, 0.137 mol) in 1,2-dimethoxyethane (600 mL) and refluxed for 19 hours. The reaction was cooled to room temperature and 200 mL of water was added. The reaction was quenched with 1 M citric acid and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was extracted with dichloromethane, dried over magnesium sulfate, and evaporated to dryness to give 17.47 g, 62% of the alcohol **74** as clear oil.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 7.30 (m, 5H), 4.38 (d, 1H, *J* = 14.7), 4.46 (d, 1H, *J* = 14.7), 3.56 (m, 2H), 3.36 (m, 1H), 3.10 (m, 1H), 2.52 (m, 2H), 2.26 (m, 1H). MS, *m/z* (relative intensity): 207 [M+2H, 66%]. IR (KBr) 3345, 2946, 2866, 1651, 1445, 1025, 737, and 698 cm⁻¹.

1-Benzyl-4-iodomethyl-pyrrolidin-2-one 75

To alcohol lactam **74** (11.18 g, 0.056 mol) in 210 mL toluene was added in turn, triphenylphosphine (20.0 g, 0.076 mol), imidazole (10.8 g, 0.159 mol), and iodine (19.0 g, 0.075 mol). After stirring the suspension for 1.5 hours, the supernatant was poured into another flask. The sticky yellow residue was washed twice with ether and the solutions were combined. The solvent was evaporated and the residue was chromatographed on silica, eluting with 1:1 acetone/hexane to give 7.92 g, 46% of the iodolactam **75** as yellow oil. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 7.25 (m, 5H), 4.38 (d, 1H, *J* = 14.6), 4.46 (d, 1H, *J* = 14.6), 3.38 (dd, 1H, *J* = 7.8 and 2.2), 3.20 (dd, 1H, *J* = 5.6 and 4.4), 3.12 (dd, 1H, *J* = 7.3 and 2.4), 2.96 (dd, 1H, *J* = 5.8 and 4.4), 2.60 (m, 2H), 2.22 (dd, 1H, *J* = 10.5 and 9.7). MS, *m/z* (relative intensity): 224 [M-H-Bn, 94%], 317 [M+2H, 64%]. IR 3027, 2917, 1688, 1438, 1267, and 701 cm⁻¹.

1-Benzyl-4-(2-methyl-pentyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one 76

To a suspension of magnesium turnings (0.50 g, 0.021 mol) in 15 mL of dry THF under nitrogen, was added an iodine crystal and 2-bromopentane (2.88 g, 0.019 mol). After an exothermic reaction which was periodically cooled in an ice

-102-

bath, the reaction was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. Eight milliliters of Li_2CuCl_4 (made from 84 mg LiCl and 134 mg CuCl_2 in 10 mL of dry THF) was added at 0°C followed by dropwise addition of 1-Benzyl-4-iodomethyl-pyrrolidine-2-one **75** in 15 mL dry THF, and the resulting suspension was let stir at 0°C for 3 hours. Stirring was continued at room temperature for 1 hour before quenching with a saturated solution of ammonium chloride. Water was added to dissolve the precipitate formed, and the solution was then extracted with ether and dried over magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under vacuum and the residue chromatographed on silica eluting with 1:1 acetone/hexane to give 1.13 g, 69% of the 1-benzyl-4-(2-methyl-pentyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one **76**. ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 7.30 (m, 5H), 4.44 (m, 2H), 3.32 (m, 1H), 2.86 (m, 1H), 2.56 (m, 1H), 2.40 (m, 1H), 2.10 (m, 1H), 1.30 (m, 6H), 1.10 (m, 1H), 0.90 (m, 6H). MS, m/z (relative intensity): 261 [$\text{M}+2\text{H}$, 100%], 301 [$\text{M}-\text{H}+\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$, 82%], 260 [$\text{M}+\text{H}$, 72%].

4-(2-Methyl-pentyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one **77**

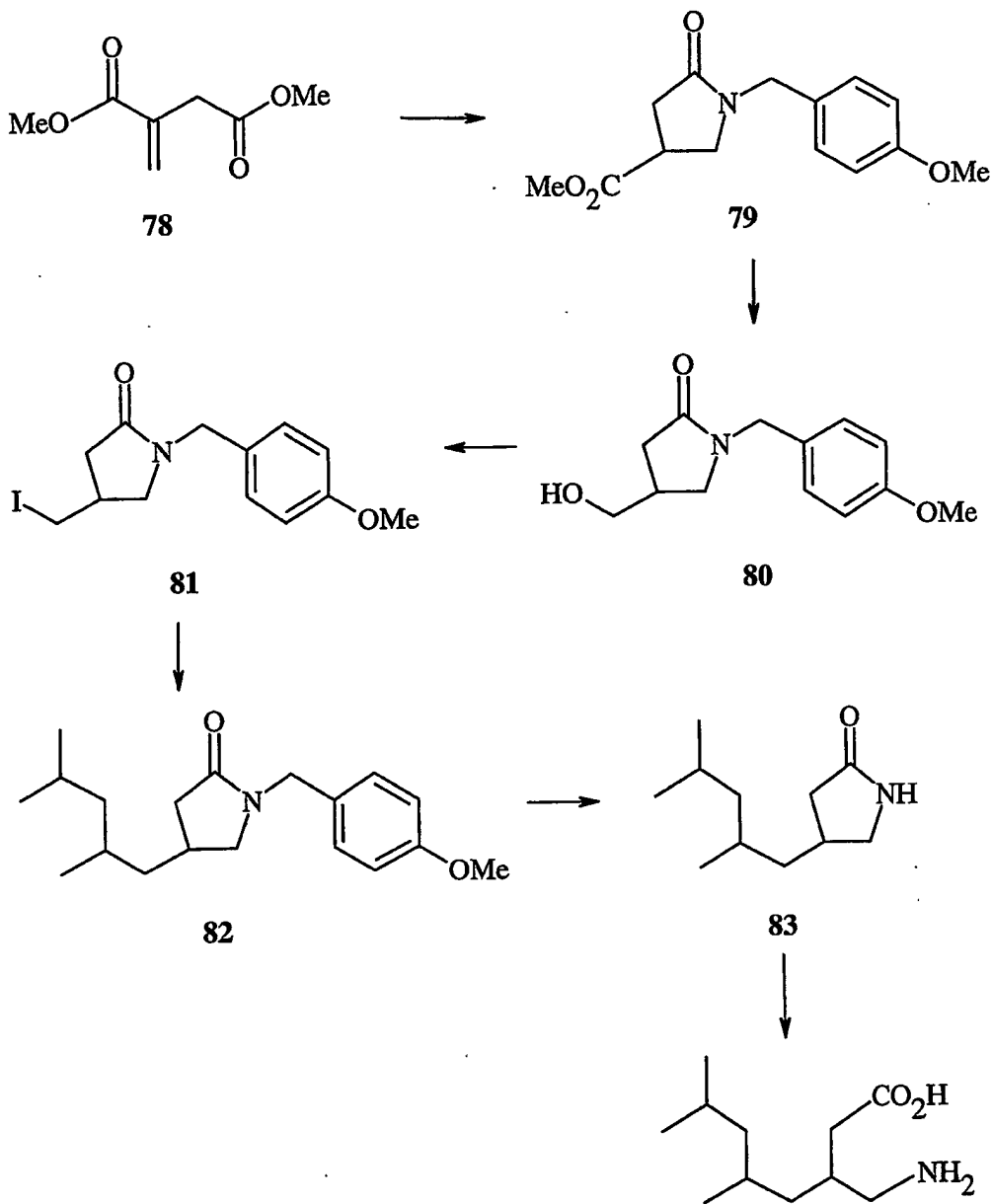
A 250 mL 3-neck flask equipped with a dry ice condenser was chilled to -78°C . Ammonia (80 mL) was condensed into the flask and 1-benzyl-4-(2-methyl-pentyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one **76** (1.67 g, 0.006 mol) in 15 mL THF was added. Freshly cut sodium beads were added until a deep blue color persisted. The cooling bath was removed and the reaction stirred at reflux (-33°C) for 1 hour. The reaction was quenched with ammonium chloride and the excess ammonia was allowed to evaporate. The resulting residue was diluted with water, extracted with dichloromethane, and dried over magnesium sulfate. Evaporation of the solvent followed by chromatography on silica eluting with 1:1 acetone/hexane gave 0.94 g, 86% of the 4-(2-Methyl-pentyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one **77**. ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 6.25 (br, 1H), 3.44 (m, 1H), 2.95 (m, 1H), 2.54 (m, 1H), 2.40 (m, 1H), 1.98 (m, 1H), 1.30 (m, 6H), 0.80 (m, 6H). MS, m/z (relative intensity): 212 [$\text{M}+2\text{H}+\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$, 100%], 171 [$\text{M}+2\text{H}$, 72%], 170 [$\text{M}+1\text{H}$, 65%].

-103-

3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid (Example 11)

The 4-(2-methyl-pentyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one **77** (0.94 g, 0.007 mol) was dissolved in 70 mL of 6N HCl and refluxed for 20 hours. The solution was evaporated under vacuum and an aqueous solution of the residue was applied to
5 Dowex 50WX 8-100 (strongly acidic) ion exchange resin that had been washed with HPLC grade water. The column was eluted, first with water until the eluent was at constant pH, and then with 5% ammonium hydroxide solution. The ammonium hydroxide fractions were evaporated and azeotroped with toluene. The white solid was washed with acetone filtered and dried in a vacuum oven for
10 24 hours to give the amino acid 0.61 g, 59%. ¹H NMR (CD₃OD) δ 3.00 (m, 1H), 2.85 (m, 1H), 2.48 (m, 1H), 2.30 (m, 1H), 2.14 (brm, 1H), 1.60 (brm, 1H), 1.38 (m, 4H), 1.18 (m, 2H), 0.60 (m, 6H). MS, *m/z* (relative intensity): 188 [M+H, 100%].

-104-

Example 12: Synthesis of 3-Aminomethyl-5,7-dimethyl-octanoic acid**Example 12****1-(4-Methoxy-benzyl)-5-oxo-pyrrolidine-3-carboxylic acid methyl ester 79**

To 4-methoxybenzylamine (42 g, 0.306 mol) in methanol (40 mL) at 0°C was added the dimethyl itaconate (48 g, 0.306 mol) in methanol (13 mL). The solution was stirred at room temperature for 4 days. 1N HCl was added to the solution followed by ether. The two layers were separated and the aqueous phase

-105-

extracted with ether. The combined organic phases were dried (MgSO₄). Upon filtration of the drying agent the desired material **79** precipitated from solution that was collected and dried under vacuum. 23.26 g, 29%. MS, *m/z* (relative intensity): 264 [M+H, 100%]. Anal. Calcd for C₁₄H₁₇N₁O₄: C, 63.87; H, 6.51; N, 5.32. Found: C, 63.96; H, 6.55; N, 5.29.

4-Hydroxymethyl-1-(4-methoxy-benzyl)-pyrrolidine-2-one **80**

NaBH₄ (15 g, 0.081 mol) was added in portions to ester **79** in ethanol (600 mL) at room temperature. After 4.5 hours water (~200 mL) was carefully added to the reaction and the solution stirred at room temperature overnight. The resultant solid was removed by filtration and the filtrate concentrated to give alcohol **80** as an oil. 15.33 g, 81%. MS, *m/z* (relative intensity): 235 [M+H, 100%].

4-Iodomethyl-1-(4-methoxy-benzyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one **81**

To alcohol **80** (12.9 g, 0.055 mol) in PhMe was added triphenylphosphine (20 g, 0.077 mol), imidazole (10.8 g, 0.16 mol), and iodine (19 g, 0.075 mol). The suspension was stirred at room temperature 5 hours. A saturated aqueous solution of sodium thiosulphate was added and the two layers separated. The aqueous phase was extracted with ether and the combined organic phases washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated. Flash chromatography (6:1 to 4:1 toluene/acetone) of the residue gave iodide **81** as an oil. 11.9g, 63%. MS, *m/z* (relative intensity): 346 [M+H, 100%].

4-(2,4-Dimethyl-pentyl)-1-(4-methoxy-benzyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one **82**

A procedure similar to the preparation of 1-benzyl-4-(2-methyl-pentyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one **76** was utilized to give 4-(2,4-dimethyl-pentyl)-1-(4-methoxy-benzyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one as an oil. 1.22g, 29%. MS, *m/z* (relative intensity): 304 [M+H, 100%].

4-(2,4-Dimethyl-pentyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one **83**

-106-

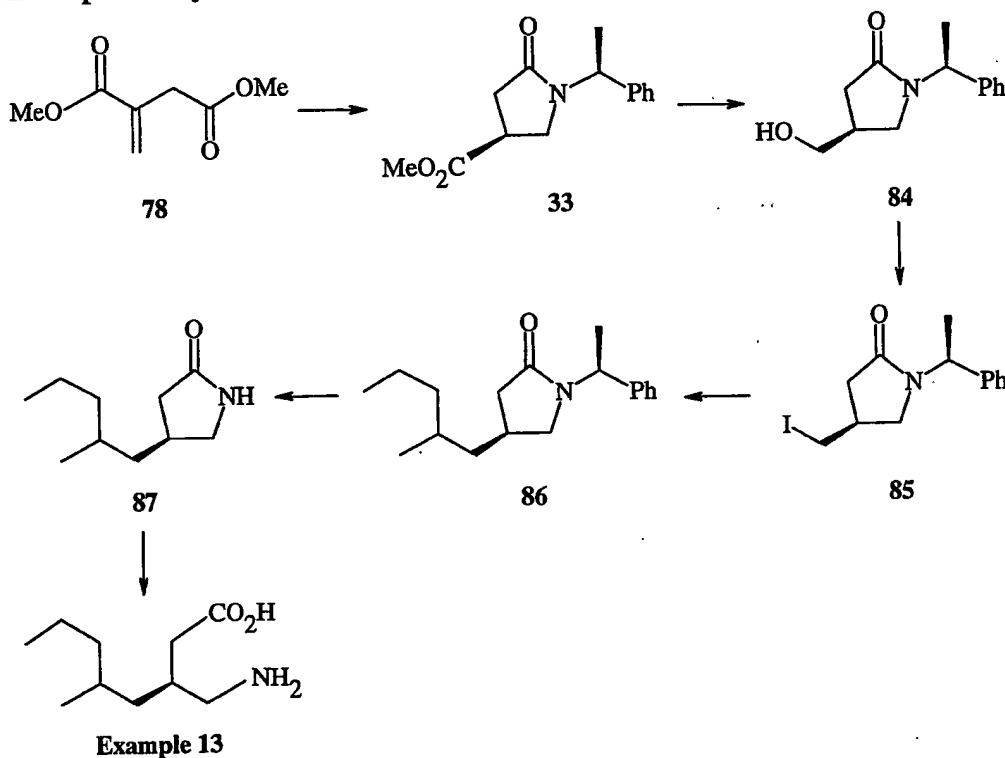
To the lactam (1.17 g, 3.86 mmol) in MeCN (20 mL) at 0°C was added ceric ammonium nitrate (4.2 g, 7.7 mmol) in H₂O (10 mL). After 50 minutes a further portion of ceric ammonium nitrate (2.1 g, 3.86 mmol) was added, and after 1 hour the mixture was absorbed onto silica and flash chromatographed to give an oil. MS, *m/z* (relative intensity): 183 [M+H, 100%].

5

3-Aminomethyl-5,7-dimethyl-octanoic acid (Example 12)

A procedure similar to the preparation of 3-aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid (Example 3) was utilized to give the amino acid as a solid. MS, *m/z* (relative intensity): 202 [M+H, 100%].

10 Example 13: Synthesis of (S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid



(S)-4-Hydroxymethyl-1-((S)-1-phenyl-ethyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one 84

To the ester 33 (49 g, 0.198 mol) in EtOH (600 mL) was added sodium borohydride (22 g, 0.595 mol). After 7 hours, 1 M citric acid was carefully added and, after effervescence had ceased, water was added to fully quench the reaction. The ethanol was removed under reduced pressure and ethyl acetate added. The

15

-107-

resultant two layers were separated, the aqueous phase was extracted with EtOAc, and the combined organic phases dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated to give a heavy oil. MS, *m/z* (relative intensity): [M+H, 100%].

(S)-4-Iodomethyl-1-((S)-1-phenyl-ethyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one 85

5 A procedure similar to the iodination of compound **80** was utilized giving iodide **85** as an oil. 35.2 g, 56%. Anal. Calcd for C₁₃H₁₆I₁N₁O₁: C, 47.43; H, 4.90; N, 4.25. Found: C, 47.41; H, 4.83; N, 4.17.

4-(2-Methyl-pentyl)-1-((S)-1-phenyl-ethyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one 86

10 A procedure similar to the preparation of 1-benzyl-4-(2-methyl-pentyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one **76** was utilized to give 2.71 g, 81.0% of **86** as an oil. MS, *m/z* (relative intensity): 274 [M+1H, 100%], 315 [M+H+CH₃CN, 65%].

(S)-4-(2-Methyl-pentyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one 87

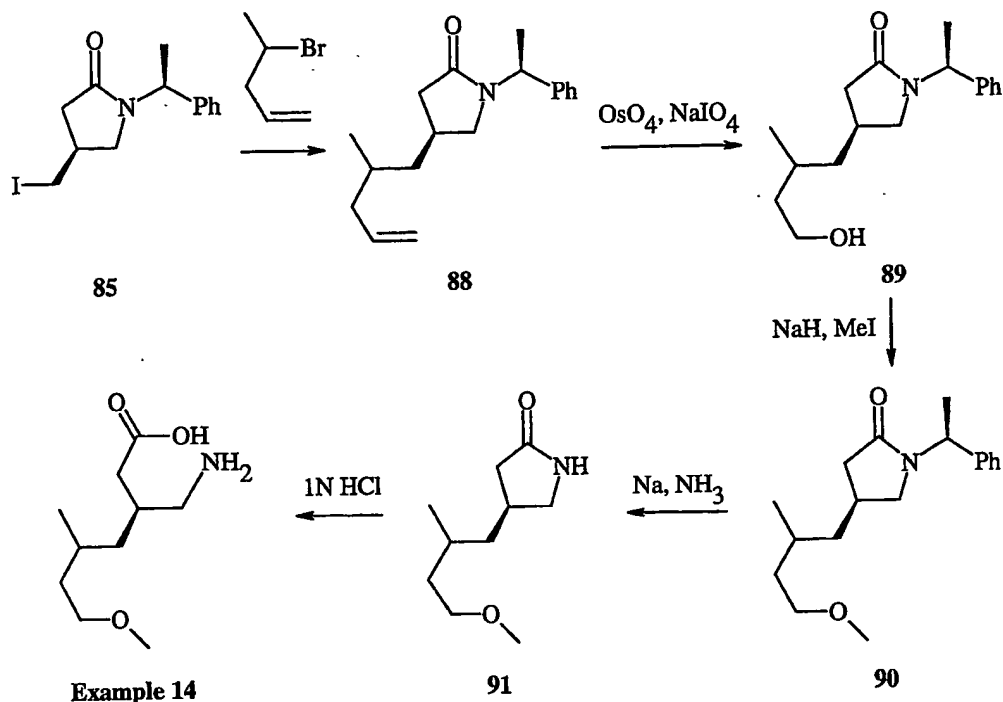
15 A procedure similar to the preparation of 4-(2-methyl-pentyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one **77** was used to give 1.14 g, 72.8% of **87** as an oil. MS, *m/z* (relative intensity): 170 [M+1H, 10%], 211 [M+1H+CH₃CN, 90%].

Example 13: (S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid

20 A procedure similar to the preparation of 3-aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid (Example 11) was used to give the amino acid (example 5) 0.88 g, 74.3%. ¹H NMR (CD₃OD) δ 2.95 (m, 1H), 2.80 (m, 1H), 2.40 (m, 1H), 2.25 (m, 1H), 2.05 (brm, 1H), 1.50 (brm, 1H), 1.30 (m, 4H), 1.10 (m, 2H), 0.90 (m, 6H). MS, *m/z* (relative intensity): 188 [M+1H, 100%], 186 [M-1H, 100%], 229 [M+1H+CH₃CN, 30%].

-108-

Example 14: Synthesis of (S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-methoxy-5-methyl-heptanoic acid



(S)-4-(2-Methyl-pent-4-enyl)-1-((S)-1-phenyl-ethyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one 88

5 A procedure similar to the preparation of 1-benzyl-4-(2-methyl-pentyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one **76** was followed giving the adduct **88** as an oil. 6 g, 74%. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 272 [$\text{M}+\text{H}$, 100%].

(S)-4-(4-Hydroxy-2-methyl-butyl)-1-((S)-1-phenyl-ethyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one 89

10 OsO_4 (2 mL of a 4% wt solution in *t*-BuOH) was added to the alkene **88** (5.8 g, 0.021 mol) in THF/ H_2O (3:1, 100 mL). After 1 hour, sodium periodate (11.4 g, 0.053 mol) was added. After 2 hours, the suspension was filtered and the solids washed with dichloromethane. The filtrate was concentrated and the residue azeotroped with toluene. The residue was dissolved in ethanol and sodium borohydride (2.5 g) added. The suspension was stirred at room temperature overnight. 1N citric acid was added and the mixture diluted with ether. The resultant two layers were separated and the aqueous phase was extracted with ether and the combined organic dried (MgSO_4) and concentrated. Flash

15

-109-

chromatography (1:1 hexane/EtOAc) of the residue gave an oil. 4.2 g, 73%. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 276 [M+H, 100%].

(S)-4-(4-Methoxy-2-methyl-butyl)-1-((S)-1-phenyl-ethyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one 90

To alcohol **89** (2 g, 7.66 mmol) in DMSO (60 mL) at room temperature
5 was added NaH (368 mg, 60% in oil). After 30 minutes the methyl iodide (1.08 g, 7.66 mmol) was added and the solution stirred at room temperature overnight, upon which the reaction was diluted with water (500 mL). The solution was extracted with ether, and the combined organic extracts were dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated. Flash chromatography (90% to 50% hexane/acetone) of the residue
10 gave the product **90** as an oil (1.1 g, 52%). MS m/z 290 (M+H, 100%).

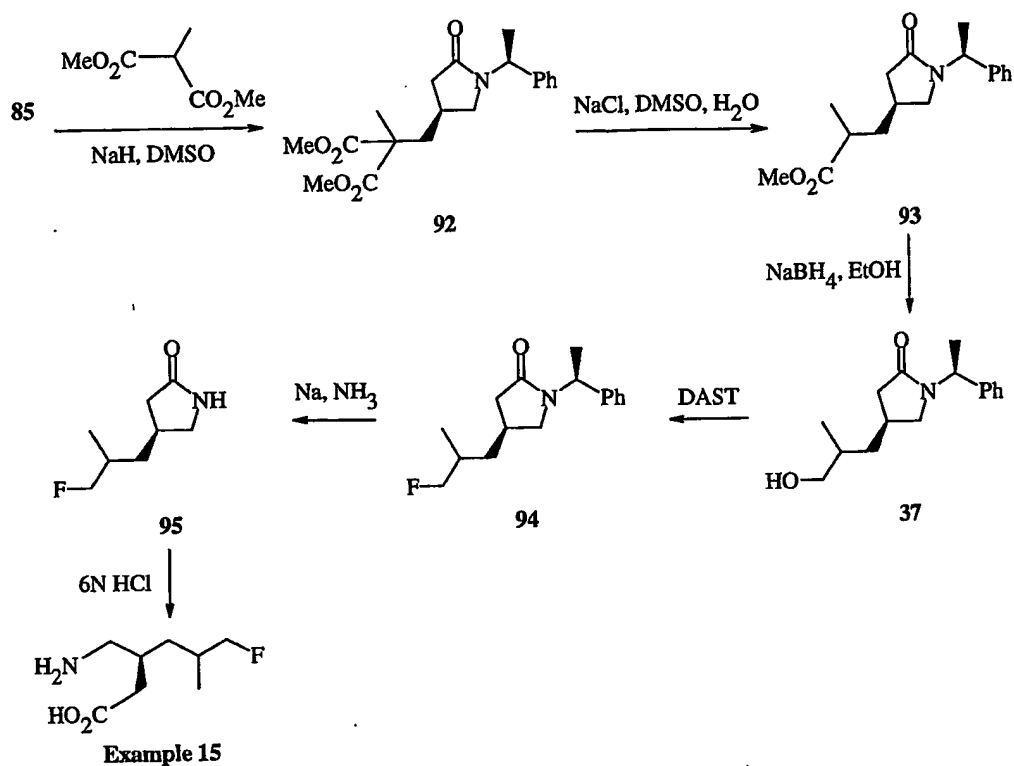
(S)-4-(4-Methoxy-2-methyl-butyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one 91

A procedure similar to the synthesis of 4-(2-methyl-pentyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one **77** was utilized giving lactam **91** as an oil. MS m/z 186 (M+H, 100%).

Example 14: (S)-3-Aminomethyl-7-methoxy-5-methyl-heptanoic acid

15 A procedure similar to the synthesis of example 3 was followed. The resultant amino acid isolated from ion-exchange chromatography was recrystallized from methanol/ethyl acetate to give the example 6 as a white solid. MS m/z 204 (M+H, 100%). Anal. Calcd for C₁₀H₂₁N₁O₃: C, 59.09; H, 10.41; N, 6.89. Found: C, 58.71; H, 10.21; N, 6.67.

-110-

Example 15: Synthesis of (S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-hexanoic acid**2-Methyl-2-[(S)-5-oxo-1-((S)-1-phenyl-ethyl)-pyrrolidin-3-ylmethyl]-malonic acid dimethyl ester 92**

To dimethyl methylmalonate (1.06 g, 7.29 mmol) in DMSO (7 mL) at room temperature was added NaH (291 mg of a 60% dispersion in oil). After the effervescence had ceased the lactam **85** (2 g, 7.29 mol) in DMSO (5 mL) was added. After 1 hour water was added and the aqueous solution extracted with ether. The combined organic extracts were dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated. Flash chromatography (1:1 hexane/acetone) of the residue gave the product as an oil (1.7 g, 81%). MS *m/z* 348 (M+H, 100%).

2-Methyl-3-[(S)-5-oxo-1-((S)-1-phenyl-ethyl)-pyrrolidin-3-yl]-propionic acid methyl ester 93

The ester **92** (483 mg, 1.4 mmol), NaCl (104 mg, 1.8 mmol), water (105 μ L) and DMSO (5 mL) were heated to reflux for 2 hours. The solution was

-111-

cooled to room temperature water was added and the aqueous solution extracted with ether. The combined organic extracts were dried (MgSO_4) and concentrated. Flash chromatography (80% to 66% hexane/acetone) of the residue gave the product as an oil (160 mg, 40%). MS m/z 290 (M+H, 100%).

5 **(S)-4-(3-Hydroxy-2-methyl-propyl)-1-((S)-1-phenyl-ethyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one**
37

To the ester **93** (4.82 g, 0.017 mol) in EtOH (100 mL) was added NaBH_4 (3.7 g, 0.10 mol) and the mixture heated to reflux for 2.5 hours. The solution was cooled to 0°C and 1 M citric acid carefully added followed by water.
10 The solution was concentrated to half volume added and extracted with ether. The combined organic extracts were dried (MgSO_4) and concentrated. Flash chromatography (1:1 hexane/acetone) of the residue gave the product as an oil (2.6 g, 59%). MS m/z 262 (M+H, 100%).

15 **(S)-4-(3-Fluoro-2-methyl-propyl)-1-((S)-1-phenyl-ethyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one 94**

To DAST (1 g, 6.2 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (20 mL) at -78°C was added the alcohol **37** in CH_2Cl_2 (10 mL). After 1 hour at -78°C the solution was warmed to room temperature. After 7 hours the solution was carefully quenched with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium bicarbonate and the two layers separated. The organic phase was dried (MgSO_4) and concentrated. Flash chromatography
20 (90% to 66% hexane/acetone) of the residue gave the product as an oil (600 mg, 37%). MS m/z 264 (M+H, 100%).

(S)-4-(3-Fluoro-2-methyl-propyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one 95

A procedure similar to the preparation of 4-(2-methyl-pentyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one **77** was utilized affording the lactam as an oil (242 mg, 68%). MS m/z
25 159 (M, 100%).

Example 15 (S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-hexanoic acid

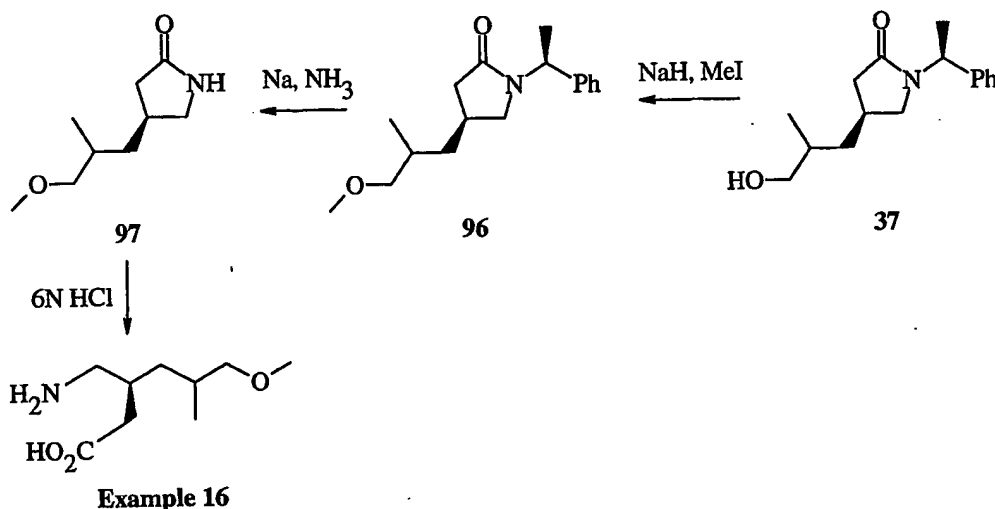
A procedure similar to the synthesis of example 11 was followed. The resultant amino acid isolated from ion-exchange chromatography was

-112-

recrystallized from methanol/ethyl acetate to give example 15 as a white solid. MS m/z 177 (M, 100%). Anal. Calcd for $C_8H_{16}F_1N_1O_2 \cdot 0.02 H_2O$: C, 54.11; H, 9.10; N, 7.89. Found: C, 53.75; H, 9.24; N, 7.72.

Example 16: Synthesis of (S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-methoxy-5-methyl-hexanoic acid

5



(S)-4-(3-Methoxy-2-methyl-propyl)-1-((S)-1-phenyl-ethyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one 96

A procedure similar to the synthesis of (S)-4-(4-methoxy-2-methyl-butyl)-1-((S)-1-phenyl-ethyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one 90 was utilized giving ether 96 as an oil (90 mg, 37%). MS m/z 276 (M+H, 100%).

(S)-4-(3-Methoxy-2-methyl-propyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one 97

A procedure similar to the synthesis of 4-(2-methyl-pentyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one 77 was utilized giving 97 as an oil (760 mg, 93%). MS m/z 171 (M+H, 100%).

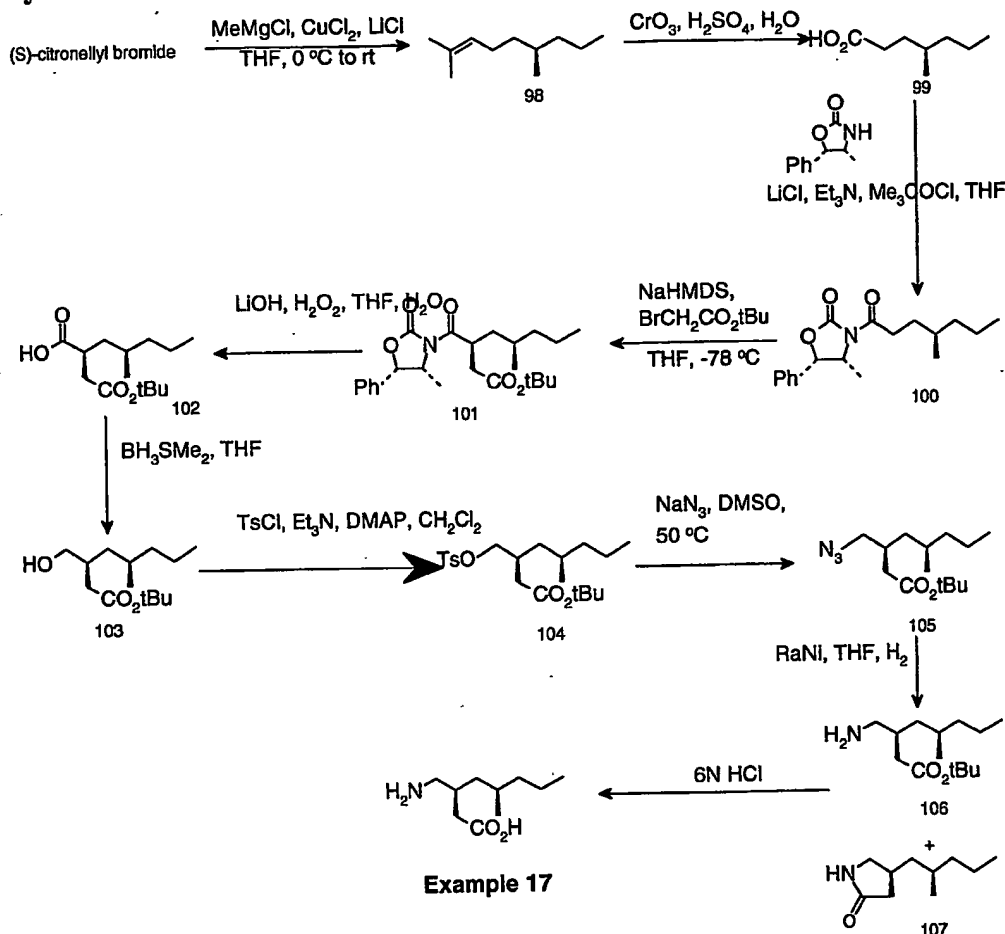
Example 16 (S)-3-Aminomethyl-6-methoxy-5-methyl-hexanoic acid

A procedure similar to the synthesis of example 11 was followed. The resultant amino acid isolated from ion-exchange chromatography was recrystallized from methanol/ethyl acetate to give Example 16 as a white solid. MS m/z 190 (M+H, 100%). Anal. Calcd for $C_9H_{19}N_1O_3$: C, 57.12; H, 10.12; N, 7.76. Found: C, 57.05; H, 10.15; N, 7.72.

-113-

7.40. Found: C, 57.04; H, 10.37; N, 7.30. A second batch precipitated from the mother liquors (1:5 ratio of C5 isomers by ^1H NMR). MS m/z 190 (M+H, 100%).

Example 17: Synthesis of (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid hydrochloride



5

(R)-2,6-Dimethyl-non-2-ene 98

To (S)-citronellyl bromide (50 g, 0.228 mol) in THF (800 mL) at 0°C was added LiCl (4.3 g) followed by CuCl_2 (6.8 g). After 30 minutes methylmagnesium chloride (152 mL of a 3 M solution in THF, Aldrich) was added and the solution warmed to room temperature. After 10 hours the solution was cooled to 0°C and a saturated aqueous solution of ammonium chloride carefully added. The resultant two layers were separated and the aqueous phase extracted with ether. The combined organic phases were dried (MgSO_4) and

10

-114-

concentrated to give an oil. 32.6 g; 93%. Used without further purification. ^{13}C NMR (100 MHz; CDCl_3) 131.13, 125.28, 39.50, 37.35, 32.35, 25.92, 25.77, 20.31, 19.74, 17.81, 14.60.

(R)-4-Methyl-heptanoic acid 99

5 To alkene **98** (20 g, 0.13 mol) in acetone (433 mL) was added a solution of CrO_3 (39 g, 0.39 mol) in H_2SO_4 (33 mL)/ H_2O (146 mL) over 50 minutes. After 6 hours a further amount of CrO_3 (26 g, 0.26 mol) in H_2SO_4 (22 mL)/ H_2O (100 mL) was added. After 12 hours the solution was diluted with brine and the solution extracted with ether. The combined organic phases were dried (MgSO_4)
10 and concentrated. Flash chromatography (gradient of 6:1 to 2:1 hexane/ EtOAc) gave the product **99** as an oil. 12.1 g; 65%. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 143 [M^+H , 100%].

(4R,5S)-4-Methyl-3-((R)-4-methyl-heptanoyl)-5-phenyl-oxazolidin-2-one 100

15 To the acid **99** (19 g, 0.132 mol) and triethylamine (49.9 g, 0.494 mol) in THF (500 mL) at 0°C was added trimethylacetylchloride (20 g, 0.17 mol). After 1 hour LiCl (7.1 g, 0.17 mol) was added followed by the oxazolidinone (30 g, 0.17 mol). The mixture was warmed to room temperature and after 16 hours the filtrate was removed by filtration and the solution concentrated under reduced pressure. Flash chromatography (7:1 hexane/ EtOAc) gave the product **100** as an
20 oil. 31.5 g; 79%. $[\alpha]_D = 5.5$ (c 1 in CHCl_3). MS, m/z (relative intensity): 304 [M^+H , 100%].

(3S,5R)-5-Methyl-3-((4R,5S)-4-methyl-2-oxo-5-phenyl-oxazolidine-3-carbonyl)-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester 101

25 To oxazolidinone **100** (12.1 g, 0.04 mol) in THF (200 mL) at -50°C was added NaHMDS (48 mL of a 1 M solution in THF). After 30 t-butylbromoacetate (15.6 g, 0.08 mol) was added. The solution was stirred for 4 hours at -50°C and then warmed to room temperature. After 16 hours a saturated aqueous solution of ammonium chloride was added and the two layers separated. The aqueous phase was extracted with ether and the combined organic phases dried (MgSO_4) and

-115-

concentrated. Flash chromatography (9:1 hexane/EtOAc) gave the product **101** as a white solid 12 g; 72%. $[\alpha]_D = 30.2$ (c 1 in CHCl_3). ^{13}C NMR (100 MHz; CDCl_3) 176.47, 171.24, 152.72, 133.63, 128.87, 125.86, 80.85, 78.88, 55.34, 39.98, 38.77, 38.15, 37.58, 30.60, 28.23, 20.38, 20.13, 14.50, 14.28.

5 **(S)-2-((R)-2-Methyl-pentyl)-succinic acid 4-tert-butyl ester 102**

To ester **101** (10.8 g, 0.025 mol) in H_2O (73 mL) and THF (244 mL) at 0°C was added a premixed solution of LiOH (51.2 mL of a 0.8 M solution) and H_2O_2 (14.6 mL of a 30% solution). After 4 hours a further 12.8 mL LiOH (0.8 M solution) and 3.65 mL of H_2O_2 (30% solution) was added. After 30 minutes
10 sodium bisulfite (7 g), sodium sulfite (13 g), and water (60 mL) was added followed by hexane (100 mL) and ether (100 mL). The two layers were separated and the aqueous layer extracted with ether. The combined organic phases were concentrated to an oil that was dissolved in heptane (300 mL). The resultant solid
15 was filtered off and the filtrate dried (MgSO_4) and concentrated to afford an oil (6 g, 93%) which was used without further purification. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 257 $[\text{M}+\text{H}, 100\%]$.

(3S,5R)-3-Hydroxymethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester 103

To acid **102** (3.68 g, 0.014 mol) in THF (100 mL) at 0°C was added $\text{BH}_3\cdot\text{Me}_2$ (36 mL of a 2 M solution in THF, Aldrich) upon which the solution was
20 warmed to room temperature. After 15 hours ice was **carefully** added (in order to control the effervescence) to the solution followed by brine. The solution was extracted with ether and the combined organic phases dried (MgSO_4) and concentrated under reduced pressure. Flash chromatography (4:1 hexane/EtOAc) gave alcohol **103** as an oil (2.0 g, 59%). ^{13}C NMR (100 MHz; CDCl_3) 173.56,
25 80.85, 65.91, 39.74, 39.20, 38.90, 35.65, 29.99, 28.31, 20.18, 19.99, 14.56.

-116-

(3S,5R)-5-Methyl-3-(toluene-4-sulfonyloxymethyl)-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester 104

To alcohol **103** (1.98 g, 8.1 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (40 mL) at room temperature was added triethylamine (2.4 g, 0.024 mol), DMAP (20 mg) and tosyl chloride (2.3 g, 0.012 mol). After 14 hours 1N HCl was added and the two layers separated. The aqueous phase was extracted with ether and the combined organic phases dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated. Flash chromatography (95% hexane/EtOAc) gave tosylate **104** as an oil (2.94 g, 91%). ¹³C NMR (100 MHz; CDCl₃) 171.60, 144.92, 133.07, 130.02, 128.12, 80.80, 72.15, 39.73, 38.09, 37.89, 32.67, 29.71, 28.22, 21.83, 20.10, 19.54, 14.49.

(3S,5R)-3-Azidomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester 105

Tosylate **104** (2.92 g, 7.3 mmol) and sodium azide (1.43 g, 0.02 mol) were warmed to ~50°C in DMSO (30 mL). After 2 hours the solution was cooled to room temperature and diluted with water. The solution was extracted with ether and the combined organic phases dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated to give an oil 1.54 g, 79%. Further purification by flash chromatography (95% hexane/EtOAc) gave an oil. [α]_D = -8.3 (c 1 in CHCl₃). ¹³C NMR (100 MHz; CDCl₃) 172.01, 80.73, 54.89, 39.73, 39.46, 39.00, 33.40, 29.85, 28.30, 20.15, 19.82, 14.52.

(S)-4-((R)-2-Methyl-pentyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one 107 and (3S,5R)-3-aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester 106

Azide **105** was treated with 5% Pd/C and shaken under an atmosphere of hydrogen for 20 hours where upon a further 200 mg of 5% Pd/C added. After 6 hours the filtrate was concentrated to afford an oil which by ¹H NMR was found to be a mixture of primary amine **106** and lactam **107** (1.75 g) which was used without further purification.

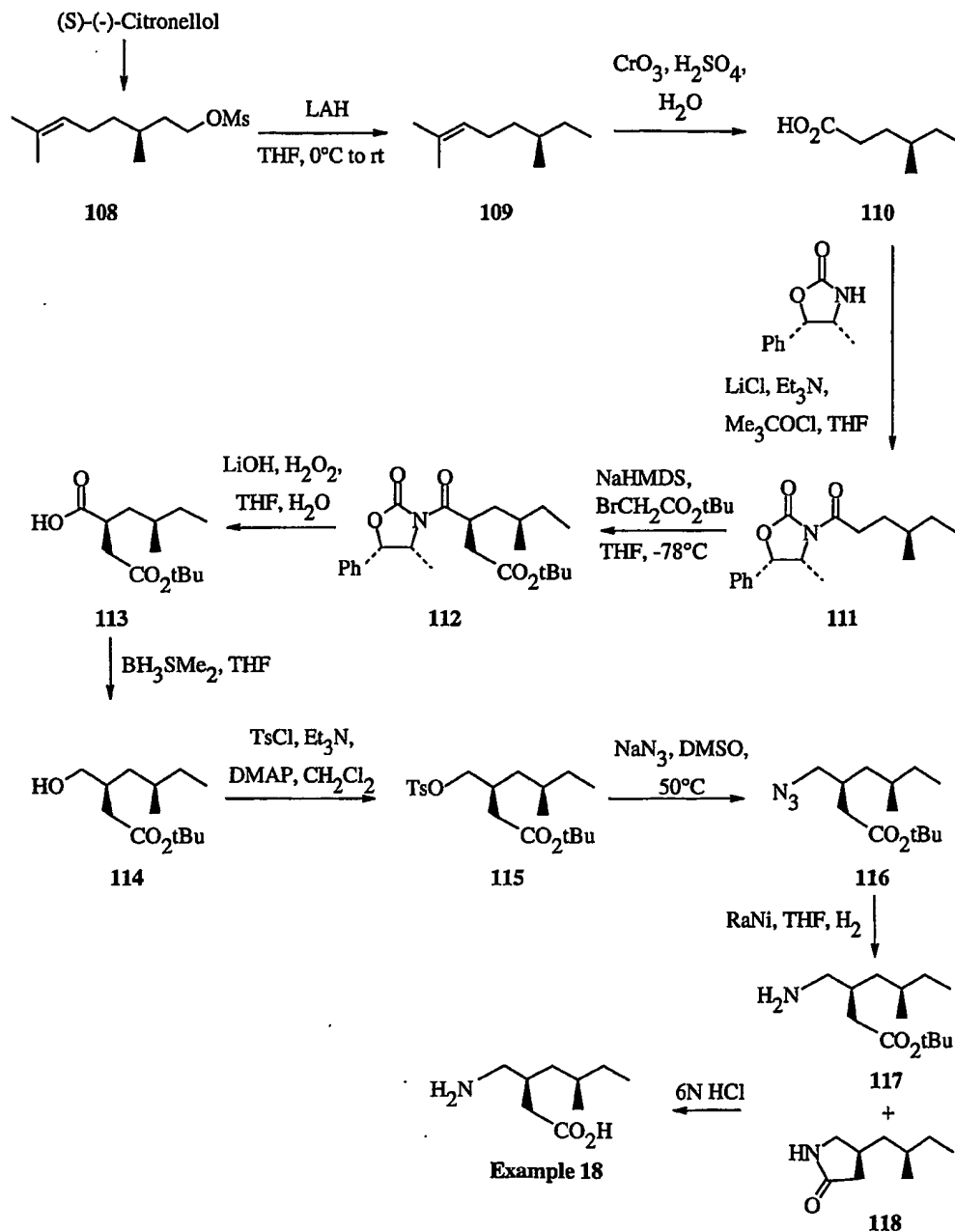
Example 17 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid hydrochloride

The mixture of the amine **106** and the lactam **107** (1.74 g) was treated with 3N HCl (40 mL) and the solution warmed to 50°C for 4 hours then cooled to room temperature. After 12 hours the solution was concentrated and the residue

-117-

recrystallized from ethyl acetate to give the amino acid as a white solid 605 mg.
MS, m/z (relative intensity): 188 [M+H, 100%]. Anal. Calcd for $C_{10}H_{21}N_1O_2 \cdot H_1Cl_1$ C, 53.68; H, 9.91; N, 6.26. Found: C, 53.83; H, 10.12; N, 6.07.

-118-

Example 18: Synthesis of (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid**Methanesulfonic acid (S)-3,7-dimethyl-oct-6-enyl ester 108**

To S-(-)-citronellol (42.8 g, 0.274 mol) and triethylamine (91 mL, 0.657 mol) in CH₂Cl₂ (800 mL) at 0°C was added methanesulfonyl chloride (26 mL, 0.329 mol) in CH₂Cl₂ (200 mL). After 2 hours at 0°C the solution was washed with 1N HCl then brine. The organic phase was dried (MgSO₄) and

-119-

concentrated to afford an oil (60.5 g, 94%) which was used without further purification. ^1H NMR (400 MHz; CDCl_3) 5.05 (1H, m), 4.2 (2H, m), 2.95 (3H, s), 1.98 (2H, m), 1.75 (1H, m), 1.6 (3H, s), 1.5 (4H, m), 1.35 (2H, m), 1.2 (1H, m), 0.91 (3H, d, $J = 6.5$ Hz).

5 **(R)-2,6-Dimethyl-oct-2-ene 109**

To alkene **108** (60 g, 0.256 mol) in THF (1 L) at 0°C was added lithium aluminum hydride (3.8 g, 0.128 mol). After 7 hours, a further 3.8 g of lithium aluminum hydride was added and the solution warmed to room temperature. After 18 hours, a further 3.8 g of lithium aluminum hydride was added. After a further 21 hours, the reaction was carefully quenched with 1N citric acid and the solution diluted further with brine. The resultant two phases were separated and the organic phase was dried (MgSO_4) and concentrated to afford an oil which was used without further purification. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 139 [M-H, 100%].

15 **(R)-4-Methyl-hexanoic acid 110**

A procedure similar to the synthesis of (R)-4-methyl-heptanoic acid **99** was utilized giving the acid as an oil (9.3 g, 56%). MS, m/z (relative intensity): 129 [M-H, 100%].

(4R, 5S)-4-Methyl-3-((R)-4-methyl-hexanoyl)-5-phenyl-oxazolidin-2-one 111

20 A procedure similar to the synthesis of (4R,5S)-4-methyl-3-((R)-4-methyl-heptanoyl)-5-phenyl-oxazolidin-2-one **100** was utilized giving oxazolidinone **111** as an oil (35.7 g, 95%). MS, m/z (relative intensity): 290 [M+H, 100%].

(3S,5R)-5-Methyl-3-[1-((4R,5S)-4-methyl-2-oxo-5-phenyl-oxazolidin-3-yl)-methanoyl]-heptanoic acid tert-butyl ester 112

25 A procedure similar to the preparation of (3S,5R)-5-methyl-3-((4R,5S)-4-methyl-2-oxo-5-phenyl-oxazolidine-3-carbonyl)-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester **101** was followed giving **112** as an oil (7.48 g; 31%).

-120-

(S)-2-((R)-2-Methyl-butyl)-succinic acid 4-tert-butyl ester 113

To ester 112 (7.26 g, 0.018 mol) in H₂O (53 mL) and THF (176 mL) at 0°C was added a premixed solution of LiOH (37 mL of a 0.8 M solution) and H₂O₂ (10.57 mL of a 30% solution) and the solution warmed to room temperature. After 2 hours sodium bisulfite (7 g), sodium sulfite (13 g), and water (60 mL) was added and the two layers were separated and the aqueous layer extracted with ether. The combined organic phases were concentrated to an oil that was dissolved in heptane (200 mL). The resultant solid was filtered off and the filtrate dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated to afford an oil (4.4 g) that was used without further purification.

(3S,5R)-3-Hydroxymethyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid tert-butyl ester 114

A procedure similar to the preparation of (3S,5R)-3-hydroxymethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester 103 was utilized giving alcohol 114 as an oil (2.68 g, 69%). MS, *m/z* (relative intensity): 216 [89%], 174 [M-(CH₃)₃C, 100%].

(3S,5R)-5-Methyl-3-(toluene-4-sulfonyloxymethyl)-heptanoic acid tert-butyl ester 115

To 114 alcohol (2.53 g, 0.011 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (140 mL) at 0°C was added pyridine (2.6 g, 0.033 mol), DMAP (100 mg), and tosyl chloride (3.15 g, 0.016 mol) and the solution warmed to room temperature for 3.5 hours whereupon more DMAP and TsCl (3.15 g) were added. After 14 hours 1N HCl was added and the two layers separated. The organic phase was washed with brine then or dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated. Flash chromatography (95% to 86% hexane/EtOAc) gave tosylate 115 as an oil (1.53 g, 36%). ¹³C NMR (100 MHz; CDCl₃) 130.03, 128.12, 72.18, 37.89, 37.71, 32.67, 31.49, 29.88, 28.22, 21.83, 19.07, 11.37.

-121-

(3S,5R)-3-Azidomethyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid tert-butyl ester 116

A procedure similar to the preparation of (3S,5R)-3-azidomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester **105** was utilized giving an oil 0.956 g, 97%. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 228 [M-N₂, 80%].

5 **(S)-4-((R)-2-Methyl-butyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one 118 and (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid tert-butyl ester 117**

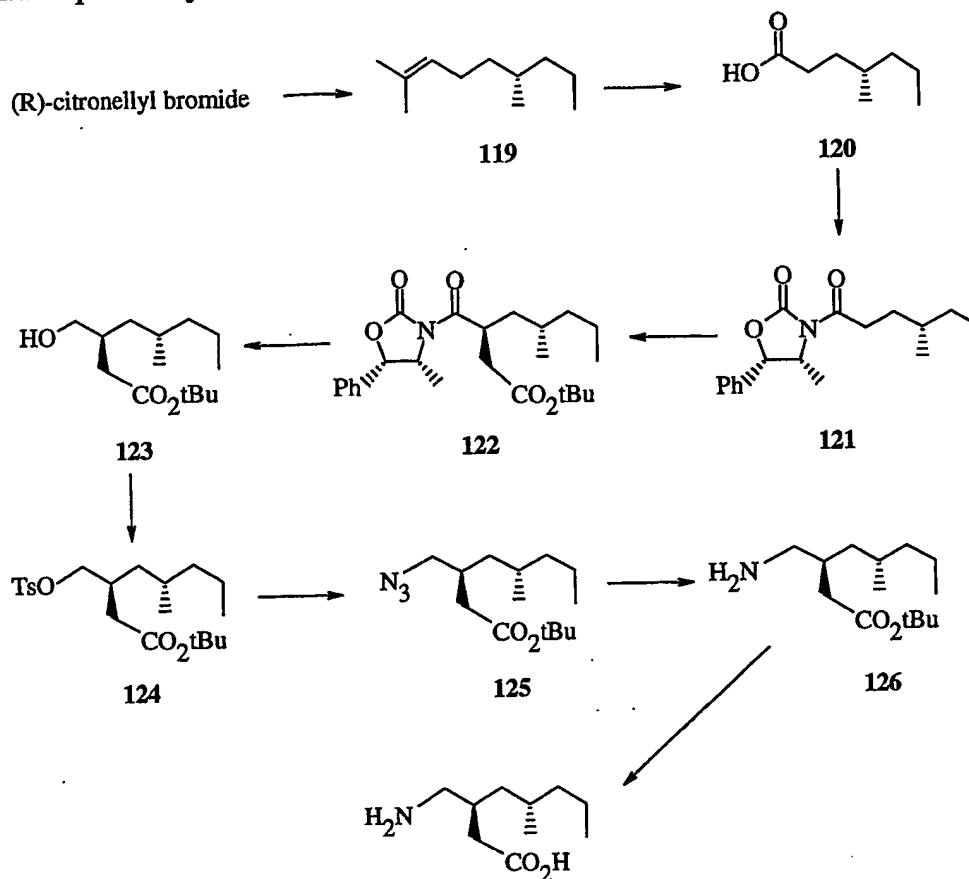
Azide **116** (689 mg) was treated with 20% Pd/C (90 mg) in THF (20 mL) and shaken under an atmosphere of hydrogen for 36 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration and the resultant oil used without further purification.

10 **Example 18 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid**

The mixture of amine **117** and lactam **118** was treated with 6N HCl and the solution warmed to 50°C for 17 hours then cooled to room temperature and concentrated. The resultant oil was subjected to ion-exchange chromatography (Dowex, strongly acidic resin) using 5% ammonium hydroxide to give a cream solid which was recrystallized from methanol/ethyl acetate to give (3S, 5R)-3-aminomethyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid, example 10. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 174 [M+H, 100%]. Anal. Calcd for C₁₉H₁₉N₁O₂. C, 62.39; H, 11.05; N, 8.08. Found: C, 62.23; H, 11.33; N, 7.89.

15

-122-

Example 19: Synthesis of (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid**Example 19****(S)-2,6-Dimethyl-non-2-ene 119**

5 CuCl₂ (5.36 g, 39.7 mmol) and LiCl (3.36, 80.0 mmol) were stirred together in dry THF (40 mL) for 15 minutes. The resulting solution was added to methylmagnesium chloride, 3.0 M in THF (168 mL) at 0°C under nitrogen atmosphere and stirred at that temperature for 15 minutes. To the reaction suspension was added slowly (R)-(-)-Citronellyl bromide (55.16 g, 251.8 mmol) in THF (100 mL), and stirred at 0°C for 2.5 hours. It was warmed to room temperature and stirring was continued for an additional 1 hour. The mixture was cooled to 0°C and quenched with saturated ammonium chloride solution. The suspension was then extracted into ether, washed with water, and dried over MgSO₄. The solution was concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 36.3 g;

10

-123-

94% of (S)-2,6-Dimethyl-non-2-ene as an oil. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 153 [M-1H, 100%], 194 [M-1H+CH₃CN, 45%].

(S)-4-Methyl-heptanoic acid 120

To the (S)-2,6-Dimethyl-non-2-ene **119** (39.0 g, 253.2 mmol) in acetone
5 (1L) at 0°C was added Jones reagent (2.7 M, 600 mL) dropwise over 1.5 hours
and let stir at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was poured
into a saturated solution of Na₂SO₄ and extracted into ether. It was washed with
brine and concentrated in vacuo. The oily residue was dissolved in methanol
(70 mL) and 1 M NaOH (700 mL) and then stirred for 30 minutes. The aqueous
10 solution was washed with CH₂Cl₂, acidified with 10% HCl and extracted into
CH₂Cl₂. The solution was dried over MgSO₄ and concentrated to dryness to give
24.22 g; 66% of (S)-4-Methyl-heptanoic acid as an oil. MS, m/z (relative
intensity): 143 [M-1H, 100%].

(4R,5S)-4-Methyl-3-((S)-4-methyl-heptanoyl)-5-phenyl-oxazolidin-2-one 121

15 A procedure similar to the preparation of (4R,5S)-4-methyl-3-((R)-
4-methyl-heptanoyl)-5-phenyl-oxazolidin-2-one **100** was utilized giving (4R,5S)-
4-methyl-3-((S)-4-methyl-heptanoyl)-5-phenyl-oxazolidin-2-one **121** 6.2 g ;
80.0%, as an oil. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 304 [M+1H, 90%],
355 [M+1H+CH₃CN, 60%].

20 **(3S,5S)-5-Methyl-3-((4R,5S)-4-methyl-2-oxo-5-phenyl-oxazolidine-
3-carbonyl)-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester 122**

n-BuLi, 1.6 M in Hexane (18.0 mL, 30.1 mmol) was added dropwise to a
solution of diisopropylamine (4.6 mL, 32.6 mmol) in dry THF (50 mL) under
nitrogen at -5°C keeping the temperature below 0°C during addition. The mixture
was let stir at -5°C for 20 minutes and then cooled to -78°C. **121** (7.6 g,
25.1 mmol) in dry THF (12 mL) was added to the LDA solution and stirred at
25 -78°C for 30 minutes. *t*-Butylbromo acetate (4.8 mL, 32.6 mmol) as added to the
reaction and stirring at -78°C was continued for 2 hours. It was let warm to room
temperature before stirring for an additional 18 hours. The reaction was quenched

-124-

with a saturated solution NaH_2PO_4 , extracted into ethyl acetate, and dried over MgSO_4 . The solution was concentrated to give a solid residue which was dissolved in hot hexane. The hexane solution was allowed to cool to room temperature before cooling further in an ice bath. The resulting precipitate was collected and allowed to air dry to give **122** as a fluffy white solid. 4.3 g; 41%. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 362 [$\text{M}-\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_3+1\text{H}$, 100%], 418 [$\text{M}+1\text{H}$, 20%].

(S)-2-((S)-2-Methyl-pentyl)-succinic acid 4-tert-butyl ester and (3S,5S)-3-Hydroxymethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester 123

To the ester **122** in a mixture of THF (203.0 mL) and water (61.0 mL) at 0°C was added a premixed solution of 30% H_2O_2 (12.2 mL) and LiOH (0.8 M, 42.7 mL). The resulting solution was stirred at 0°C for 4 hours. To the reaction was added sodium bisulfite (7 g), sodium sulfite (13 g), and water (60 mL). A 1:1 mixture of ether/hexane (200 mL) was then added and the organic phase was separated. The aqueous phase was extracted with ether and the combined organic extract was dried over MgSO_4 and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in heptane and let stir for 5 minutes. The resulting precipitate was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated to dryness to give as an oil.

(3S,5S)-3-Hydroxymethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester 123

A procedure similar to the preparation of (3S,5R)-3-hydroxymethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester **103** was followed giving **123** as an oil. 4.0 g; 76.0%. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 230 [$\text{M}-\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_3+1\text{H}+\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$, 100%], 189 [$\text{M}-\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_3+1\text{H}$, 70%].

(3S,5S)-5-Methyl-3-(toluene-4-sulfonyloxymethyl)-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester 124

A procedure similar to the preparation of (3S,5R)-5-methyl-3-(toluene-4-sulfonyloxymethyl)-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester **104** was followed giving 6.9 g of **124**. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 343 [$\text{M}-\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_3+1\text{H}$, 70%], 384 [$\text{M}-\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_3+1\text{H}+\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$, 100%].

-125-

(3S,5S)-3-Azidomethyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid tert-butyl ester 125

A procedure similar to the preparation of (3S,5R)-3-azidomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester **105** was followed giving 2.9 g; 66% of **125** as an oil. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 212 [M-C(CH₃)₃ -1H, 45%].

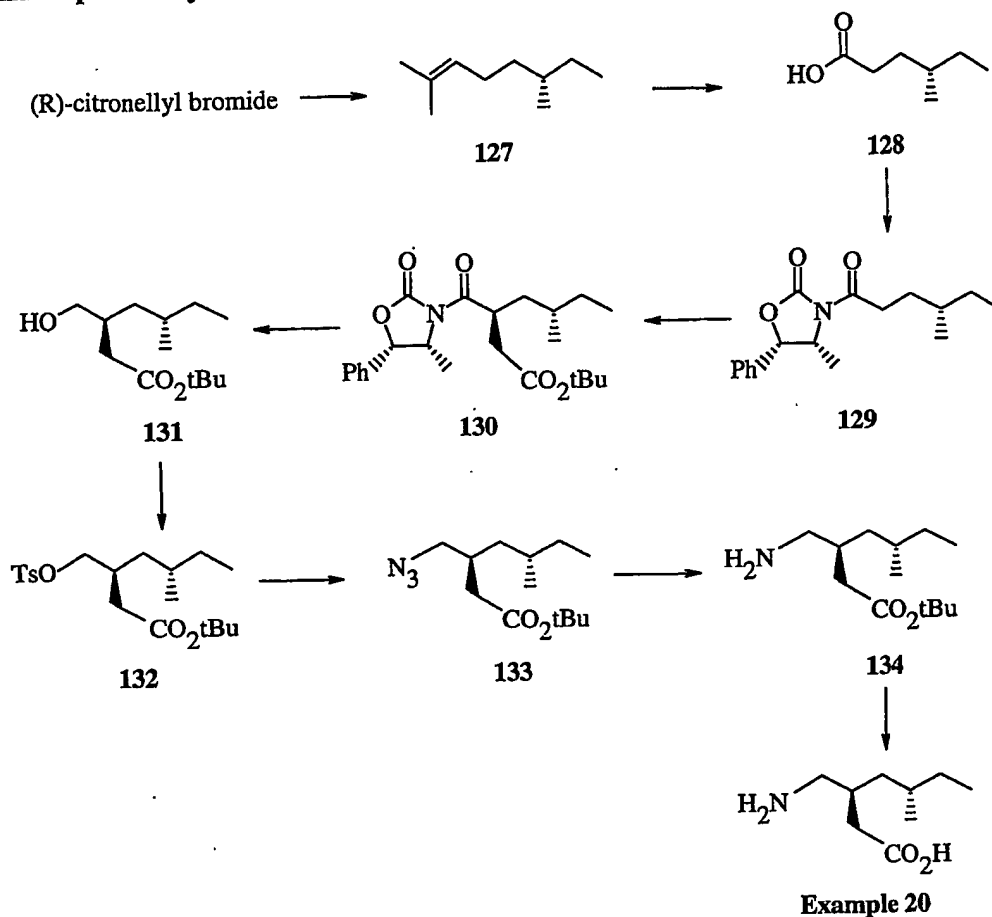
5 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester 126

A mixture of **125** (2.8 g, 10.4 mmol) and 10% Pd/C (1.0 g) in methanol (50.0 mL) was hydrogenated at 41 PSI for 96 hours. The solution was filtered to give 1.7 g of crude **126** which was used in the next step without further purification. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 244 [M +1H, 100%],
10 285 [M+1H+CH₃CN, 25%].

Example 19 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid

A procedure similar to the preparation of example 18 (3S,5R)-3-aminomethyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid was followed giving example 19. 380 mg; 29.0%. ¹H NMR (CD₃OD) δ 2.90 (dd, J = 3.9, 8.8 Hz, 1H), 2.80 (dd, J = 7.6, 5.1 Hz, 1H), 2.40 (dd, J = 3.2, 12.51 Hz, 1H), 2.20 (dd, J = 8.8, 6.8 Hz, 1H), 2.05 (m, 1H), 1.55 (m, 1H), 1.30 (m, 3H), 1.10 (m, 2H), 0.85 (m, 6H); MS, m/z (relative intensity): 187 [M+1H, 100%], 211 [M+1H+CH₃CN, 30%].
15

-126-

Example 20: Synthesis of (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid**(S)-2,6-Dimethyl-oct-2-ene 127**

5 (R)-(-)-Citronellyl bromide (49.1 g, 224.2 mmol) was dropwise added to a solution of LAH 1.0 M in THF (336 mL, 336 mmol) at 0°C over a 45-minute period. Stirring was continued for an additional 4 hours at 0°C. The reaction was slowly quenched with a saturated solution of ammonium chloride followed by the addition of ether (100 mL). The resulting white slurry was filtered and the filtrate was dried over MgSO₄. The solution was concentrated under reduced pressure to

10 afford 26.2 g; 83% of **127** as an oil. MS, *m/z* (relative intensity): 180 [M-1H+CH₃CN, 100%], 139 [M-1H, 90%].

-127-

(S)-4-Methyl-hexanoic acid 128

A procedure similar to that used to prepare compound 120 was used giving 15.9 g of 128 as an oil. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 129 [M-1H, 100%], 170 [M-1H+CH₃CN, 70%].

5 **(4R,5S)-4-Methyl-3-((S)-4-methyl-hexanoyl)-5-phenyl-oxazolidin-2-one 129**

A procedure similar to that used to prepare (4R,5S)-4-Methyl-3-((S)-4-methyl-heptanoyl)-5-phenyl-oxazolidin-2-one 121 was used giving 35.0 g of crude (4R,5S)-4-methyl-3-((S)-4-methyl-hexanoyl)-5-phenyl-oxazolidin-2-one 129 as an oil. It was used in the next step without further purification. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 290 [M+1H, 100%], 331 [M+1H+CH₃CN, 20%].

10

(3S,5S)-5-Methyl-3-((4R,5S)-4-methyl-2-oxo-5-phenyl-oxazolidine-3-carbonyl)-heptanoic acid tert-butyl ester 130

A procedure similar to that used to prepare (3S,5S)-5-methyl-3-((4R,5S)-4-methyl-2-oxo-5-phenyl-oxazolidine-3-carbonyl)-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester 122 was used to give 4.6.0 g, 25.4% of 130 as a white solid. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 348 [M-C(CH₃)₃+1H, 100%], 443 [M-1H+CH₃CN, 100%], 402 [M-1H, 55%], 404 [M+1H, 45%].

15

(3S,5S)-3-Hydroxymethyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid tert-butyl ester 131

A procedure similar to that used to prepare (3S,5S)-3-Hydroxymethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester 123 was giving 1.2 g, 52.1% of 131 as an oil. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 175 [M-C(CH₃)₃+1H, 100%], 173 [M-C(CH₃)₃-1H, 100%], 216 [M-C(CH₃)₃+1H+CH₃CN, 95%].

20

(3S,5S)-5-Methyl-3-(toluene-4-sulfonyloxymethyl)-heptanoic acid tert-butyl ester 132

A procedure similar to the preparation of (3S,5R)-5-methyl-3-(toluene-4-sulfonyloxymethyl)-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester 104 was followed giving 2.1 g of 132 as an oil. The product was used in the next step without further

25

-128-

purification. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 329 [M-C(CH₃)₃+1H, 85%], 370 [M-C(CH₃)₃+1H +CH₃CN, 65%].

(3S,5S)-3-Azidomethyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid tert-butyl ester 133

5 A procedure similar to the preparation of (3S,5R)-3-azidomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester 105 was followed giving 0.76 g, 54.0% of 133 as an oil. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 198 [M-C(CH₃)₃-1H, 100%]

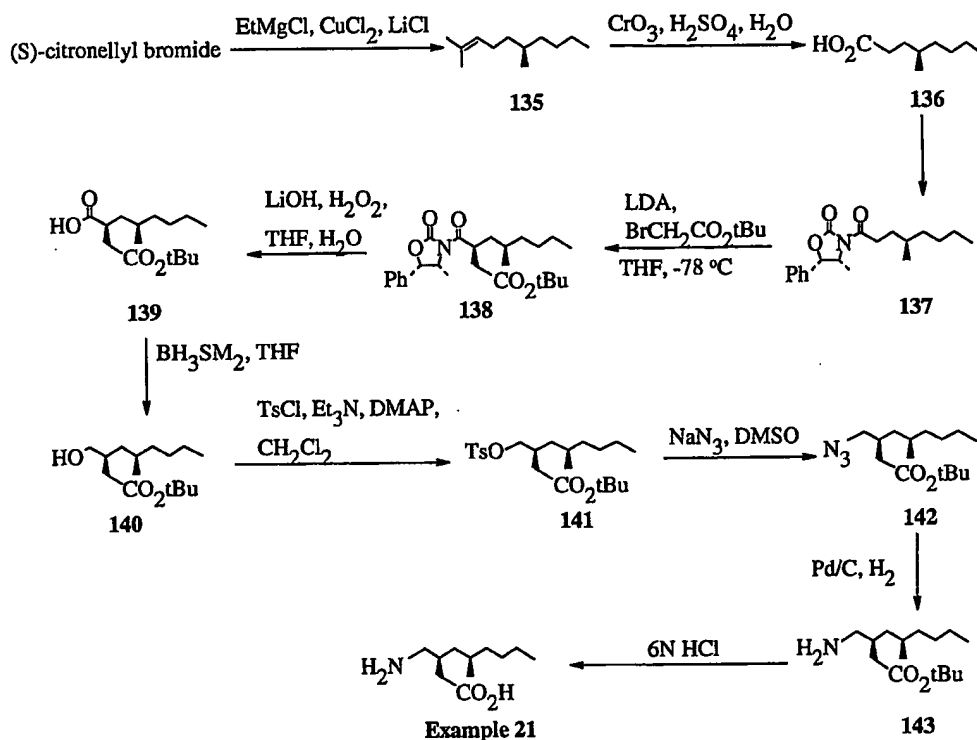
(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid tert-butyl ester 134

10 A procedure similar to that used for (3S,5S)-3-aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester 126 was used giving 0.62 g of 134 as an oil. The product was used in the next step without further purification. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 230 [M+1H, 100%], 271 [M+1H +CH₃CN, 45%].

Example 20 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid

15 A procedure similar to that used for Example 19 was used giving (3S,5S)-3-aminomethyl-5-methyl-heptanoic acid (0.3 g, 65.1%) as a white solid. ¹H NMR (CD₃OD) δ 2.80-3.00 (m, 2H), 2.40 (m, 1H), 2.20 (dd, J = 8.2, 7.1 Hz, 1H), 2.05 (m, 1H), 1.30-1.50 (m, 3H), 1.00-1.20 (m, 2H), 0.9 (m, 6H); MS, m/z (relative intensity): 187 [M+1H, 100%], 211 [M+1H+CH₃CN, 30%]. MS, m/z (relative intensity): 174 [M+1H, 100%], 172 [M-1H, 100%], 215 [M+1H +CH₃CN, 20%].

Example 21: Synthesis of (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-nonanoic acid hydrochloride



(R)-4-Methyl-octanoic acid 136

5 Lithium chloride (0.39 g, 9.12 mmol) and copper (I) chloride (0.61 g, 4.56 mmol) were combined in 45 mL THF at ambient temperature and stirred 15 minutes, then cooled to 0°C at which time ethyl magnesium bromide (1 M solution in THF, 45 mL, 45 mmol) was added. (S)-citronellyl bromide (5.0 g, 22.8 mmol) was added dropwise and the solution was allowed to warm slowly to ambient temperature with stirring overnight. The reaction was quenched by cautious addition of sat. NH₄Cl (aq), and stirred with Et₂O and sat. NH₄Cl (aq) for 30 minutes. The phases were separated and the organic phase dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated. The crude product was used without purification.

15 To a solution of alkene **135** (3.8 g, 22.8 mmol) in 50 mL acetone at 0°C was added Jones' reagent (2.7 M in H₂SO₄ (aq), 40 mL, 108 mmol) and the solution was allowed to warm slowly to ambient temperature with stirring overnight. The mixture was partitioned between Et₂O and H₂O, the phases were

-130-

separated, and the organic phase washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄), and concentrated. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (8:1 hexanes:EtOAc) to afford 2.14 g (59%) of acid **136** as a colorless oil: LRMS: m/z 156.9 (M⁺); ¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.33 (m, 2H), 1.66 (m, 1H), 1.43 (m, 2H), 1.23 (m, 5H), 1.10 (m, 1H), 0.86 (m, 6H). Jones' reagent was prepared as a 2.7M solution by combining 26.7g CrO₃, 23 mL H₂SO₄, and diluting to 100 mL with H₂O.

(4R, 5S)-4-Methyl-3-((R)-4-methyl-octanoyl)-5-phenyl-oxazolidin-2-one 137

To acid **136** (2.14 g, 13.5 mmol) in 25 mL CH₂Cl₂ at 0°C was added 3 drops DMF, followed by oxalyl chloride (1.42 mL, 16.2 mmol) resulting in vigorous gas evolution. The solution was warmed directly to ambient temperature, stirred 30 minutes, and concentrated. Meanwhile, to a solution of the oxazolidinone (2.64 g, 14.9 mmol) in 40 mL THF at -78°C was added *n*-butyl lithium (1.6 M solution in hexanes, 9.3 mL, 14.9 mmol) dropwise. The mixture was stirred for 10 minutes at which time the acid chloride in 10 mL THF was added dropwise. The reaction was stirred 30 minutes at -78°C, then warmed directly to ambient temperature and quenched with sat. NH₄Cl. The mixture was partitioned between Et₂O and sat. NH₄Cl (aq), the phases were separated, and the organic phase dried (MgSO₄), and concentrated to furnish 3.2 g of oxazolidinone **137** as a colorless oil. LRMS: m/z 318.2 (M⁺); ¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 7.34 (m, 5H), 5.64 (d, J = 7.3 Hz, 1H), 4.73 (quint, J = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 2.96 (m, 1H), 2.86 (m, 1H), 1.66 (m, 1H), 1.47 (m, 2H), 1.26 (m, 5H), 1.13 (m, 1H), 0.88 (m, 9H). The crude product was used without purification.

(3S,5R)-5-Methyl-3-((4R,5S)-4-methyl-2-oxo-5-phenyl-oxazolidine-3-carbonyl)-nonanoic acid tert-butyl ester 138

To a solution of diisopropylamine (1.8 mL, 12.6 mmol) in 30 mL THF at -78°C was added *n*-butyl lithium (1.6 M solution in hexanes, 7.6 mL, 12.1 mmol), and the mixture stirred 10 minutes at which time oxazolidinone **137** (3.2 g, 10.1 mmol) in 10 mL THF was added dropwise. The solution was stirred for

-131-

30 minutes, *t*-butyl bromoacetate (1.8 mL, 12.1 mmol) was added quickly dropwise at -50°C, and the mixture was allowed to warm slowly to 10°C over 3 hours. The mixture was partitioned between Et₂O and sat. NH₄Cl (aq), the phases were separated, and the organic phase dried (MgSO₄), and concentrated.

5 The residue was purified by flash chromatography (16:1 to 8:1 hexanes:EtOAc) to provide 2.65 g (61%) of ester **138** as a colorless crystalline solid, mp = 84-86°C. $[\alpha]_D^{23} +17.1$ (c = 1.00, CHCl₃); ¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 7.34 (m, 5H), 5.62 (d, *J* = 7.3 Hz, 1H), 4.73 (quint, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 4.29 (m, 1H), 2.67 (dd, *J* = 9.8, 16.4 Hz, 1H), 2.40 (dd, *J* = 5.1, 16.4 Hz, 1H), 1.69 (m, 1H), 1.38 (s, 9H), 1.28 (m, 10 7H), 1.08 (m, 1H), 0.88 (m, 9H); ¹³C NMR (CDCl₃) δ 176.45, 171.22, 152.71, 133.64, 128.86, 125.86, 80.83, 78.87, 55.33, 40.02, 38.21, 37.59, 36.31, 30.86, 29.29, 28.22, 23.14, 20.41, 14.36, 14.26. Anal. Calcd for C₂₅H₃₇NO₅: C, 69.58; H, 8.64; N, 3.25. Found: C, 69.37; H, 8.68; N, 3.05.

(S)-2-((R)-2-Methyl-hexyl)-succinic acid 4-tert-butyl ester 139

15 To a solution of ester **138** (2.65 g, 6.14 mmol) in 20 mL THF at 0°C was added a precooled (0°C) solution of LiOH monohydrate (1.0 g, 23.8 mmol) and hydrogen peroxide (30 wt% aqueous solution, 5.0 mL) in 10 mL H₂O. The mixture was stirred vigorously for 90 minutes, then warmed to ambient temperature and stirred 90 minutes. The reaction was quenched at 0°C by addition 20 of 100 mL 10% NaHSO₃ (aq), then extracted with Et₂O. The phases were separated, and the organic phase washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄), and concentrated. The crude acid **139** was used without purification.

(3S,5R)-3-Hydroxymethyl-5-methyl-nonanoic acid tert-butyl ester 140

25 To a solution of the crude acid **139** (6.14 mmol) in 30 mL THF at 0°C was added borane-dimethyl sulfide complex (2.0 M solution in THF, 4.6 mL, 9.2 mmol), and the mixture was allowed to warm slowly to ambient temperature overnight. Additional BH₃·DMS was added until the acid was completely consumed (ca. 5 mL). The reaction was quenched by addition of MeOH, then partitioned between Et₂O and sat. NaHCO₃ (aq). The phases were separated, and

-132-

the organic phase washed with brine, dried (MgSO_4), and concentrated to provide alcohol **140**. LRMS: m/z 226.1; ^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 3.63 (dd, $J = 11.0, 4.2$ Hz, 1H), 3.42 (dd, $J = 11.0, 6.8$ Hz, 1H), 2.30 (dd, $J = 14.9, 7.6$ Hz, 1H), 2.20 (dd, $J = 14.9, 5.6$ Hz, 1H), 2.03 (m, 2H), 1.42 (s, 9H), 1.24 (m, 6H), 1.02 (m, 2H), 0.85 (m, 6H). The crude product was used without purification.

(3S,5R)-5-Methyl-3-(toluene-4-sulfonyloxymethyl)-nonanoic acid tert-butyl ester 141

To alcohol **140** (6.14 mmol) in 30 mL CH_2Cl_2 at 0°C was added DMAP (0.1 g), *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride (1.37 g, 7.2 mmol), and then triethylamine (1.8 mL, 13 mmol) was added quickly dropwise. The mixture was warmed immediately to ambient temperature following addition and stirred overnight, and did not proceed to completion. The mixture was partitioned between Et_2O and 1N HCl (aq), the phases were separated, and the organic phase washed with sat. NaHCO_3 (aq), dried (MgSO_4), and concentrated to provide tosylate **141**. The product was used without further purification.

(3S,5R)-3-Azidomethyl-5-methyl-nonanoic acid tert-butyl ester 142

A procedure similar to the preparation of (3S,5R)-3-azidomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester **105** was followed giving azide **142** as a colorless oil. LRMS: m/z 200.1; ^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 3.31 (dd, $J = 12.2, 4.2$ Hz, 1H), 3.19 (dd, $J = 12.2, 5.9$ Hz, 1H), 2.22 (m, 1H), 2.10 (m, 1H), 1.39 (s, 9H), 1.21 (m, 8H), 1.00 (m, 2H), 0.81 (m, 6H).

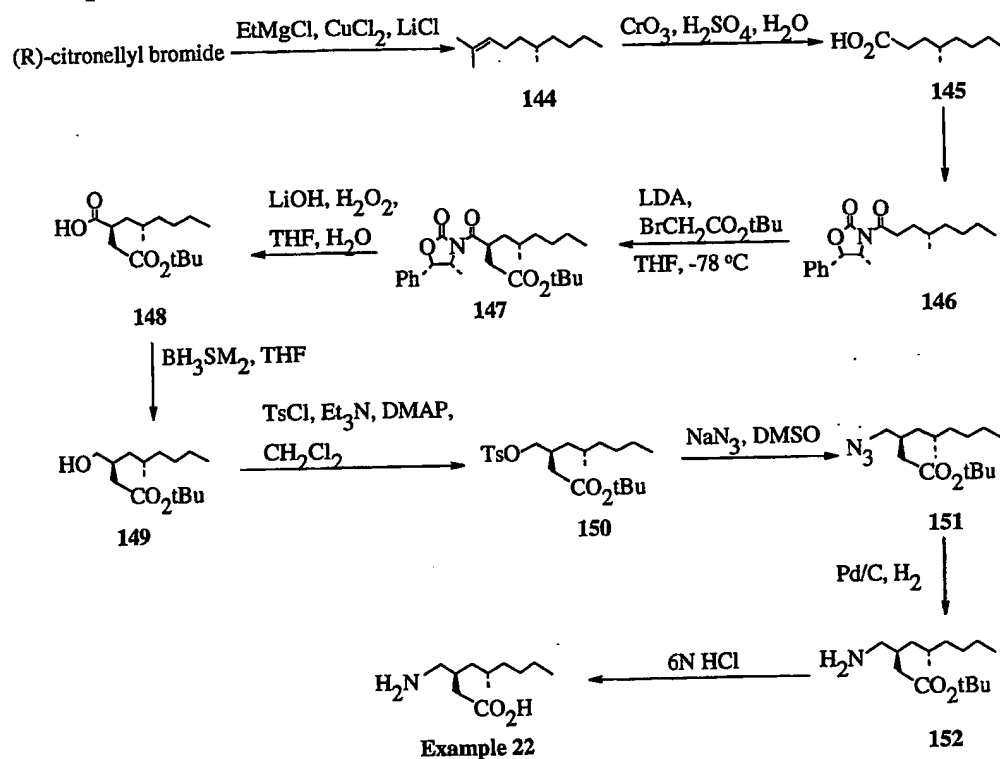
Example 21 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-nonanoic acid hydrochloride

The azide **142** (1.0 g) was hydrogenated in the presence of 20% Pd/C, EtOH, at 45 psi of H_2 for 15 hours to provide the crude amino ester **143** which was concentrated and used without purification. To the amino ester **143** was added 6 mL 6N HCl (aq) and the mixture was heated to reflux 90 minutes, cooled, and concentrated. Recrystallization from EtOAc:hexanes provided 0.38 g (45% from azide) of (3S,5R)-3-aminomethyl-5-methyl-nonanoic acid hydrochloride as a colorless crystalline solid (HCl salt), and a second crop of 82 mg (10% from

azide) was also obtained. mp = 146-156°C. LRMS: m/z 200.1 (M⁺); ¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.87 (dd, J = 13.2, 5.4 Hz, 1H), 2.79 (dd, J = 13.2, 7.3 Hz, 1H), 2.29 (d, J = 6.8 Hz, 2H), 2.08 (m, 1H), 1.31 (m, 1H), 1.09 (m, 7H), 0.92 (m, 1H), 0.68 (m, 6H). Anal. Calcd for C₁₁H₂₄NO₂Cl: C, 55.57; H, 10.17; N, 5.89.

Found: C, 55.69; H, 10.10; N, 5.86.

Example 22: Synthesis of (3S, 5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-nonanoic acid



The (*S*)-acid **145** was prepared from (*R*)-citronellyl bromide according to the procedure outlined above for (*R*)-4-methyl-octanoic acid **136**. The yield was comparable and the ¹H NMR spectrum was identical to that of the (*R*)-acid enantiomer. LRMS: *m/z* 158.9 (M+1).

Oxazolidinone **146** was prepared from acid **145** as described above for (4R, 5S)-4-methyl-3-((R)-4-methyl-octanoyl)-5-phenyl-oxazolidin-2-one **137**. LRMS: m/z 290.1 (M-27); ^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 7.38 (m, 3H), 7.28 (m, 2H), 5.64 (d, $J = 7.1$ Hz, 1H), 4.74 (quint, $J = 6.8$ Hz, 1H), 2.92 (m, 2H), 1.71 (m, 1H), 1.42 (m, 7H), 1.18 (m, 1H), 0.88 (m, 9H).

-134-

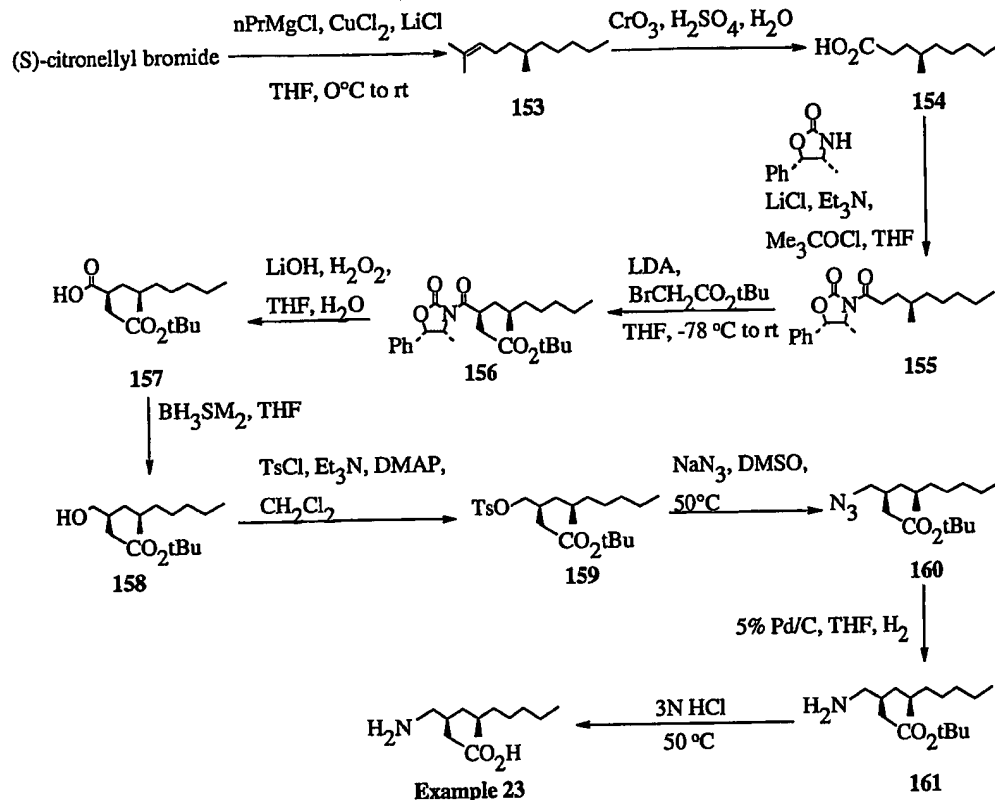
t-Butyl ester **147** was prepared from oxazolidinone **146** as described above for compound **138**. LRMS: m/z 348.1 (M-83).

Alcohol **149** was prepared from the *t*-butyl ester **147** as described above for (3S,5R)-3-hydroxymethyl-5-methyl-nonanoic acid tert-butyl ester **140**. LRMS: m/z 156.9 (M-100); ^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 3.60 (dd, $J = 11.0, 4.6$ Hz, 1H), 3.45 (dd, $J = 11.0, 6.8$ Hz, 1H), 2.24 (m, 2H), 2.04 (m, 2H), 1.42 (s, 9H), 1.17-1.38 (m, 7H), 1.11 (m, 1H), 0.84 (m, 6H).

Example 22: (3S, 5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-nonanoic acid

(3S, 5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-nonanoic acid was obtained from **149** as described above for (3S,5R)-3-aminomethyl-5-methyl-nonanoic acid hydrochloride. The crude HCl salt thus obtained was purified by ion exchange chromatography on Dowex 50WX8 50-100 mesh, H-Form resin, using 10% NH_4OH as eluent to provide the free base. The waxy solid was washed twice with Et_2O and dried to furnish an amorphous white solid, mp 144-146°C. LRMS: m/z 172.0 (M-28); ^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 2.76 (d, $J = 5.9$ Hz, 2H), 2.14 (m, 1H), 1.96 (m, 2H), 1.25 (m, 1H), 1.12 (m, 6H), 0.96 (m, 2H), 0.66 (m, 6H).

-135-

Example 23: Synthesis of (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-decanoic acid**(R)-2,6-Dimethylundec-2-ene 153**

A procedure similar to the preparation of (S)-2,6-dimethyl-non-2-ene 119 was used giving 153 as a colorless oil (20.16 g, 98%). ^1H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 5.10-5.06 (m, 1H), 2.10-1.89 (m, 2H), 1.66 (s, 3H), 1.58 (s, 3H), 1.34-1.23 (m, 4H), 1.15-1.06 (m, 2H), 0.88-0.81 (m, 11H).

(R)-4-methylnonanoic acid 154

(R)-2,6-Dimethylundec-2-ene 153 (10.03 g, 55.03 mmol) was dissolved in acetone (270 mL) and cooled to 0°C . Jones reagent ($\text{CrO}_3/\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$) (2.7 M, 120 mL) was added dropwise, and the reaction allowed to warm to room temperature over 18 hours. The reaction was poured on to water/ Na_2SO_4 (200 mL), and the aqueous layer extracted with ethyl acetate (4×100 mL). The combined organics were dried over MgSO_4 , filtered, and rotovapped to give an oil. The crude oil was dissolved in CH_2Cl_2 (400 mL) and

-136-

cooled to -78°C. Ozone was bubbled into reaction until blue to remove traces of the impurity (6E)(3S)-3,7-dimethylocta-1,6-diene. Dimethylsulfide (5 mL) was added, and the reaction stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The solvent was removed, and the crude material chromatographed on silica eluting with 20% EtOAc/hex to give oil. The oil was dissolved in ether (100 mL) and extracted with 10% NaOH (2 × 25 mL). The aqueous layers were combined and extracted with ether (50 mL). The aqueous layer was cooled to 0°C and acidified with HCl. The acidic layer was extracted with EtOAc (3 × 100 mL), and the combined extracts dried over MgSO₄, filtered and rotovapped to give **154** as an oil (6.86 g, 54%).

¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 2.40-2.25 (m, 4H), 1.70-1.62 (m, 2H), 1.47-1.11 (m, 8H), 0.87-0.84 (m, 6H); [α]_D = -11.4 (c1 in CHCl₃).

(4R,5S)-4-Methyl-3-((R)-4-methyl-nonanoyl)-5-phenyl-oxazolidin-2-one 155

Compound **154** (6.504 g, 37.76 mmol) was dissolved in THF (95 mL) and cooled to 0°C. Triethylamine (19.74 mL, 141.6 mmol) was added dropwise, followed by dropwise addition of trimethylacetyl chloride (6.98 mL, 56.64 mmol). The thick white suspension was stirred at 0°C for 90 minutes. LiCl (1.86 g, 41.54 mmol), (4R)-4-methyl-5-phenyl-1,3-oxazolidin-2-one (6.824 g, 38.51 mmol), and THF (70 mL) were added, and the reaction warmed to room temperature overnight. The solvent was evaporated. The solids were taken up in EtOAc, filtered off, and washed generously with EtOAc. The filtrate was washed with water (2 × 50 mL), and brine. The organics were dried over MgSO₄, filtered, and rotovapped. The crude material was chromatographed on silica eluting with 10% EtOAc/hexanes to give **155** as an oil (10.974 g, 88%). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.44-7.35 (m, 3H), 7.31-7.26 (m, 2H), 5.66 (d, *J* = 7.33 Hz, 1H), 4.76 (quint, *J* = 7.03 Hz, 1H), 3.04-2.96 (m, 1H), 2.93-2.86 (m, 1H), 1.74-1.66 (m, 1H), 1.52-1.47 (m, 1H), 1.46-1.36 (m, 2H), 1.27-1.16 (m, 2H), 0.92-0.87 (m, 8H); [α]_D = +34.1 (c1 in CHCl₃).

-137-

(3S,5R)-5-Methyl-3-((4R,5S)-4-methyl-2-oxo-5-phenyl-oxazolidine-3-carbonyl)-decanoic acid tert-butyl ester 156

A procedure similar to the preparation of (3S,5S)-5-methyl-3-((4R,5S)-4-methyl-2-oxo-5-phenyl-oxazolidine-3-carbonyl)-octanoic acid tert-butyl ester **122** was followed giving (3S,5R)-5-methyl-3-((4R,5S)-4-methyl-2-oxo-5-phenyl-oxazolidine-3-carbonyl)-decanoic acid tert-butyl ester **156** as an oil (0.668g, 90%). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.41-7.28 (m, 5H), 5.63 (d, *J* = 7.33 Hz, 1H), 4.74 (quint, *J* = 6.84 Hz, 1H), 4.33-4.26 (m, 1H), 2.68 (dd, *J* = 16.4, 9.77 Hz, 1H), 2.41 (dd, *J* = 16.6, 4.88 Hz, 1H), 1.68 (quint, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 1H), 1.50-1.32 (m, 10H), 1.28-1.21 (m, 1H), 1.15-1.08 (m, 1H), 0.90-0.86 (m, 9H); MS (APCI) *m/z* 348 (M⁺-97, 100%); [α]_D = +18.8 (c1 in CHCl₃).

(S)-2-((R)-2-Methyl-heptyl)-succinic acid 4-tert-butyl ester 157

Compound **156** (5.608 g, 12.59 mmol) was dissolved in THF/H₂O (60 mL/14 mL) and cooled to 0°C. LiOH (1N, 18.89 mL) and H₂O₂ (35%, 4.45 mL, 50.4 mmol) were combined, and then added to the reaction dropwise keeping T < 5°C. the reaction was stirred at 0°C for 4 hours, and quenched with Na₂SO₃ (6.3 g) and NaHSO₃ (3.4 g) in 50 mL H₂O added dropwise. The reaction was stirred for 15 minutes, and the layers separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (3 × 100 mL), and the combined extracts dried over MgSO₄, filtered, and rotovapped to give an oil. The crude material was dissolved in EtOAc (10 mL) and added dropwise to heptane (250 mL). The suspension was stirred for 20 minutes, and the solids filtered and washed with heptane. The filtrate was washed with 60°C H₂O (100 mL), dried over MgSO₄, filtered, and rotovapped to give **157** as an oil (3.52 g). the material was used directly in the next step.

(3S,5R)-3-Hydroxymethyl-5-methyl-decanoic acid tert-butyl ester 158

Compound **157** (3.52 g, 12.3 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous THF (123 mL) and cooled to 0°C. Borane dimethylsulfide complex (10 M, 3.69 mL) was added dropwise, and the reaction then warmed to room temperature and

-138-

stirred for 1 hour. The reaction was cooled to 0°C, and quenched with MeOH (20 mL) added dropwise. The reaction was stirred for 18 hours, and the solvent rotovapped off. The crude material was chromatographed on silica eluting with 20% EtOAc/hexanes to give **158** (2.28 g, 68%) as an oil. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 3.65-3.59 (m, 1H), 3.43 (dd, *J* = 11.1, 6.96 Hz, 1H), 2.31 (dd, *J* = 14.9, 7.57 Hz, 1H), 2.21 (dd, *J* = 15.1, 5.62 Hz, 1H), 2.06-2.02 (m, 1H), 1.43 (s, 9H), 1.40-1.25 (m, 4H), 1.07-1.13 (m, 1H), 1.03-0.96 (m, 1H), 0.86-0.84 (m, 6H); MS (APCI) *m/z* 216 (*M*⁺-56, 100%).

(3S,5R)-5-Methyl-3-(toluene-4-sulfonyloxymethyl)-decanoic acid tert-butyl ester 159

Compound **158** (2.27 g, 8.33 mmol) was dissolved in CH₂Cl₂ (30 mL) and cooled to 0°C. Tosyl chloride (1.91 g, 10.0 mmol) and catalytic DMAP were added, followed by dropwise addition of triethylamine (2.55 mL, 18.33 mmol). The reaction was then stirred at 0°C for 18 hours. The solvent was rotovapped off (removed under reduced pressure), and the crude material washed with EtOAc and filtered. The solids were washed with EtOAc, and the filtrate washed with 0.5N HCl (20 mL), brine (30 mL), dried over MgSO₄, filtered, and rotovapped. The oil was chromatographed on silica eluting with a 5% EtOAc/hexanes gradient to 10% EtOAc/hexanes to give **159** (3.399 g, 96%) as an oil. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.75 (d, *J* = 8.30 Hz, 2H), 7.31 (d, *J* = 8.30 Hz, 2H), 3.99 (dd, *J* = 9.65, 3.54 Hz, 1H), 3.89 (dd, *J* = 9.52, 5.37 Hz, 1H), 2.42 (s, 3H), 2.28 (dd, *J* = 14.7, 6.23 Hz, 1H), 2.19-2.14 (m, 1H), 2.10 (dd, *J* = 14.9, 6.35 Hz, 1H), 1.38 (s, 9H), 1.31-1.17 (m, 3H), 1.08-0.81 (m, 2H), 0.79-0.76 (m, 6H); [α]_D = -10.1 (c1 in CHCl₃).

(3S,5R)-3-Azidomethyl-5-methyl-decanoic acid tert-butyl ester 160

Compound **159** (3.01 g, 7.05 mmol), sodium azide (1.26 g, 19.40 mmol) and DMSO (12 mL) were combined and heated to 60°C for 3 hours. EtOAc (100 mL) was added to the reaction and filtered. The solids were washed with EtOAc (20 mL), and the filtrate evaporated. The crude material was

-139-

chromatographed on silica eluting with 5% EtOAc/hexanes to give **160** as an oil (1.86 g, 89%).

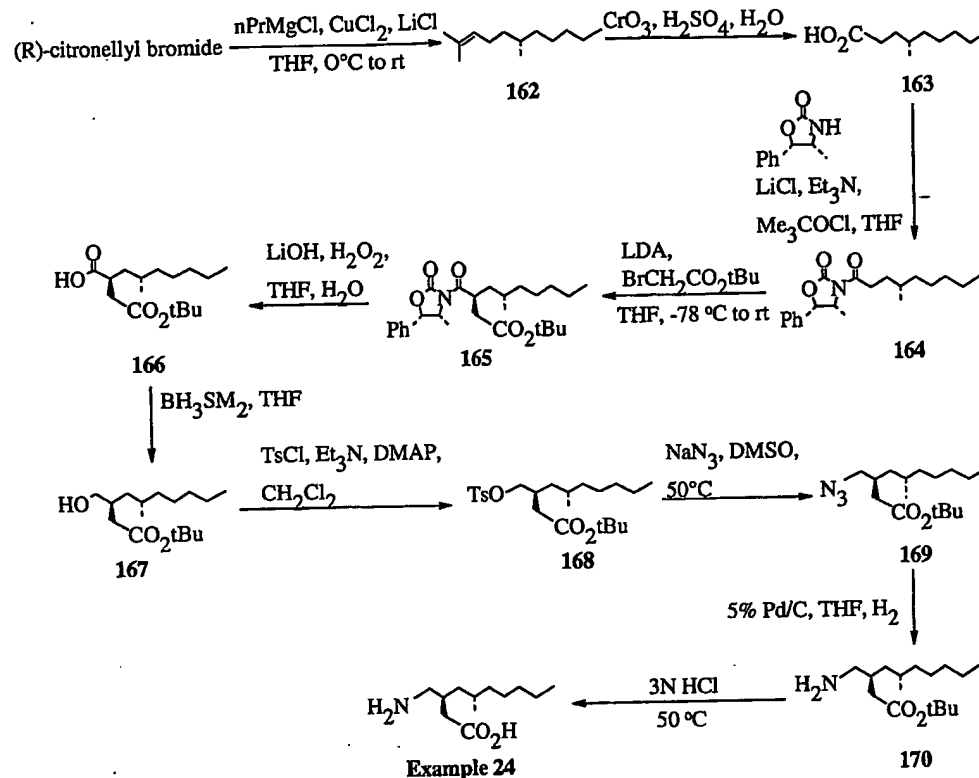
(3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-decanoic acid tert-butyl ester 161

A solution of compound **160** (1.86 g, 6.25 mmol) in THF (50 mL) was shaken over 5% Pd/C under hydrogen and pressure for 8 hours with three purges of hydrogen. The catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate evaporated. The crude material was chromatographed on silica eluting with methanol to give **161** as an oil (1.21 g, 71%). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 2.70 (dd, *J* = 12.9, 4.40 Hz, 1H), 2.54 (dd, *J* = 12.7, 6.59 Hz, 1H), 2.26 (dd, *J* = 14.5, 6.96, 1H), 2.12 (dd, *J* = 14.5, 6.47 Hz, 1H), 1.91 (m, 1H), 1.91 (m, 1H), 1.43 (s, 12H), 1.39-1.25 (m, 4H), 1.14-1.07 (m, 1H), 1.03-0.97 (m, 1H), 0.86-0.82 (m, 6H).

Example 23 (3S,5R)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-decanoic acid

Compound **161** (1.20 g, 4.44 mmol) was heated to 50°C in 3N HCl (30 mL) for 4 hours. The solvent was evaporated, and the oil washed with toluene, and evaporated. The crude material was passed through an ion exchange column (Dowex 50WX8-100, strongly acidic) eluting with water, then 0.5N NH₄OH. Isolate (3S,5R)-3-aminomethyl-5-methyl-decanoic acid as a white solid (0.725 g, 75%): mp = 174-175°C; ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 2.83 (dd, *J* = 12.69, 4.88 Hz, 1H), 2.70 (dd, *J* = 13.1, 7.45 Hz, 1H), 2.08 (d, *J* = 6.59 Hz, 2H), 1.98 (m, 1H), 1.28-1.20 (m, 1H), 1.19-1.09 (m, 2H), 0.99-0.91 (m, 2H), 0.66 (m, 6H); MS (APCI) *m/z* 215 (M⁺, 10%), 174 (M⁺-41, 100%); [α]_D = -5.7 (c1.025 in H₂O).

-140-

Example 24: Synthesis of (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-decanoic acid**(S)-2,6-Dimethyl-undec-2-ene 162**

nPropylmagnesium chloride/ether solution (2.0 M, 228 mL) was cooled to -20°C under a N₂ atmosphere. LiCl (3.87 g, 91.25 mmol), CuCl₂ (6.13 g, 45.63 mmol), and distilled THF (456 mL) were combined and stirred for 30 minutes. The Li₂CuCl₄ solution was added via cannula to the Grignard reagent, and the resulting solution stirred for 30 minutes at -20°C. R-(-)-Citronellyl bromide (50 g, 228.1 mmol) was dissolved in THF (60 mL) and added dropwise to the Grignard solution. The reaction was stirred at 0°C for 1 hour. The reaction was cooled to -40°C and quenched with NH₄Cl (saturated, 200 mL) added dropwise. The layers were separated and the aqueous layer extracted with ether (3 × 100 mL). The combined organics were dried over MgSO₄, filtered, and rotovapped to give an oil. The crude material was chromatographed on silica eluting with hexanes to give **162** as a colorless oil (9.15 g, 22%). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 5.10-5.06 (m, 1H), 2.10-1.89 (m, 2H), 1.66 (s, 3H), 1.58 (s, 3H), 1.34-1.23 (m, 4H), 1.15-1.06 (m, 2H), 0.88-0.81 (m, 11H).

-141-

(S)-4-Methylnonanoic acid 163

Compound **162** (7.97 g, 43.7 mmol) was dissolved in acetone (214 mL) and cooled to 0°C. Jones reagent (CrO₃/H₂SO₄) (2.7 M, 95 mL) was added dropwise, and the reaction allowed to warm to room temperature over 18 hours. The reaction was poured on to water/Na₂SO₄ (200 mL), and the aqueous layer extracted with ethyl acetate (4 × 100 mL). The combined organics were dried over MgSO₄, filtered, and rotovapped to give an oil. The crude oil was chromatographed on silica eluting with hexanes to give **163** as an oil (5.56 g, 74%). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 2.40-2.25 (m, 4H), 1.70-1.62 (m, 2H), 1.47-1.11 (m, 8H), 0.87-0.84 (m, 6H); MS APCI *m/z* 170.9 (M⁺-1, 100%).

(4R,5S)-4-Methyl-3-((S)-4-methyl-nonanoyl)-5-phenyl-oxazolidin-2-one 164

A procedure similar to that used to prepare compound **155** was used except that (S)-4-methylnonanoic acid **163** (5.56 g, 32.27 mmol) was used as a reactant to give **164** as an oil (10.70 g 100%). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.42-7.34 (m, 3H), 7.28 (d, *J* = 6.59 Hz, 2H), 5.64 (d, *J* = 7.33 Hz, 1H), 4.74 (quint, *J* = 6.78 Hz, 1H), 2.94-2.85 (m, 2H), 1.73-1.67 (m, 1H), 1.47-1.43 (m, 1H), 1.39-1.22 (m, 7H), 0.90-0.84 (m, 8H).

(3S,5S)-5-Methyl-3-((4R,5S)-4-methyl-2-oxo-5-phenyl-oxazolidine-3-carbonyl)-decanoic acid tert-butyl ester 165

A procedure similar to that used to prepare compound **156** was used to give **165** as a solid (4.25 g, 61%). MS (APCI) *m/z* 446 (M⁺+1, 10%), 390 (M⁺-55, 100%, -tBu).

(S)-2-((S)-2-Methyl-heptyl)-succinic acid 4-tert-butyl ester 166

A procedure similar to that used for compound **157** was used except that ester **165** (8.42 g, 18.89 mmol) was used as a reactant to give **166** as an oil (5.81 g). The material was used directly in the next step. MS (APCI) *m/z* 285 (M⁺-1, 100%).

-142-

(3S,5S)-3-Hydroxymethyl-5-methyl-decanoic acid tert-butyl ester 167

A procedure similar to that used to prepare compound **158** was used except that (S)-2-((S)-2-methyl-heptyl)-succinic acid 4-tert-butyl ester **166** (5.78 g, 20.18 mmol) was used as a reactant to give **167** as an oil (4.18 g, 76%). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 3.64-3.58 (m, 1H), 3.84-3.42 (m, 1H), 2.28-2.20 (m, 1H), 2.09-2.02 (m, 1H), 1.43 (s, 9H), 1.26-1.18 (m, 8H), 1.11-1.04 (m, 2H), 0.87-0.83 (m, 6H); MS (APCI) *m/z* 217 (M⁺-55, 50%, -tBu).

(3S,5S)-5-Methyl-3-(toluene-4-sulfonyloxymethyl)-decanoic acid tert-butyl ester 168

A procedure similar to that used to prepare compound **159** was used except that (3S,5S)-3-Hydroxymethyl-5-methyl-decanoic acid tert-butyl ester **167** (4.164 g, 15.29 mmol) was used as a reactant to give **168** as an oil (4.17 g, 64%). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.75 (d, *J* = 8.30 Hz, 2H), 7.31 (d, *J* = 8.30 Hz, 2H), 3.97 (dd, *J* = 9.52, 4.15 Hz, 1H), 3.90 (dd, *J* = 9.52, 5.13 Hz, 1H), 2.42 (s, 3H), 2.28, 2.19-2.13 (m, 2H), 1.37 (s, 9H), 1.27-1.01 (m, 11H), 0.85 (t, *J* = 7.08 Hz, 3H), 0.76 (d, *J* = 6.35 Hz, 3H).

(3S,5S)-3-Azidomethyl-5-methyl-decanoic acid tert-butyl ester 169

A procedure similar to that used to prepare compound **160** was used except (3S,5S)-5-methyl-3-(toluene-4-sulfonyloxymethyl)-decanoic acid tert-butyl ester **168** (4.155 g, 9.74 mmol) was used as a reactant to give **169** as an oil (2.77 g, 96%). MS (APCI) *m/z* 270 (M⁺-27, 30%, -N₂), 214 (M⁺-87, 100%, -tBu, -N₂).

(3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-decanoic acid tert-butyl ester 170

A procedure similar to that used to prepare compound **161** was used except that (3S,5S)-3-Azidomethyl-5-methyl-decanoic acid tert-butyl ester **169** (2.50 g, 8.405 mmol) was used as a reactant to give **170** as an oil (1.648 g, 72%). MS (APCI) *m/z* 272 (M⁺+1, 100%).

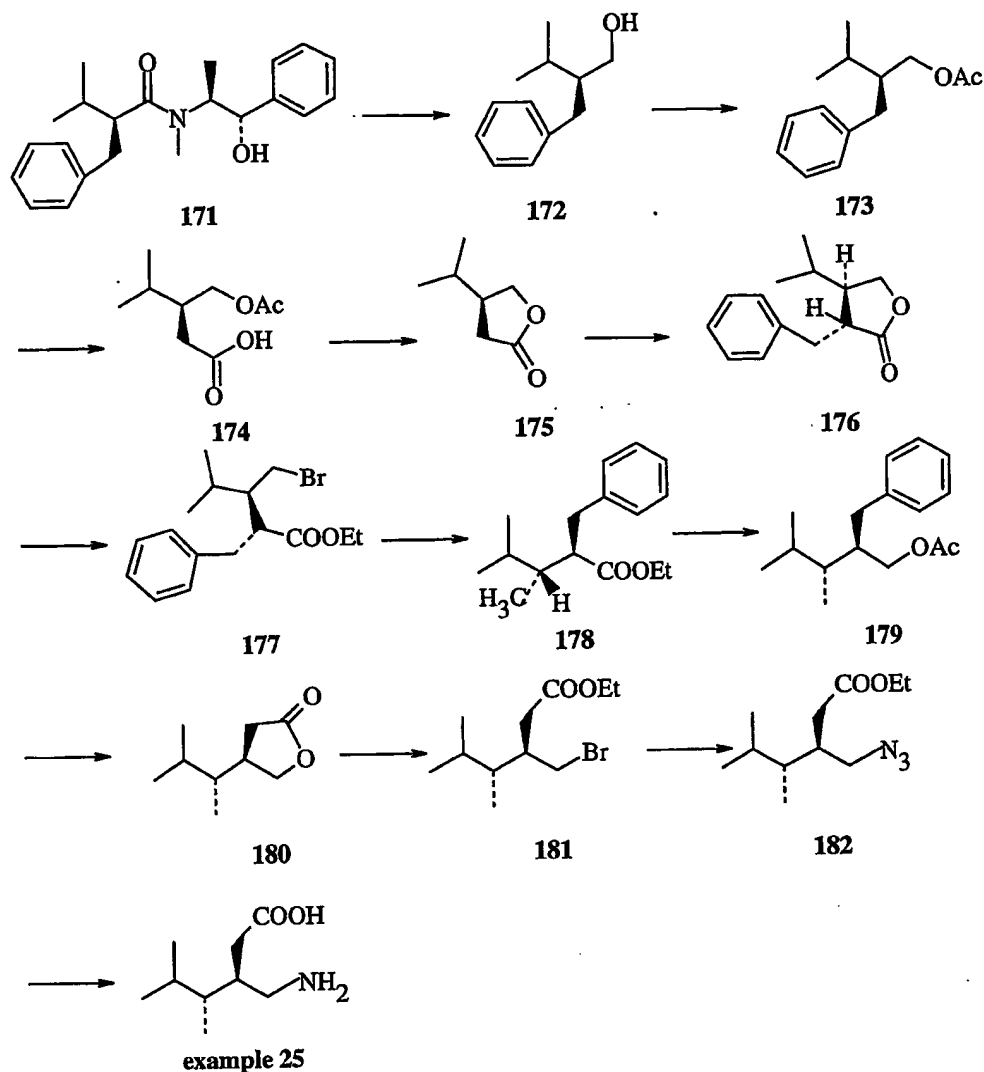
-143-

Example 24 (3S,5S)-3-Aminomethyl-5-methyl-decanoic acid

5 A procedure similar to that used for Example 15 was used except tert-butyl (3S,5S)-3-(aminomethyl)-5-methyldecanoate **170** (1.6 g, 6.00 mmol) was used as a reactant to give Example **16** as a white solid (72%). MS (APCI) m/z 272 ($M^{+}+1$, 100%). mp = 174-175°C; ^1H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD) δ 2.91 (dd, $J = 12.9$, 3.91 Hz, 1H), 2.83 (dd, $J = 12.7$, 7.57 Hz, 1H), 2.43 (dd, $J = 15.6$, 3.17 Hz, 1H), 2.19 (dd, $J = 15.6$, 8.80 Hz, 1H), 2.08-2.04 (m, 1H), 1.53 (m, 1H), 1.38-1.27 (m, 7H), 1.78-1.03 (m, 2H), 0.90-0.86 (m, 6H), 0.66 (m, 6H); MS (APCI) m/z 216 ($M^{+}+1$, 100%), 214 (M^{-1} , 100%); $[\alpha]_{\text{D}} = +21.4$ (c1 in MeOH).

-144-

Example 25: Synthesis of (3R,4R)-3-Aminomethyl-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid



(S)-2-Benzyl-3-methyl-butan-1-ol 172

5

Ref. JACS 1997;119:6510. Amide 171.

Large scale procedure for the synthesis of acetic acid (S)-2-benzyl-3-methyl-butyl ester 173 from 171

10

A of n-butyl lithium (10 M in hexane, 100 mL, 1000 mmol, 3.9 equiv.) was added to a solution of diisopropylamine (108.9 g, 150.9 mL, 1.076 mol, 4.20 equiv.) in THF (600 mL), at -78°C. The resulting solution was stirred for 10 minutes and warmed to 0°C, and held at the temperature for 10 minutes.

-145-

Borane-ammonia complex (31.65 g, 1.025 mmol, and 4.0 equiv) was added in one portion, and the suspension was stirred at 0°C for 15 minutes, and at 23°C for 15 minutes, and then cooled to 0°C. A solution of amide **171** (86 g, 256.41 mmol, 1 equiv.) in THF was added to the cold hydride via a cannula over 3 minutes. The reaction was stirred at 23°C for overnight, then cooled to 0°C. Excess hydride was quenched by the slow addition of 3N HCl (700 mL). The reaction mixture was diluted with more aqueous HCl (3N, 200 mL), and brine and then extracted with ether (4 × 15 mL). The ether solution was concentrated to a small volume, and 200 mL 2N NaOH was added, and stirred at 23°C for 2.5 hours. More ether was added and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was saturated with salt and extracted with ether (3 × 200 mL). The combined organic was washed with brine and dried on sodium sulfate. The residue was flash chromatographed (Pet. ether-25% ether -TEA) to give alcohol **172**, 50 g. NMR (CDCl₃) δ 7.35-7.16 (m, 5H, C₆H₅), 3.55 (app. t, 2H, -CH₂OH), 2.71 (dd, 1H, ArCH₂CH-), 2.52 (dd, 1H, ArCH₂CH), 1.87 (m, 1H, CHCH(Me), 1.67 (m, 1H, CH(Me)₂), 0.98 (d, 3H, CH₃) and 0.96 (d, 3H, CH₃).

A sample 3.3 g was saved for characterization and the rest was immediately acetylated (triethylamine 50 mL, DMAP 4.6 g, acetic acid anhydride 32 mL) overnight at room temperature. Work up followed by chromatography on silica gel eluted with pet ether and then 10% ether in pet ether gave 62 g of **173**. NMR (CDCl₃) δ 7.30-7.14 (m, 5H, C₆H₅), 3.98 (m, 2H, -CH₂OAc), 2.71 (dd, 1H, ArCH₂CH-), 2.51 (dd, 1H, ArCH₂CH), 1.99 (s, 3H, CH₃C = O), 1.82 (m, 1H, CHCH(Me) and CH(Me)₂), 0.97 (d, 3H, CH₃) and 0.95 (d, 3H, CH₃).

(S)-Acetoxymethyl-4-methyl-pentanoic acid 174 and (S)-4-Isopropyl-dihydro-furan-2-one 175

Acetate **173** (15 g, 68.18 mmol) was dissolved in CH₃CN (150 mL), carbon tetrachloride (150 mL) and HPLC grade water (300 mL) and stirred. Sodium periodate (262.50 g, 1220 mmol) was added followed by ruthenium chloride (650 mg, 3.136 mmol). After overnight stirring it was diluted with ether and water, and filtered through a pad of Celite. The organic portion was separated

-146-

and the aqueous phase was further extracted with ether. After drying on magnesium sulfate the solvent was evaporated. Potassium carbonate (42 g) was added to the residue and refluxed overnight in methanol (250 mL) and cooled to room temperature. After evaporation, water was added to dissolve the solid, and conc. HCl was added to bring the pH to 2. Chloroform was added and extracted overnight. The organic phase was separated, and aqueous was further extracted with chloroform. The combined organic extracts were dried, evaporated, and the product was purified on a silica gel column and the compound was eluted with 20% ether in methylene chloride. Fractions were monitored by tlc, and spots were detected with I₂/KI solution. Fractions were combined to give 4.6 g of lactone **175**. NMR (CDCl₃) δ 4.38 (dd, 1H, CH₂H_bO), 3.93 (app. t, 1H, CH₂H_bO), 2.54 (dd, 1H, CH_cH_d C = O), 2.23 (m, 2H, CHCH(Me) and CH_cH_d C = O), 1.60 (m, 1H, CH(Me)₂), 0.92 (d, 3H, CH₃) and 0.85 (d, 3H, CH₃).

(3R,4R)-3-Benzyl-4-isopropyl-dihydro-furan-2-one 176

Lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide (1.0 M solution in THF, 92 mL, 92 mmol) was added in 3 to 5 minutes to a solution of (S)- β -(2-propyl)- γ -butyrolactone **175** (11.68 g, 91.25 mmol) in dry THF 100 mL at -78°C under argon atmosphere. It was stirred for 1 hour and a solution of benzyl iodide (21.87 g, 100.37 mmol) in dry THF was added rapidly. Stirring was continued for 1.5 hours and quenched at -78°C by the addition of a solution of brine followed by ethyl acetate. The organic phase was separated and the aqueous was further extracted with ether. Chromatography on silica gel first eluted with 5% methylene chloride in pet ether, and finally with 10% ether in pet ether gave desired compound 11.6 g, 58%. NMR (CDCl₃) δ 7.19 (m, 5H, C₆H₅), 4.02 (app. t, 1H, CH₂H_bO), 3.87 (dd, 1H, CH₂H_bO), 2.98 (d, 2H, ArCH₂), 2.57 (q, 1H, BnCHC = O), 2.05 (m, 1H, CHCH(Me)₂), 1.55 (m, 1H, CH(Me)₂), 0.81 (d, 3H, CH₃) and 0.72 (d, 3H, CH₃).

-147-

(2R,3R)-2-Benzyl-3-bromomethyl-4-methyl-pentanoic acid ethyl ester 177

Lactone **176** (6.5 g, 29.8 mmol) was dissolved in absolute ethanol (80 mL) and cooled in ice bath. Anhydrous HBr was bubbled through the solution for 1 hour and stirred at room temperature overnight while maintaining reaction under dry atmosphere. It was poured onto ice cooled mixture of pet ether and brine. The organic phase was separated, and the aqueous was further extracted with pet ether. The combined organic solution was washed repeatedly with cold water and dried. Solvent was removed *in vacuo* to give crude compound 7.0 g. NMR (CDCl₃) δ 7.27 (m, 5H, C₆H₅), 4.02 (m, 2H, CH₃CH₂O), 3.70 (dd, 1H, CH_aH_bBr), 3.55 (dd, 1H, CH_aH_bBr), 2.97 (m, 2H, ArCH₂), 2.83 (q, 1H, BnCHC = O), 2.11 (m, 1H, CHCH(Me)₂), 1.97 (m, 1H, CH(Me)₂), 1.10 (t, 3H, CH₃CH₂O), 0.96 (d, 3H, CH₃) and 0.93 (d, 3H, CH₃).

(2R,3R)-2-Benzyl-3,4-dimethyl-pentanoic acid ethyl ester 178

Bromoester **177** (7.25 g, about 80% pure), in ethanol (100 mL) containing triethylamine (3.2 mL) was hydrogenated overnight in the presence of 20% Pd/C (1.0 g). It was filtered through a pad of Celite, and the cake was washed with ethanol. Solvent was evaporated, and the residue was taken up in ether, whereupon solid (Et₃N.HCl) separated. The solid was removed by filtration. The filtrate was concentrated, and the procedure was repeated to eliminate all hydrochloride salt. Product was chromatographed on a silica gel column which was eluted with pet ether to give the desired debrominated compound 3.35 g. NMR (CDCl₃) δ 7.21 (m, 5H, C₆H₅), 3.95 (m, 2H, CH₃CH₂O), 2.85 (m, 2H, ArCH₂), 2.64 (q, 1H, BnCHC = O), 1.85 (m, 1H, CHCH(Me)₂), 1.62 (m, 1H, CH(Me)₂), 1.05 (t, 3H, CH₃CH₂O), 0.95 (d, 3H, CH₃) 0.84 (d, 3H, CH₃) and 0.82 (d, 3H, CH₃). MS gave 290 (M + CH₃CN), 249 (M + 1), and others at 203. Further elution with ether gave lactone (2.25 g) that was carried over from previous step.

-148-

Acetic acid (2R,3R)-2-benzyl-3,4-dimethyl-pentyl-ester 179

Ethyl ester **178** (3.20 g, 12.85 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous ether and cooled in ice bath under inert atmosphere. Lithium aluminum hydride (500 mg, 13.15 mmol) was added, and the suspension was stirred at room temperature overnight. Excess LAH was destroyed by careful addition of ethyl acetate while the reaction was stirred in ice bath. Saturated sodium sulfate was added cautiously to coagulate the alumina that separated at room temperature as white precipitate. The reaction mixture was diluted with methylene chloride, and anhydrous sodium sulfate was added to dry the mixture. After filtration the solution was concentrated to give an oil 3.0 g.

The material (3.0 g) was dissolved in dichloromethane (30 mL) and triethylamine (2.5 mL), DMAP (200 mg), and acetic anhydride (1.5 mL) were added. It was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours, and diluted with ether. The ether solution was washed with water, 1N HCl, saturated sodium bicarbonate, brine and dried. The solution was concentrated in vacuo to give the acetoxo compound **179** 3.16 g. NMR (CDCl_3) δ 7.19 (m, 5H, C_6H_5), 4.03 (m, 2H, $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{O}$), 2.69 (m, 2H, ArCH_2), 2.09 (m, 1H, BnCHCH_2O), 2.02 (s, 3H, $\text{CH}_3\text{C}=\text{O}$), 1.68 (m, 1H, $\text{CH}_3\text{CHCH}(\text{Me})_2$), 1.23 (m, 1H, $\text{CH}(\text{Me})_2$), 0.87 (d, 3H, CH_3), 0.84 (d, 3H, CH_3) and 0.81 (d, 3H, CH_3).

(R)-4-((R)-1,2-Dimethyl-propyl)-dihydro-furan-2-one 180

To a solution of aromatic compound **179** (5.0 g, 20.16 mmol) in HPLC grade acetonitrile (60 mL), carbon tetrachloride (60 mL), and water (120 mL) was added sodium periodate (86.24 g, 403.32 mmol, 20 equiv.), followed by RuCl_3 (414 mg, 10 mol%). The mixture was stirred vigorously overnight at room temperature, and diluted with methylene chloride (400 mL). The mixture was filtered through a pad of Celite to remove the solid precipitate. The organic portion was separated, and the aqueous was further extracted with methylene chloride. After the combined organic portions concentrated, the residue was dissolved in ether and applied to a column of Florisil. The compound was eluted with 3% methanol in ether, evaporated to a paste that was dissolved in methanol (100 mL). Potassium carbonate (8.0 g) was added, and the mixture was refluxed

-149-

for 6 hours. The solvent was evaporated, and the solid residue was dissolved in water. The pH was adjusted to 2 by the careful addition of concentrated HCl while being cooled in ice water bath and stirred. Chloroform (200 mL) was added to the solution and stirred as such overnight at room temperature. The organic phase was separated, and the aqueous portion was further extracted with chloroform. After drying, the solvent was evaporated to give the lactone **180** 5.0 g. NMR (CDCl₃) δ 4.36 (app. t, 1H, CH_aH_bO), 3.85 (app. t, 1H, CH_aH_bO), 2.46 (m, 2H, CH_cH_dC = O), 2.13 (m, 2H, CHCH₂C=O), 1.60 (m, 1H, CH(Me)₂), 1.35 (m, 1H, CH₃CHCH(Me)₂), 0.86 (d, 3H, CH₃) and 0.72 (t, 3H, CH₃).

(3R,4R)-3-Bromomethyl-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid ethyl ester 181

Lactone **180** (5.0 g) was dissolved in absolute ethanol (25 mL) and flushed with argon. While being cooled in ice water bath, anhydrous HBr gas was bubbled through the mixture for 45 minutes and allowed to stand at room temperature overnight. The mixture was poured into ice-salt water and hexane. The organic phase was separated, and the aqueous was further extracted with hexane. The combined organic extract was dried and evaporated. Flash chromatography with 10% ether in pet ether on a silica gel column gave the bromoester **181** 3.54 g. NMR (CDCl₃) δ 4.14 (q, 2H, CH₃H₂O), 3.60 (dd, 1H, CH_aH_bBr), 3.41 (dd, 1H, CH_cH_b Br), 2.54 (dd, 1H, CH_aH_bC = O), 2.44 (dd, 1H, CH_aH_bC = O), 2.22 (m, 1H, O=CCH₂CHCH₂Br), 1.67 (m, 1H, CHCH₃CH(Me)₂), 1.37 (m, 1H, CH(Me)₂), 1.26 (t, 3H, CH₃CH₂O), 0.94 (d, 3H, CHCH₃CH(Me)₂), 0.81 (d, 3H, ((CH₃)₂)CHCH₃CH) and 0.79 (d, 3H, ((CH₃)₂)CHCH₃CH).

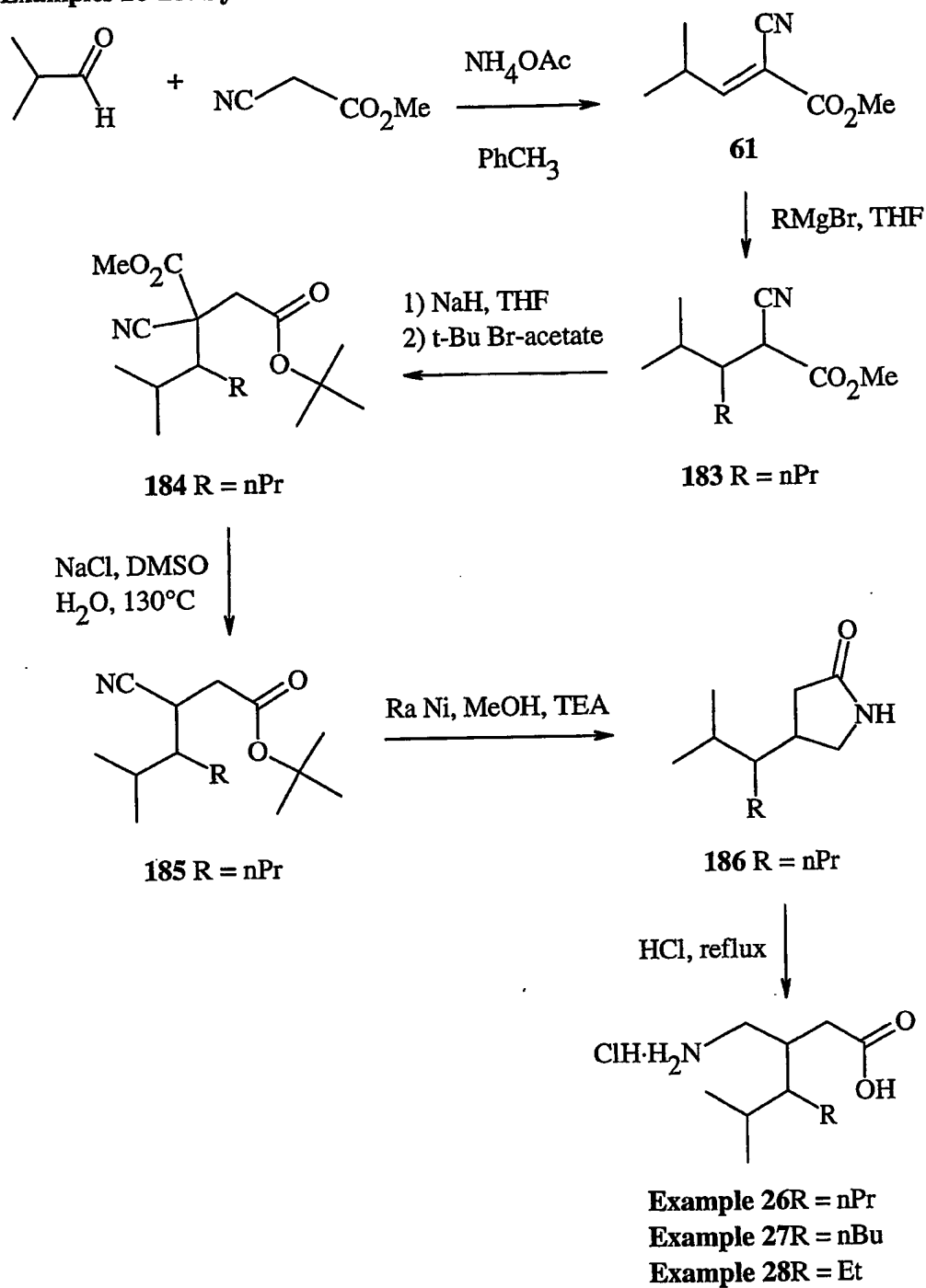
(3R,4R)-3-Azidomethyl-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid ethyl ester 182 and Example 25 (3R,4R)-3-Aminomethyl-4,5-dimethyl-hexanoic acid

Bromoester **181** (3.54 g, 13.34 mmol), sodium azide (1.04 g, 16.13 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (8.0 mL) was stirred at room temperature overnight. Water (16 mL) and hexane were added, the organic portion was separated, and the aqueous portion was further extracted with hexane. It was dried and evaporated to give azido ester 3.0 g. NMR (CDCl₃) δ 4.14 (q, 2H, CH₃H₂O), 3.48 (dd, 1H,

-150-

$\text{CH}_a\text{H}_b\text{N}_3$), 3.21 (dd, 1H, $\text{CH}_c\text{H}_b\text{N}_3$), 2.34 (m 2H, $\text{CH}_a\text{H}_b\text{C}=\text{O}$), 2.20 (m, 1H, $\text{O}=\text{CCH}_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{N}_3$), 1.60 (m, 1H, $\text{CHCH}_3\text{CH}(\text{Me})_2$). Compound was submitted for hydrogenation (HPL, 66480×100). The hydrogenated crude was dissolved in 6N HCl and refluxed overnight. The solvent was evaporated in vacuo the residue was azeotroped with toluene. The crude was further purified by loading onto an ion exchange column chromatography (Dowex 50Wb \times 8-100), washed to neutral eluent with HPLC grade water followed by elution of compound with 0.5N NH_4OH solution. Crystallization of product from methanol gave 720 mg. NMR (CD_3OD) δ 3.04 (dd, 1H, $\text{CH}_a\text{H}_b\text{NH}_2$), 2.82 (dd, 1H, $\text{CH}_c\text{H}_b\text{NH}_2$), 2.52 (dd, 1H, $\text{CH}_a\text{H}_b\text{C}=\text{O}$), 2.40 (dd, 1H, $\text{CH}_a\text{H}_b\text{C}=\text{O}$), 2.07 (m, 1H, $\text{O}=\text{CCH}_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{NH}_2$), 1.67 (m, 1H, $\text{CHCH}_3\text{CH}(\text{Me})_2$), 1.35 (m, 1H, $\text{CH}(\text{Me})_2$), 0.97 (d, 3H, $\text{CHCH}_3\text{CH}(\text{Me})_2$), 0.88 (d, 3H, $((\text{CH}_3)_2)\text{CHCH}_3\text{CH}$) and 0.83 (d, 3H, $((\text{CH}_3)_2)\text{CHCH}_3\text{CH}$). $[\alpha]_D -5.3$ (c, MeOH, 1.9 mg/mL). Anal. Calcd for $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{19}\text{NO}_2$: C 62.39, H 11.05, N 8.08. Found C 62.01, H 11.35, N 7.88. MS showed ions at 215 ($\text{M} + \text{CH}_3\text{CN}$), 197 ($\text{M} + \text{Na}^+$), 174 ($\text{M} + \text{H}^+$). Analysis of derivative by reverse phase HPLC, Hypersil BDS C_{18} 5 micron and mobile phase 50/50 CH_3CN -water containing 0.1%TFA gave 99.93% purity at retention time of 8.21 minutes.

-151-

Examples 26-28: Synthesis of 3-Aminomethyl-4-isopropyl-heptanoic acid**2-Cyano-4-methyl-2-pentenoic acid methyl ester 61**

5 A solution of isobutyraldehyde (30.0 g, 416 mmol), methyl-cyano-acetate (20.6 g, 208 mmol), ammonium hydroxide (3.2 g, 41.6 mmol) and acetic acid (5.0 g, 83.2 mmol) in 500 mL of toluene is warmed to reflux under a Dean-Stark

-152-

trap for 12 hours. The mixture is cooled to room temperature and extracted with saturated NaHSO_3 (3×100 mL), saturated NaHCO_3 (3×100 mL), and 100 mL of brine. The organic layer is dried over Na_2SO_4 , and the solvent is evaporated. The remaining oil is distilled under high vacuum (0.5 mm Hg, B.P. = $115-120^\circ\text{C}$) to give 28.8 g of 2-cyano-4-methyl-2-pentenoic acid methyl ester **61** as an oil (90% yield).

2-Cyano-3-isopropyl-hexanoic acid methyl ester **183**

A 2.0 M solution of propyl magnesium chloride in Et_2O (9.8 mL, 19.6 mmol) is added to a solution of 2-cyano-4-methyl-2-pentenoic acid (3.0 g, 19.6 mmol) in 50 mL of THF which is cooled in an IPA/dry ice bath to -40°C under argon. The solution is stirred for 4 hours, and the reaction is quenched by addition of 50 mL of saturated KH_2PO_4 . The THF is evaporated, and the remaining oil is chromatographed under medium pressure over silica gel with 50% CH_2Cl_2 /hexane. Yield = 1.9 g (50%) of 2-cyano-3-isopropyl-hexanoic acid methyl ester as an oil.

2-Cyano-2-(1-isopropyl-butyl)-succinic acid 4-*tert*-butyl ester 1-methyl ester **184**

A solution of 2-cyano-3-isopropyl-hexanoic acid methyl ester (1.9 g, 9.6 mmol) in 10 mL of THF is added to a slurry of NaH (washed with hexane, 0.23 g, 9.6 mmol) in 20 mL of THF which is cooled in an ice water bath under argon. The solution is stirred for 10 minutes, and *t*-butyl bromoacetate (2.1 g, 10.6 mmol) is added. The solution is warmed to room temperature. After 12 hours, the reaction is quenched by addition of 50 mL of saturated KH_2PO_4 and the THF is evaporated. The organic products are extracted into Et_2O (3×50 mL), and the combined organic layers are dried over MgSO_4 . The solvent is evaporated, and the remaining oil is chromatographed under medium pressure over silica gel in 25% hexane/ CH_2Cl_2 . Yield of 2-cyano-2-(1-isopropyl-butyl)-succinic acid 4-*tert*-butyl ester 1-methyl ester = 1.3 g (42%) as an oil.

-153-

3-Cyano-4-isopropyl-heptanoic acid t-butyl ester 185

A mixture of 2-cyano-2-(1-isopropyl-butyl)-succinic acid 4-*tert*-butyl ester 1-methyl ester (1.3 g, 4.2 mmol), NaCl (0.25 g, 4.2 mmol), and H₂O (0.15 g, 8.3 mmol) in 25 mL of DMSO is warmed to 130°C for 12 hours. The mixture is cooled to room temperature and diluted with 100 mL of brine. The organic products are extracted into Et₂O (3 × 50 mL). The organic layers are combined and washed with 50 mL of H₂O and 50 mL of brine. Drying over Na₂SO₄ and evaporation of the solvent gives 0.8 g (75% yield) of 3-cyano-4-isopropyl-heptanoic acid t-butyl ester as an oil.

4-(1-Isopropyl-butyl)-2-pyrrolidone 186

3-Cyano-4-isopropyl-heptanoic acid t-butyl ester (0.8 g, 3.2 mmol) is reduced under 50 psi of H₂ in MeOH containing TEA and Ra Ni. When the theoretical amount of H₂ is taken up, the catalyst is removed by filtration, and the solvent is evaporated to give 0.6 g (100% yield) of 4-(1-isopropyl-butyl)-2-pyrrolidone as an oil.

Example 26: 3-Aminomethyl-4-isopropyl-heptanoic acid

4-(1-Isopropyl-butyl)-2-pyrrolidone (0.6 g, 2.3 mmol) is warmed to reflux in 50 mL of 6.0 M HCl for 12 hours. The solution is cooled to room temperature and filtered through Celite. The filtrate is evaporated, and the solid remaining is recrystallized from MeOH/EtOAc. Yield 0.035 g (6% yield) of 3-aminomethyl-4-isopropyl-heptanoic acid as an HCl salt, mp 160-170°C. ¹H NMR (CD₃OD) δ 0.9 (m, 9H), 1.30 (m, 5H), 1.78 (m, 1H), 2.30 (m, 2H), 2.45 (m, 1H), 2.95 (m, 2H). MS (APCI, CH₃CN, H₂O) 201 (M⁺, 100%).

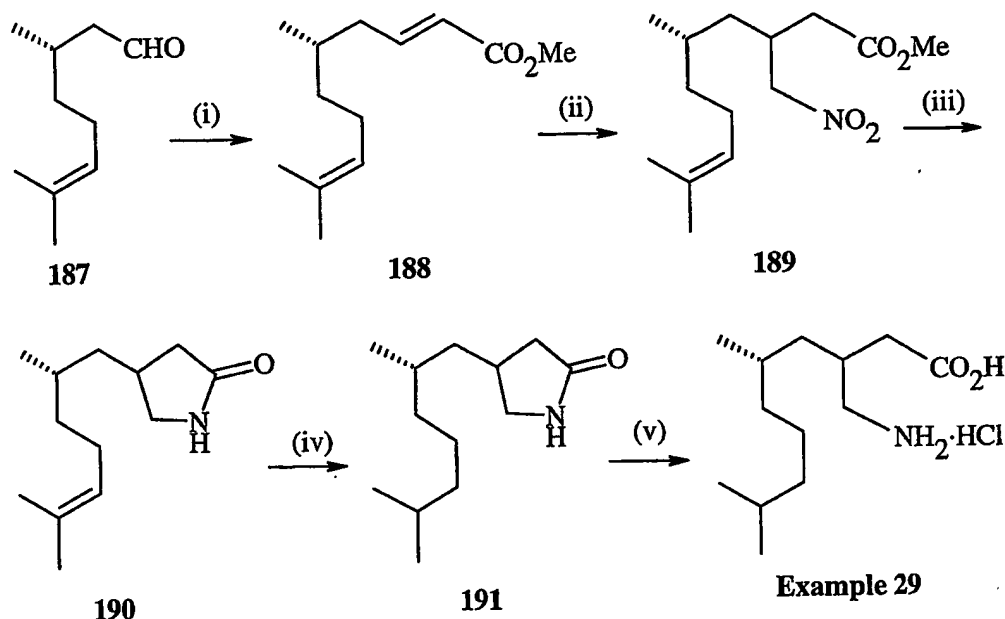
Example 27: 3-Aminomethyl-4-isopropyl-octanoic acid

Prepared according to the procedure of Example 26. Yield = 0.13 g (15%) of 3-aminomethyl-4-isopropyl-octanoic acid. mp = 160-170°C. ¹H NMR (CD₃OD) δ 0.9 (m, 9H), 1.30 (m, 7H), 1.78 (m, 1H), 2.30 (m, 1H), 2.45 (m, 2H), 2.95 (m, 2H). MS (APCI, CH₃CN, H₂O) 198 (M-17, 100%), 216 (M⁺, 50%).

-154-

Example 28: 3-Aminomethyl-4-isopropyl-hexanoic acid

Prepared according to the procedure of Example 26. Yield = 0.11 g (42%) of 3-aminomethyl-4-isopropyl-hexanoic acid. mp = 170-180°C. ^1H NMR (CD_3OD) δ 0.9 (m, 9H), 1.18 (m, 1H), 1.39 (m, 3H), 1.78 (m, 1H), 2.30 (m, 1H), 2.45 (m, 1H), 2.95 (m, 2H). MS (APCI, CH_3CN , H_2O) 188 (M^+ , 100%).

Example 29

(i) $\text{MeO}_2\text{CCH}=\text{PPh}_3$, THF, 40°C; (ii) MeNO_2 , DBU; (iii) Raney Nickel, H_2 , MeOH; (iv) Pd-C, MeOH, H_2 ; (v) 6N HCl

10 Synthesis of the unsaturated ester 188

(S)-(-)-citronellal **187** (2.0 mL, 11.03 mmol) was stirred at 40°C in dry tetrahydrofuran (30 mL) with methyl triphenylphosphoranylidene acetate (3.69 g, 11.03 mmol). After 8 hours the mixture was cooled to room temperature and stirred overnight. The solvent was removed in vacuo and the residue stirred with n-pentane (50 mL). After 1 hour the solid was removed by filtration and the solvent removed in vacuo to give an oil which was purified by flash chromatography (silica, ethyl acetate:heptane 1:9) to give 2.05 g (88%) of **188** as a clear oil. ^1H NMR (400 MHz) (CDCl_3) δ 0.90 (3H, d, $J = 6$ Hz); 1.12-1.40 (2H, m); 1.60 (3H, s); 1.62 (1H, m); 1.68 (3H, s); 2.01 (3H, m); 2.21 (1H, m);

-155-

3.73 (3H, s); 5.08 (1H, m); 5.82 (1H, d, $J = 16$ Hz); 6.94 (1H, m).

MS (CI⁺) (m/z): 211 (MH⁺, 75%), 179 (78%), 151 (100%).

IR (thin film) (cm⁻¹) ν : 1271, 1436, 1728, 2917.

Synthesis of the nitroester 189

5 The ester **188** (2.02 g, 9.6 mmol) was dissolved in nitromethane (25 mL) with 1,8-diazabicyclo[5,4,0]undec-7-ene (1.44 mL, 9.6 mmol) and stirred at room temperature. After 23 hours the mixture was diluted with diethyl ether (150 mL) and washed with water (50 mL) and then 2N HCl (50 mL). The organic phase was collected, dried (MgSO₄), and the solvent removed in vacuo. The residue was
10 purified by flash chromatography (silica, ethyl acetate:heptane 3:7) to give 2.26 g (87%) of **189** as a clear oil. Note that this and all subsequent compounds are equimolar mixtures of 2 diastereoisomers. ¹H NMR (400 MHz) (CDCl₃) δ 0.90 (2 \times 3H, each d, $J = 6$ Hz); 1.09-1.58 (10H, m); 1.602 (6H, s); 1.685 (6H, s); 1.94 (4H, m); 2.42 (4H, m); 2.66 (2H, m); 3.70 (6H, s); 4.42 (4H, m);
15 5.07 (2H, m).

MS (CI⁺) (m/z): 272 (MH⁺, 90%), 240 (100%), 151 (100%).

IR (thin film) (cm⁻¹) ν : 1554, 1739, 2918.

Synthesis of the lactam 191

20 The nitro ester **189** (2.09 g, 7.7 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (75 mL) and shaken over Raney Nickel (catalytic, prewashed with water and then methanol) under an atmosphere of hydrogen gas (39 psi) at 35°C. After 17 hours the mixture was filtered through Celite. The solvent was removed in vacuo to give an oil. ¹H NMR showed there had been partial reduction of the double bond so this was carried on without further purification. A sample of this partial reduced
25 product (440 mg, 2.1 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (40 mL) and shaken over 5% Pd-C under an atmosphere of hydrogen gas. After 18 hours the catalyst was removed by filtration through Celite to obtain 442 mg (99% from partial reduced material) as a clear oil which did not need purification. Note that this and all subsequent compounds are equimolar mixtures of 2 diastereoisomers. ¹H NMR
30 (400 MHz) (CDCl₃) δ : 0.88 (18H, m); 1.04-1.58 (20H, m); 1.96 (2H, m);

-156-

2.40 (2H, m); 2.58 (2H, m); 2.98 (2H, m); (3.45 (2H, m), 5.82 (2H, br s).

MS (Cl⁺) (m/z): 212 (MH⁺, 100%).

Synthesis of Example 29

5 The lactam **191** (428 mg, 2.0 mmol) was heated to reflux in 6N HCl (20 mL). After 5 hours the mixture was cooled to room temperature and washed with dichloromethane (2 × 10 mL). The aqueous phase was collected and the solvent removed in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in water (10 mL) and freeze-dried to give 382 mg (71%) of Example 29 as a white solid. Note that this compound is an equimolar mixture of 2 diastereoisomers. ¹H NMR (400 MHz) (d₆-DMSO) δ 0.82 (18H, m); 0.95-1.55 (20H, m); 2.05-2.45 (6H, m); 10 2.75 (4H, m); 7.98 (6H, br s).

MS (Cl⁺) (m/z): 230 ([MH-HCl]⁺, 90%), 212 (100%).

Microanalysis: Calculated for C₁₃H₂₈NO₂Cl:

C 58.74; H 10.62; N 5.27.

15 Found: C 58.46; H 10.50; N 5.33.

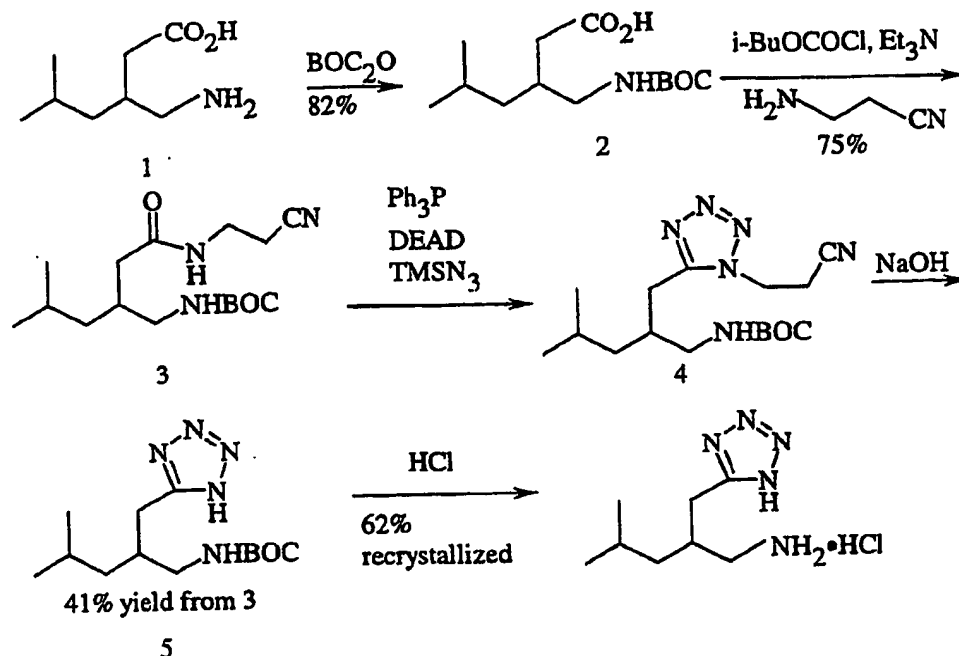
To one skilled in the art, the use of (R)-(+)-citronellal would afford compounds of opposite C5-stereochemistry to Example 29.

Syntheses of compounds of Formulas (1A) or (1B) are described below in Scheme 19 and Examples 30-33.

20 Tetrazoles of Formula (1A) can be synthesized by the route outlined in Scheme 19.

-157-

Scheme 19



The following examples are illustrative of the instant invention, they are not intended to limit the scope.

5 EXAMPLE 30

4-Methyl-2-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-pentylamine

Compound 3 in Scheme 19 {2-[(2-Cyano-ethylcarbamoyl)-methyl]-4-methyl-pentyl}-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester.

A solution of compound 2 (8.0 g, 0.03 mol) (prepared in the usual manner from (BOC)₂ and pregabalin) was taken up in 250 mL dry THF and cooled in an ice water bath. Triethyl amine (4.62 mL, 0.033 mol) was added followed by the addition of isobutyl chloroformate (4 mL, 0.031 mol). The reaction was stirred a 0°C for about 15 minutes during which time a precipitate formed. In a separate flask was placed 3-aminopropionitrile fumarate (3.95 g, 0.03 mol) in 35 mL of 1 M NaOH and 300 mL of THF. This mixture was cooled to 0°C and treated with the mixed anhydride formed above in four portions. Before each portion was added, 35 mL of 1 M NaOH was added to the mixture. The reaction was stirred for 24 hours and was then concentrated to remove THF. The resulting aqueous

-158-

was extracted with three times ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate. The solvents were removed under pressure to give 6.6 g green oil. MS(APCI) m/z 312 ($M + 1$).

5 Compound 4 in Scheme 19 [4-Methyl-2-(1-(2-cyano-ethyl)-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-pentyl]-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester and compound 5 [4-Methyl-2-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-pentyl]-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester.

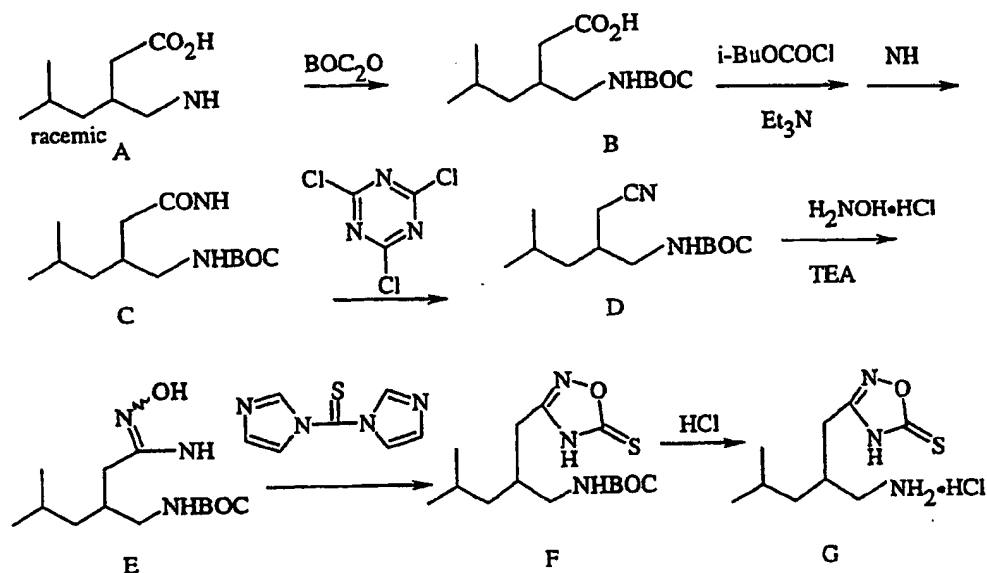
10 The cyanoamide (6.5 g, 0.0209 mol) and triphenylphosphine (11.06 g, 0.042 mol) were dissolved in 300 mL of dry THF. The solution was treated with DEAD (6.7 mL, 0.0425 mol) and TMSN₃ (5.75 mL, 0.043 mol). The reaction was stirred for 24 hours, and the reaction mixture was cooled to 0°C and treated with 900 mL of an aqueous solution containing 46.9 g of (NH₄)₂Ce(IV)NO₃. The reaction mixture was concentrated to remove THF and extracted with three portions of CH₂Cl₂. The combined organic layers were dried with brine and 15 Na₂SO₄, and the solvents were removed under reduced pressure to give a clear oil which was passed through a plug of silica gel to give the product admixed with triphenylphosphine oxide. This crude mixture was dissolved in 200 mL THF and 50 mL of 2N NaOH. The mixture was heated to reflux for 2 hours then stirred at room temperature overnight. The THF was removed under reduced pressure and 20 the resulting residue diluted with water. After extraction with ether, the aqueous phase was acidified to pH 7 and extracted with 21 mL of 4N HCl. The aqueous phase was then saturated with solid KH₂PO₄. The aqueous mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic extracts were washed with brine and dried over Na₂SO₄. Evaporation of the organic solvents under reduced pressure resulted in 25 isolation of 3.4 g of an amber oil.

4-Methyl-2-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-pentylamine

The material from the previous step (0.9 g, 3.18 mmol) was taken up in 20 mL of 4 M HCl in dioxane. The reaction was allowed to stand for 1 hour. A solid formed, 10 mL of ether was added, and the reaction was filtered to give 30 Example 30 as 780 mg of a white solid; MS(APCI) m/z 184 ($M + 1$).

EXAMPLE 31

IsobutylGABA oxadiazolonethione (G) is also named 3-(2-Aminomethyl-4-methyl-pentyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-thione; HCl



5 BOC-IsobutylGABA (B)

A solution of di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (13.1 g, 0.06 mol) in THF (200 mL) was added, over a 10-minute period, to a solution of isobutylGABA (9.95 g, 0.056 mol) in 1N NaOH (125 mL) and THF (50 mL) cooled in an ice-water bath. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature 3 hours, concentrated to remove THF, saturated with saturated KH_2PO_4 and extracted $3 \times \text{EtOAc}$. The extracts were washed $2 \times$ brine, dried over MgSO_4 , and evaporated to yield 13.8 g (95%) of a white solid, mp $84\text{--}88^\circ\text{C}$. MS (APCI) m/z 260 ($\text{M}+1$).

BOC-IsobutylGABA amide (C)

A solution of BOC-IsobutylGABA (6.78 g, 0.026 mol) and triethylamine (3.0 g, 0.030 mol) was cooled to 0°C and isobutyl chloroformate (3.9 g, 0.029 mol) was slowly added. After stirring 20 minutes at 0°C , ammonia gas was bubbled into the reaction mixture for 30 minutes, and then the mixture was stirred at room temperature 18 hours. The mixture was concentrated to remove THF, suspended in water, and extracted $3 \times \text{EtOAc}$. The extracts were washed $1 \times 10\%$ Na_2CO_3 , $2 \times$ brine, and dried over Na_2SO_4 .

-160-

Evaporation yielded 4.9 g (73%) of an oil which was used without further purification. MS (APCI) m/z 259 (M+1).

BOC-IsobutylGABA nitrile (D)

5 A solution of BOC-IsobutylGABA amide (4.6 g, 0.0178 mol) in DMF (15 mL) was added, all at once, to cyanuric chloride (1.66 g, 0.009 mol) and stirred 30 minutes at room temperature. The reaction mixture was poured into a cold solution of NaHCO₃ (4.2 g, 0.05 mol) in water (150 mL). Solid K₂CO₃ was added to bring the pH to 9 and the mixture was extracted 2× CH₂Cl₂, washed 1× brine, and dried over Na₂SO₄. Evaporation yielded an
10 oil, which was filtered through silica gel, eluting with CH₂Cl₂-EtOAc which yielded 3.8 g oil (89%), which was used without further purification. MS (APCI) m/z 240 (M), 239 (M-1); IR (Film) 2215 cm⁻¹.

BOC-IsobutylGABA amidoxime (E)

15 A solution of hydroxylamine was prepared by adding triethylamine (7.62 g, 0.075 mol) to a suspension of hydroxylamine hydrochloride (5.21 g, 0.075 mol) in DMSO (25 mL). After 15 minutes, the triethylamine hydrochloride was filtered off, and BOC-IsobutylGABA nitrile (3.61 g, 0.015 mol) was added to the filtrate. The mixture was heated at 75°C for 17 hours. The mixture was diluted with water and extracted 3× EtOAc. The
20 extracts were washed 2× brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, and evaporated to give an oil which was filtered through a short silica gel column, eluting with CH₂Cl₂-EtOAc to give 3.2 g (78%) oil. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 0.84 (d, 6H, J = 6.35 Hz), 1.11 (m, 2H), 1.40 (s, 9H), 1.63 (m, 1H), 3.05 (m, 1H), 3.15 (m, 1H), 4.85 (m, 1H), 5.43 (m 1H); MS (APCI) 274 (M+1).

25 BOC-IsobutylGABA oxadiazolonethione (F)

A solution containing BOC-IsobutylGABA amidoxime (0.5 g, 0.00183 mol), DBU (1.12 g, 0.00736 mol) and 90% 1,1'-thiocarbonyldiimidazole (0.398 g, 0.002 mol) in MeCN (12 mL) was stirred at room temperature 16 hours. The reaction mixture was evaporated to

-161-

dryness, taken up in EtOAc, and washed with KHSO₄ solution. The EtOAc layer was extracted with 1N NaOH (100 mL). The alkaline extract was washed with Et₂O and acidified with saturated KH₂PO₄ and extracted 3× EtOAc. The extracts were washed 1× water, 1× brine and dried over MgSO₄.
5 Evaporation yielded an oil, 0.25 g (43%). ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 0.84 (d, 6H, J = 6.59 Hz), 1.1 (m, 2H), 1.41 (s, 9H), 1.65 (m, 1H), 1.85 (m, 1H), 2.60 (m, 2H), 3.1 (m, 2H), 4.94 (m, 1H), 12.8 (s, 1H). MS (APCI) 316 (M+1).

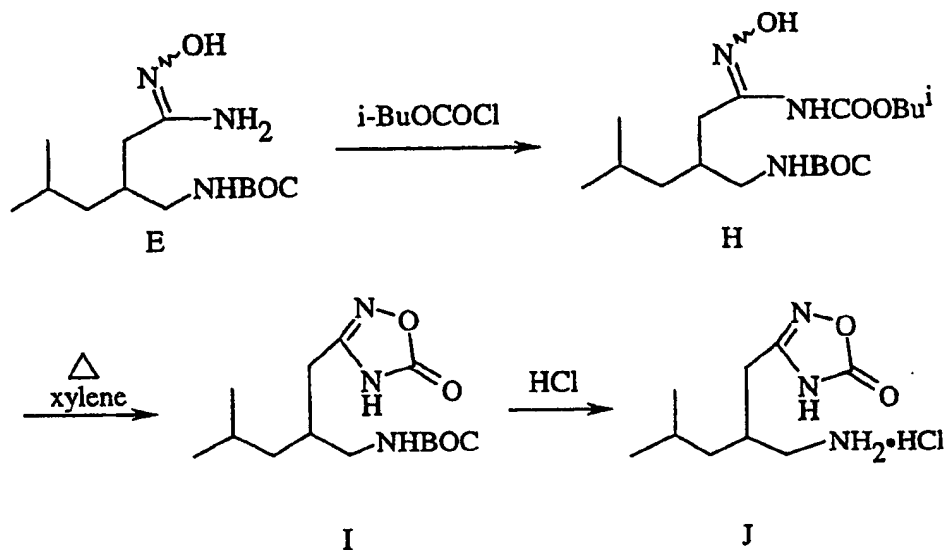
IsobutylGABA oxadiazolonethione (G) is also named 3-(2-Aminomethyl-4-methyl-pentyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-thione; HCl

10 BOC-IsobutylGABA oxadiazolonethione (0.25 g, 0.79 mmol) was taken up in 4 M HCl in dioxane (10 mL) at room temperature for 1 hour. Evaporation followed by recrystallization of the residue from MeCN yielded Example 31 as cream-colored crystals, 0.108 g, mp 183-185°C. ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 0.84 (d, 6H, J = 6.59 Hz), 1.1 (m, 2H), 1.41 (s, 9H), 1.65 (m, 1H), 0.80 (d, 6H, J = 6.59 Hz), 1.06 (m, 1H), 1.25 (m, 1H), 1.55 (m, 1H), 2.1 (m, 1H), 2.7 (m, 4H),
15 7.95 (s, 3H); MS (APCI) 216 (M+1). Anal. Calcd for C₉H₁₇N₃OS-HCl: C, 42.93; H, 7.21; N, 16.69; Cl, 14.08. Found: C, 43.38; H, 7.24; N, 16.29; Cl, 14.17.

-162-

EXAMPLE 32

IsobutylGABA oxadiazolone (J) is also named 3-(2-Aminomethyl-4-methylpentyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-one HCl



5 BOC-IsobutylGABA amidoxime carbamate (H)

Isobutyl chloroformate (0.253 g, 0.00185 mol) was added dropwise to a solution of BOC-IsobutylGABA amidoxime (0.5 g, 0.00183 mol) and pyridine (0.158 g, 0.002 mol) in DMF (10 mL) at 0°C. After 30 minutes at that temperature, the reaction mixture was diluted with water and extracted 3× EtOAc. The extracts were washed 1× water, 1× brine and dried over MgSO₄. Evaporation yielded an oil, 0.7 g (100%) which was used without further purification. MS (APCI) m/z 374 (M+1).

BOC-IsobutylGABA oxadiazolone (I)

BOC-IsobutylGABA amidoxime carbamate (0.7 g, 0.00183 mol) was taken up in xylene (20 mL) and heated under reflux 2 hours. Evaporation yielded a dark glassy oil which was taken up in Et₂O and extracted with 1N NaOH. The alkaline phase was acidified with saturated KH₂PO₄ and extracted 3× EtOAc. The extracts were washed with brine, dried over MgSO₄ and evaporated to yield a brown oil, 0.25 g (46%), which was used without further purification. MS (APCI) m/z 300 (M+1).

-163-

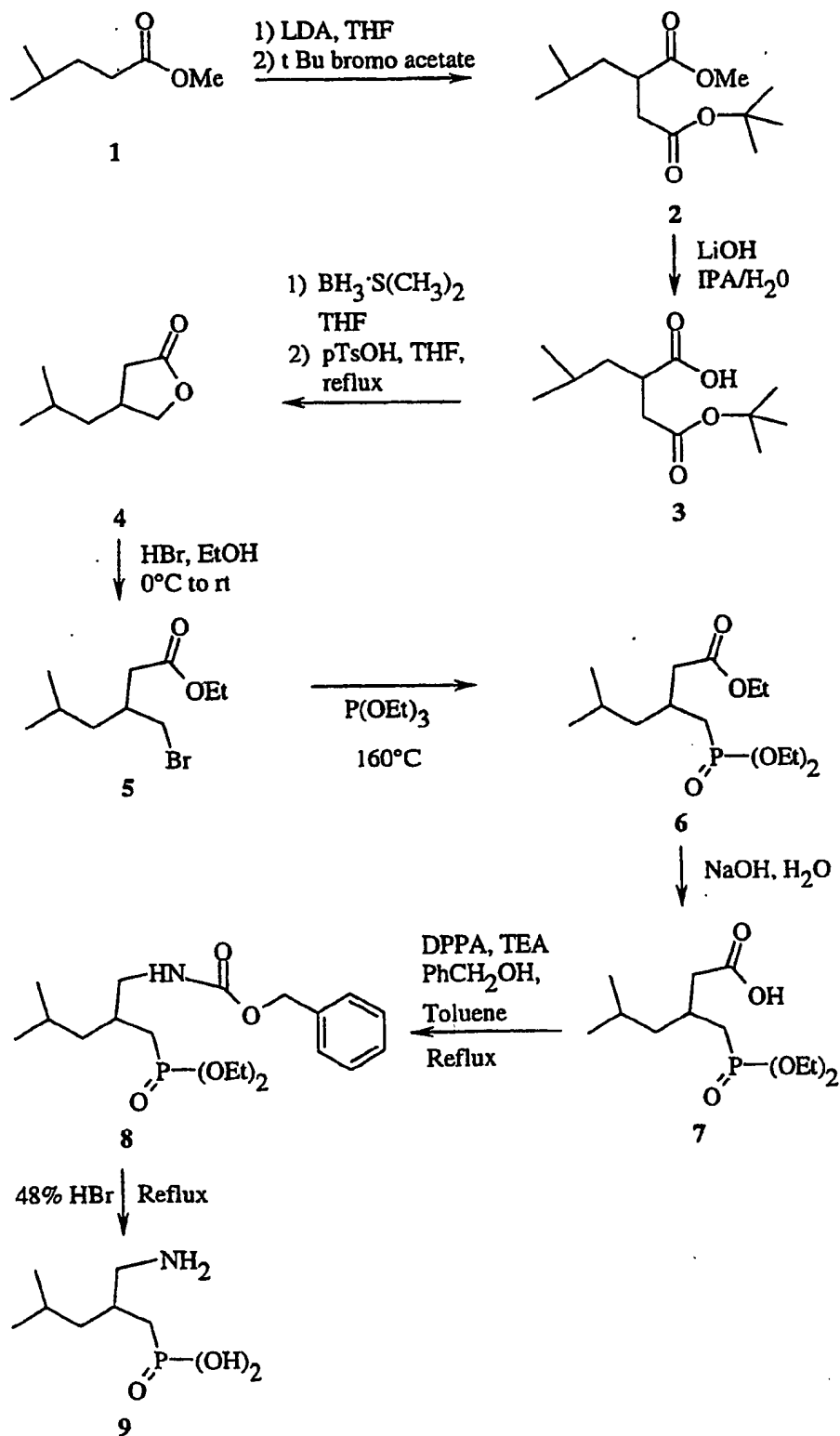
IsobutylGABA oxadiazolone (J) is also named 3-(2-Aminomethyl-4-methyl-pentyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-one; HCl

5 BOC-IsobutylGABA oxadiazolone (0.25 g, 0.835 mmol) was taken up in 4 M HCl in dioxane and allowed to stand 2.5 hours. Evaporation followed by recrystallization of the residue from MeCN-Et₂O yielded Example 32 as a tan
solid, 53 mg (27%), mp 181-184°C. ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 0.80 (d, 6H, J = 6.35 Hz), 1.1 (m, 2H), 1.25 (s, 9H), 1.60 (m, 1H), 2.10 (m, 1H), 2.5-2.8 (m, 4H), 7.95 (s, 3H), 12.39 (s, 1H). MS (APCI) 216 (M+1). Anal. Calcd for C₉H₁₇N₃O₂·HCl: C, 45.86; H, 7.70; N, 17.83; Cl, 15.04. Found: C, 45.40; H,
10 7.55; N, 16.79; Cl, 15.81.

-164-

EXAMPLE 33

Preparation of (2-Aminomethyl-4-methyl-pentyl)-phosphonic acid (9)



-165-

Preparation of 2-Isobutyl-succinic acid-4-t-butyl ester-1-methyl ester (2):

4-Methylpentanoic acid methyl ester (10.0 g, 76.8 mmol) is added to a solution of LDA in 150 mL of THF at -78°C under Ar. After 15 minutes, the anion solution is added by cannula to a solution of t-butyl bromoacetate (22.5 g, 115.2 mmol) in 50 mL of THF at -78°C, and the solution is stirred for 45 minutes. The reaction mixture is then warmed to room temperature, and treated with 100 mL of saturated KH_2PO_4 . The THF is evaporated, and the organics are extracted into Et_2O (3 × 50 mL). The Et_2O is washed with 10% $\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_3$ and dried with MgSO_4 . The solvent is evaporated, and the remaining oil is distilled under vacuum (0.1 mm Hg) to give 11.1 g (59% yield) of 2-isobutyl-succinic acid-4-t butyl ester-1-methyl ester boiling at 65°C to 72°C. NMR (H^1 , 400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 0.9 (6H, m); δ 1.2 (1H, m); δ 1.4 (9H, s); δ 1.5 (2H, m); δ 2.3 (1H, dd); δ 2.5 (1H, dd); δ 2.8 (1H, m); δ 3.6 (3H, s).

Preparation of 2-Isobutyl-succinic acid-4-t-butyl ester (3):

2-Isobutylsuccinic acid-4-t-butyl ester-1-methyl ester (11.1 g, 45.4 mmol) and $\text{LiOH}\cdot\text{H}_2\text{O}$ (2.0 g, 47.7 mmol) are stirred in 180 mL of 3:1 IPA/ H_2O at room temperature overnight. The reaction mixture is extracted with Et_2O (3 × 25 mL). The aqueous phase is acidified to pH = 4, with saturated KH_2PO_4 and extracted with Et_2O (3 × 50 mL). The Et_2O is dried over MgSO_4 , and evaporated to give 8.0 g (77% yield) of 2-isobutyl-succinic acid-4-t-butyl ester as an oil. NMR (H^1 , 400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 0.9 (6H, m); δ 1.3 (1H, m); δ 1.4 (9H, s); δ 1.6 (2H, m); δ 2.3 (1H, dd); δ 2.6 (1H, dd); δ 2.8 (1H, m).

Preparation of 4-Isobutyl-dihydro-furan-2-one (4):

A solution of 2-isobutyl-succinic acid-4-t-butyl ester (8.0 g, 34.7 mmol) in 100 mL of THF is cooled to 0°C under Ar and borane dimethyl sulphide complex (2.6 g, 34.7 mmol) is added. The reaction mixture is stirred at 0°C for 10 minutes, and at room temperature overnight. The solution is cooled to 0°C and 100 mL of MeOH is added. The solvents are evaporated, and the remaining oil is dried under hi-vacuum for 2 hours. The oil remaining is taken up in 100 mL of THF, and a

-166-

catalytic amount of p-toluene sulfonic acid is added. The solution is warmed to reflux overnight. After being cooled to room temperature, the solvent is evaporated, and the oil is taken up in Et₂O (100 mL). The Et₂O solution is extracted with 2.0N Na₂CO₃ (2 × 50 mL) followed by 100 mL of brine and dried over MgSO₄. Evaporation of Et₂O followed by medium pressure chromatography (MPLC) of the remaining oil in 20% EtOAc/Hexanes gives 4.4 g (89% yield) of 4-isopropyldihydro-furan-2-one as an oil. NMR (H¹, 400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 0.9 (6H, m); δ 1.3 (2H, dd); δ 1.5 (1H, m); δ 2.1 (1H, m); δ 2.6 (2H, m); δ 3.6 (1H, m); δ 4.4 (1 H, m).

10 Preparation of 3-Bromomethyl-3-isobutyl-propionic acid ethyl ester (5):

A solution of 4-isopropyl-dihydro-furan-2-one (4.4 g, 30.9 mmol) in absolute EtOH (50 mL) is cooled to 0°C and saturated with HBr by passing HBr gas through it for 10 minutes. The solution is warmed to room temperature and stirred for 2.5 hours. It is diluted with 150 mL of brine and extracted with Et₂O (3 × 100 mL). Drying over MgSO₄ followed by evaporation of the solvent gives 4.9 g (63% yield) of 3-bromomethyl-3-isobutyl-propionic acid ethyl ester as an oil. NMR (H¹, 300 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 0.9 (6H, d); δ 1.3 (5H, m); δ 1.6 (1H, m); δ 2.3 (1 H, m); δ 2.5 (1H, dd); δ 3.2 (1H, dd); δ 3.6 (1H, dd); δ 4.1 (2H, q).

20 Preparation of 3-(Diethoxy-phosphorylmethyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid ethyl ester (6):

3-Bromomethyl-3-isobutyl-propionic acid ethyl ester (4.6 g, 18.3 mmol) is warmed in a 170°C oil bath under Ar. Triethyl phosphite (3.6 g, 22 mmol) is added dropwise over 2 hours. When addition is complete, the oil bath temperature is raised to 190°C for 4 hours. The reaction mixture is cooled to room temperature, and the product is purified by MPLC in EtOAc to give 2.7 g (48% yield) of 3-(diethoxy-phosphorylmethyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid ethyl ester. NMR (H¹, 400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 0.8 (6H, d); δ 1.2 (5H, m); δ 1.3 (6H, m); δ 1.6 (1H, m); δ 1.7 (1H, d); δ 1.8 (1H, d); δ 2.3 (2H, m); δ 2.5 (1H, dd); δ 4.1 (6H, m).

-167-

Preparation of 3-(Diethoxy-phosphorylmethyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid (7):

3-(Diethoxy-phosphorylmethyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid ethyl ester (1.0 g, 3.2 mmol) and NaOH (1.8 mL, 2.0 M) are combined in 10 mL of EtOH at 0°C. After 15 minutes, the reaction mixture is warmed to room temperature and stirred overnight. The EtOH is evaporated, and 50 mL of 2.0 M NaOH is added. The solution is extracted with Et₂O (2 × 50 mL), and then acidified to pH = 1 with concentrated HCl. The acidic solution is extracted with EtOAc (3 × 50 mL), and the combined extracts are dried over MgSO₄ and evaporated to give 0.65 g (72% yield) of 3-(diethoxy-phosphorylmethyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid as an oil. NMR (H¹, 400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 0.9 (6H, d); δ 1.3 (8H, m); δ 1.6 (1H, m); δ 1.8 (2H, m); δ 2.3 (1 H, m); δ 2.5 (2H, m); δ 4.1 (4H, m).

Preparation of [2-(Benzyloxycarbonylamino-methyl)-4-methyl-pentyl]phosphonic acid diethyl ester (8):

A solution 3-(Diethoxy-phosphorylmethyl)-5-methyl-hexanoic acid (0.65 g, 2.3 mmol), diphenyl-di-phosphoryl-azide (0.76 g, 2.8 mmol), triethyl amine (0.47 g, 4.6 mmol), and benzyl alcohol (0.5 g, 4.6 mmol) in 100 mL of toluene is warmed to reflux overnight. The toluene is evaporated, and the remaining oil is taken up in 50 mL of EtOAc. The EtOAc solution is washed with 1.0N HCl (2 × 50 mL), saturated NaHCO₃ (2 × 50 mL), and 50 mL of brine. Drying over Na₂SO₄ followed by evaporation of the solvent gives an oil which is purified by MPLC in EtOAc. Yield of [2-(benzyloxycarbonylamino-methyl)-4-methyl-pentyl]-phosphonic acid diethyl ester = 0.46 g (52%). NMR (H¹, 400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 0.9 (6H, m); δ 1.1-1.4 (9H, m); δ 1.7 (2H, m); δ 2.0 (1H, m); δ 3.1 (1H, m); δ 3.3 (1H, m); δ 4.1 (4H, q); δ 5.0 (2H, s); δ 5.7 (1H, bs); δ 7.3 (5H, m).

Preparation of (2-Aminomethyl-4-methyl-pentyl)-phosphonic acid (9):

A solution of 2-(benzyloxycarbonylamino-methyl)-4-methyl-pentyl]-phosphonic acid diethyl ester (0.46 g, 1.2 mmol) in 20 mL of 47% aqueous HBr is warmed at reflux overnight. The solution is cooled to room temperature, and the H₂O is evaporated.

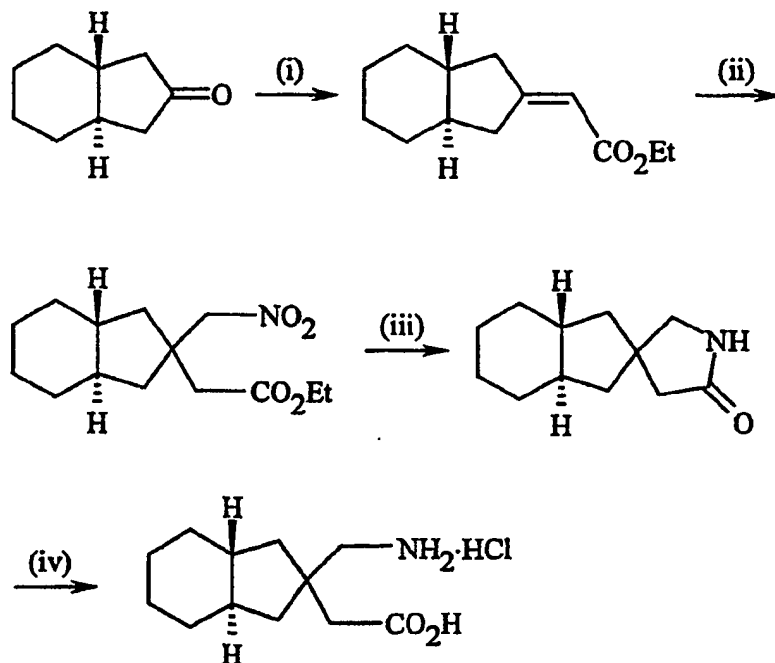
-168-

The remaining solid is taken up in 10 mL of H₂O, filtered through Celite[®] 545, and passed through a Dowex[®] 50 ion exchange column (Bed Volume = 30 mL). The column is eluted with 200 mL of H₂O, 150 mL of 3% NH₄OH, and 150 mL of 10% NH₄OH. The basic eluates are combined and evaporated to give 0.14 g of a white solid. After drying under vacuum at 60°C with P₂O₅, the yield of 0.11g (47%) of Example 33, (2-Aminomethyl-4-methyl-pentyl)-phosphonic acid, was obtained. NMR (H¹, 400 MHz, CD₃OD) δ 0.9 (6H, m); δ 1.2 (2H, t); δ 1.4 (1H, m); δ 1.7(2H, m); δ 2.1 (1H, m); δ 2.7 (1H, dd); δ 3.0 (1H, dd). MS (m/e) 196 (M+1, 100%. Analysis for C₇H₁₈NO₃P: Calculated: C-43.07, H-9.29, N-7.18. Found: C-43.08, H-8.62, N-6.89.

The following examples are illustrative of the preparation of compounds of Formulas V-VIII.

EXAMPLE 34

(±)-(1α,6β)-(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-2-yl)-acetic acid hydrochloride



Step (i)

Sodium hydride (0.11 mg, 2.7 mmol) was stirred with THF (5 mL) at 0°C under argon. Triethylphosphonoacetate (0.5 mL) was added dropwise and the solution

-169-

stirred for 10 minutes. The ketone (0.37 g, 7.7 mmol) in THF (5 mL) was added dropwise with stirring and left to warm to room temperature. After 18 hours, the reaction mixture was separated between water (80 mL) and diethyl ether (3 × 20 mL). Solvent was removed *in vacuo* to give a yellow oil, which was purified via flash chromatography (silica, heptane/EtOAc 19:1). To give 0.34 g (62%) of the ester as a colorless oil:

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) (400 MHz): 1.05-1.29 (9H, m, ring protons + CH₃), 1.76-1.78 (2H, m, ring protons), 1.87-1.97 (2H, m, ring protons), 2.0-2.16 (2H, m, ring protons), 2.51-2.56 (1H, dd, J = 5.7, 27.5 Hz, ring protons), 3.12-3.18 (1H, dd, J = 5.4, 18.8 Hz, ring protons), 4.12-4.20 (2H, m, CH₂), 5.77 (1H, s, CH).

MS (ES⁺) m/e 209 [M + H]⁺ 100%.

Step (ii)

Ester (0.34 g, 1.63 mmol) was dissolved in THF (5 mL), with stirring under argon. Nitromethane (0.25 mL) was added and the reaction mixture heated to 60°C. TBAF (2.3 mL) was added dropwise to the hot solution over 1 hour and stirred for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was partitioned between 2N HCl and diethyl ether, and the diethyl ether layer was washed with brine. Solvent was removed *in vacuo* to give a yellow oil, which was purified via flash chromatography (silica, heptane/EtOAc, 19:1), to give 0.264 g (60%) of the product as a colorless oil.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) (400 MHz): δ 0.97-1.30 (11H, m, ring protons + CH₃), 1.73-1.95 (6H, m, 2 × CH + 4 ring protons), 2.5 (1H, d, J = 16.6 Hz, CH₂CO₂Et), 2.7 (1H, d, J = 16.6 Hz, CH₂CO₂Et), 4.12-4.18 (2H, m, CH₂), 4.49-4.51 (1H, d, J = 11.5 Hz, CH₂NO₂), 4.73-4.75 (1H, d, J = 11.5 Hz, CH₂NO₂).

Step (iii)

Nitroester (0.24 g, 0.9 mmol) was dissolved in methanol with Nickel sponge. Reaction was hydrogenated at 50 psi, 30°C for 15 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite, and the solvent removed *in vacuo* to give the product 0.18 g (85%) as a yellow solid. This product was a mixture of lactam and amino ester.

-170-

Step (iv)

Amino ester was taken up in 6N HCl (5 mL) and dioxane (2.5 mL), and heated to reflux for 4 hours. The solution was washed with dichloromethane (3×5 mL), and the aqueous fraction was evaporated *in vacuo* to give 0.196 g (99%) of Example 34 as a colorless solid.

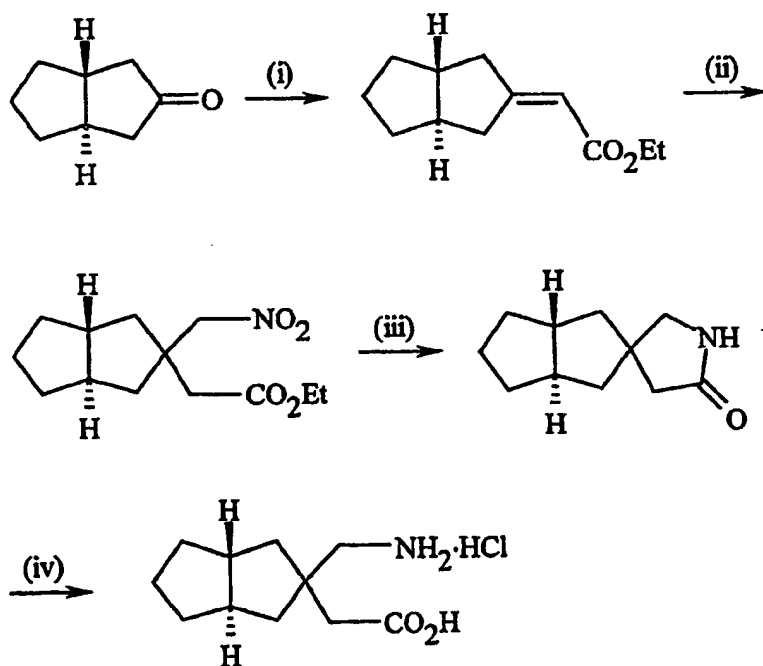
^1H NMR (DMSO) (400 MHz): δ 0.86-1.04 (2H, m), 1.08-1.17 (6H, m), 1.60-1.78 (6H, m), 2.35-2.39 (1H, d, $J = 16$ Hz, $\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$), 2.46 (1H, m, $\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$), 2.83-2.87 (1H, d, $J = 13$ Hz, CH_2NH_2), 2.97-3.00 (1H, d, $J = 13$ Hz, CH_2NH_2), 7.91 (2H, bs, NH_2).

MS (ES^+) m/e 212 $[\text{M} + \text{H}]^+$ 100%.

HPLC, Prodigy C18 column, 5% methanol/acetonitrile. Retention time = 3.00 minutes, and a purity of 99%.

EXAMPLE 35

(\pm)-(1 α ,5 β)-(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-pentalen-2-yl)-acetic acid hydrochloride



15

Step (i)

Sodium hydride (0.6 g, 14.5 mmol) was stirred with THF (50 mL) at 0°C under argon. Triethylphosphonoacetate (2.9 mL) was added dropwise and the solution

-171-

stirred for 10 minutes. The ketone (1.8 g, 14.5 mmol) in THF (10 mL) was added dropwise with stirring and left to warm to room temperature. After 18 hours, the reaction mixture was separated between water (250 mL) and diethyl ether (3 × 50 mL). Solvent was removed *in vacuo* to give a yellow oil, which was purified via flash chromatography (silica, heptane/EtOAc 19:1). To give 1.95 g (69%) of the ester was a colorless oil. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) (400 MHz): δ 1.14-1.19 (2H, m, CH₂), 1.25-1.29 (3H, m, CH₃), 1.55-1.79 (4H, m, 2 × CH₂), 2.03-2.10 (4H, m, 2 × CH₂), 2.45-2.55 (1H, dd, CH), 3.05-3.15 (1H, dd, CH), 4.12-4.17 (2H, q, J = 7.3, 14.4 Hz, COCH₂, 5.76 (1H, m, CH).

10 Step (ii)

Ester (1.9 g, 10 mmol) was dissolved in THF (15 mL), with stirring under argon. Nitromethane (1.4 mL) was added, and the reaction mixture heated to 60°C. TBAF (14 mL) was added dropwise to the hot solution over 1 hour, and stirred for 5 hours. The reaction mixture was separated between 2N HCl and diethyl ether, and then the ether layer was washed with brine. Diethyl ether was removed *in vacuo* to give an orange oil, which was purified via flash chromatography (silica, heptane/EtOAc, 19:1), to give 1.59 g (64%) of the product as a colorless oil. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) (400 MHz): δ 1.14-1.31 (7H, m, CH₃ + ring protons), 1.64-1.72 (5H, m, ring protons), 1.03-1.09 (1H, m, ring protons), 2.00-2.05 (2H, m, ring protons), 2.57-2.61 (1H, d, J = 16.4 Hz, CH₂CO₂Et), 2.71-2.75 (1H, d, J = 16.4 Hz, CH₂CO₂Et), 4.12-4.18 (2H, q, J = 7.1, 14.2 Hz, OCH₂CH₃), 4.56-4.59 (1H, d, J = 11.5 Hz, CH₂NO₂), 4.77-4.80 (1H, d, J = 11.5 Hz, CH₂NO₂). IR (neat) 2957, 2870, 1731, 1547, 1374, 1182, 1030 cm⁻¹.

25 Step (iii)

Nitroester (1.59 g, 5.9 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (40 mL) with Nickel sponge. Reaction was hydrogenated at 50 psi, 30°C for 5 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite, and the solvent removed *in vacuo* to give the lactam 1.08 g (97%) as an off-white solid. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) (400 MHz): δ 1.08-1.11 (2H, m, ring protons), 1.23-1.28 (2H, m, ring protons), 1.62-1.68 (4H,

-172-

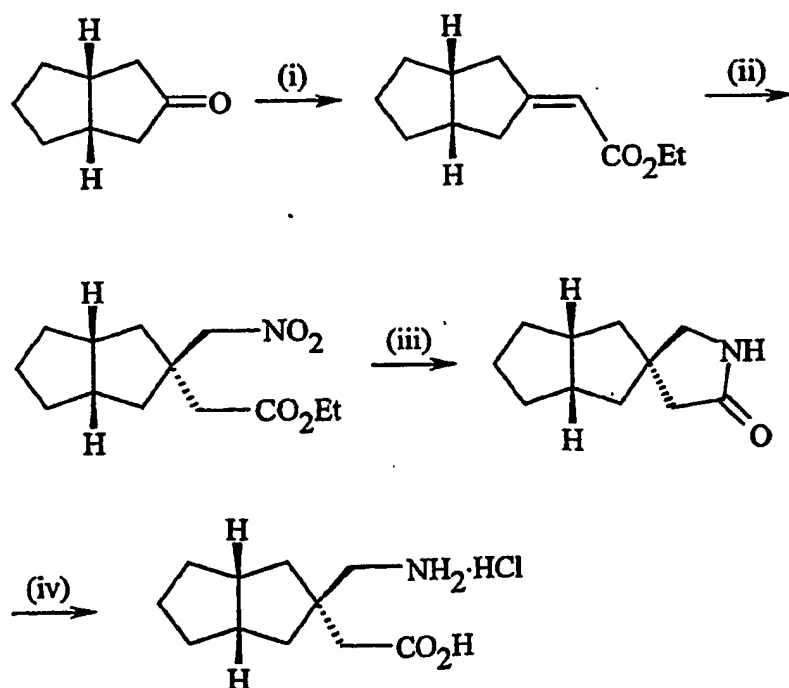
m), 1.82-1.89 (2H, m), 2.00-2.06 (2H, m), 2.30-2.40 (2H, m, CH₂CO), 3.29-3.30 (2H, M, CH₂NH), 5.45 (1H, bs, NH). MS (ES⁺) m/e 180 [M + H]⁺ 3%, 359 [2M + H]⁺ 21%, 381 [2M + Na]⁺ 100%.

Step (iv)

5 Lactam was taken up in 6N HCl (20 mL) and dioxane (8 mL), and heated to reflux for 4 hours. The solution was washed with dichloromethane (3 × 10 mL), and the aqueous fraction was evaporated *in vacuo* to give 0.65 g (84%) of Example 35 as a colorless solid. ¹H NMR (DMSO) (400 MHz): δ 1.0-1.18 (4H, m, ring protons), 1.52-1.72 (6H, m, ring protons), 1.95-2.02 (2H, m, ring protons),
 10 2.33-2.67 (2H, m, CH₂CO₂H), 2.90-2.94 (1H, d, J = 12.9 Hz, CH₂NH₂), 3.00-3.03 (1H, d, J = 12.7 Hz, CH₂NH₂), 7.94 (2H, bs, NH₂). MS (ES⁺) m/e 198 [M + H]⁺ 100%. LCMS (ELSD) Prodigy ODS3 50 mm × 2 mm column, 5%-50% MeCN/H₂O. Retention time = 2.30 minutes, mass found = 198. 100% purity.

15 EXAMPLE 36

(1α,3α,5α)(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-pentalen-2-yl)-acetic acid hydrochloride



-173-

Step (i)

To a suspension of NaH (0.45 g, 11.3 mmol) in THF (25 mL), at 0°C under argon, was slowly added (over ~10 minutes) triethylphosphonoacetate (2.3 mL, 11.6 mmol), followed by 5 (1.29 g, 10.4 mmol in 2 × 3 mL THF). The reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature and left to stir for 4 hours, after which it was diluted with water (100 mL), extracted with ether (2 × 200 mL), washed with saturated brine (50 mL), and dried (MgSO₄). Column chromatography (9:1 heptane/ethyl acetate) gave the product as a colorless oil, 1.75 g, 86%.

IR (thin film) (cm⁻¹) ν = 2964, 1713, 1655, 1371, 1208, 1125, 1040.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 5.72 (1H, m), 4.14 (2H, q, J = 7.2), 3.02-2.92 (1H, m), 2.72-2.54 (3H, m), 2.52-2.42 (1H, m), 2.28-2.20 (1H, m), 1.85-1.31 (6H, m), 1.27 (3H, t, J = 7.2). (m/z AP⁺ 195 (M⁺ + 1) at 100%.

Step (ii)

To a solution of 6 (2.75 g, 22.2 mmol) in THF (22 mL) was added TBAF (24 mL, 24.0 mmol) followed by nitromethane (4.4 mL, 8.14 mmol). The reaction was heated (oil bath at 60°C) for 4.75 hours, after which it was diluted with ethyl acetate (100 mL) and washed with 2 M HCl (30 mL), followed by saturated brine (40 mL), dried (MgSO₄), and concentrated under reduced pressure. Column chromatography (9:1 heptane/ethyl acetate) gave the product as a colorless oil, 0.73 g, 20%. The product was found by ¹H NMR to be a 9:1 mixture of diastereoisomers. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 4.67 (1H, s), 4.60 (1H, s), 4.15 (2H, q, J = 7.2), 4.14 (2H, q, 7.2), 2.58 (2H, s), 2.49 (2H, s), 2.12-2.0 (2H + 2H, m), 1.63-1.49 (4H + 4H, m), 1.44-1.36 (2H + 2H, m), 1.28 (3H, t, J = 7.2), 1.27 (3H, t, J = 7), 1.16-1.04 (2H + 2H, m).

Step (iii)

Compound 7 (0.88 g, 3.45 mmol) in methanol (100 mL) with nickel sponge catalyst underwent hydrogenation at 30°C and a pressure of 56 psi; this was left for 5 hours. Before use, the nickel sponge catalyst was washed several times, first with water and then methanol. After hydrogenation was complete, the reaction mixture was filtered through celite and the resulting solution concentrated

-174-

in vacuo to give a yellow solid, 0.62 g, 80%. ^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 5.43 (1H, br s), 3.15 (2H, s), 2.56-2.44 (3H, m), 1.99 (2H, dd, $J = 12.6, 8.2$), 1.64-1.50 (2H, m), 1.44-1.34 (3H, m), 1.22-1.14 (2H, m).

m/z ES^+ 226 ($\text{MI} + 1$) at 100%.

5 Step (iv)

Compound 8 (0.61 g, 2.7 mmol) in dioxane (10 mL) and 6 M HCl (30 mL) was heated to reflux (oil bath at 100°C) for 4 hours. After cooling, the reaction was diluted with water (40 mL) and the reaction mixture washed with dichloromethane (3×40 mL) and concentrated *in vacuo* to yield Example 36 as a white crystalline product as a 6:1 ratio of diastereoisomers. The product was recrystallized twice

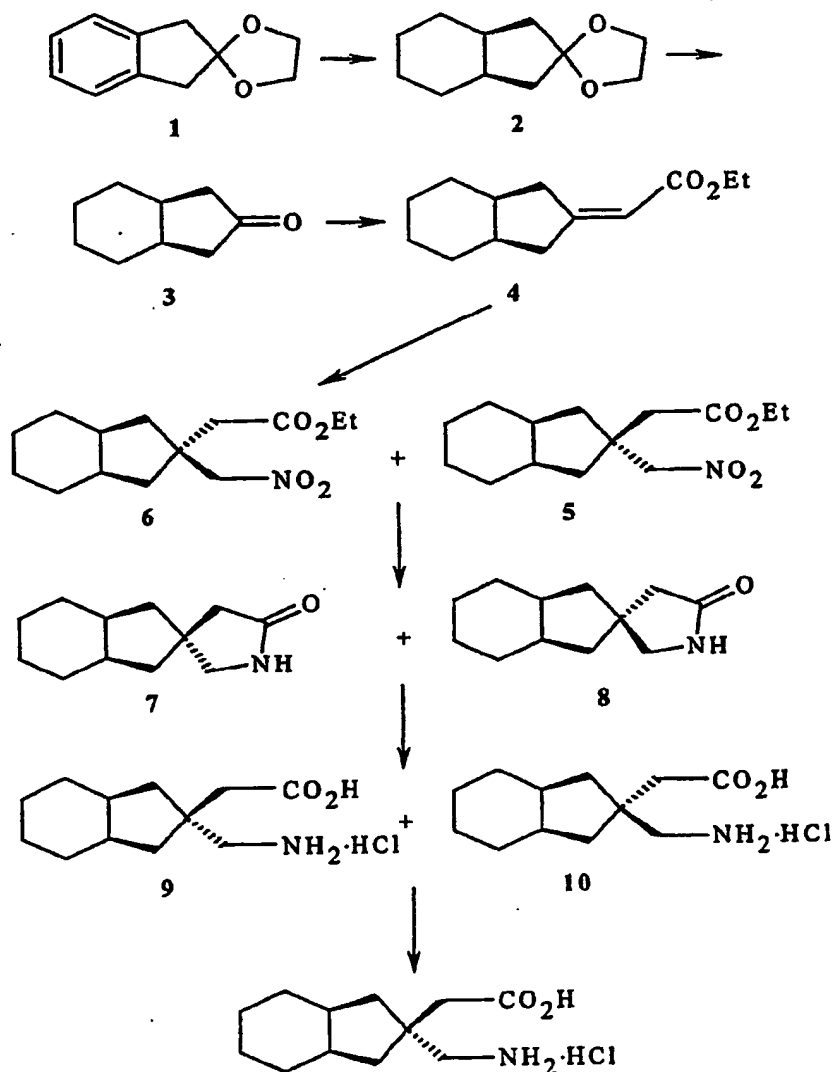
10 from ethyl acetate/methanol to give a 10:1 mixture of diastereoisomers.

m/z ES^+ 198 ($\text{MI} + 1$) at 100%.

^1H NMR (D_2O): δ 3.03 (2H, s), 2.50-2.36 (4H, m), 1.84 (2H, dd, $J = 12, 8$), 1.41 (4H, s), 1.26 (2H, s), 1.02 (2H, m).

15 HPLC column = Prodigy ODS 3, room temperature = 0.87, Purity = 100%.

EXAMPLE 37

(1 α ,6 α ,8 α)(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-2-yl)-acetic acid hydrochloride

Synthesis of compound 1

- 5 Indan-2-one (1.0 g, 7.6 mmol), ethylene glycol (0.43 mL, 7.6 mmol), and *para*-toluene sulphonic acid were refluxed in benzene (40 mL) using a Dean-Stark trap for 6 hours. The mixture was allowed to cool and was then diluted with ethyl acetate (100 mL) and washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution (60 mL). The organic layer was separated off, and the aqueous layer was extracted
- 10 further with ethyl acetate (2 \times 50 mL). The combined organic fractions were washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄), and the solvent was evaporated under reduced

-176-

pressure. The residue was chromatographed (SiO₂, heptane/ethyl acetate, 97:3) to give the *acetal* **1** (1.14 g, 85%) as a colorless oil; *R_f*(heptane/ethyl acetate, 8:2) 0.36; ν_{max} (film)/cm⁻¹ 1483, 1331, 1291, 1105; δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 7.19-7.14 (4H, m, Ph), 4.02 (4H, s, 2 × CH₂CO₂), 3.18 (4H, s, 2 × CH₂O).

5 **Synthesis of compound 2**

Acetal **1** (0.5 g, 2.84 mmol) in ethanol (50 mL) was shaken over a catalytic amount of 5% rhodium on alumina under a hydrogen atmosphere (70 Psi, 50°C) for 16 hours. The catalyst was filtered off, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give the *acetal* **2** (0.51 g, 99%) as a colorless oil;
10 ν_{max} .(film)/cm⁻¹ 2923, 1449, 1337, 1192, 1115, 1089; δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 3.89-3.86 (4H, m, 2 × CH₂O), 2.10-2.00 (2H, m), 1.88 (2H, dd, *J* = 13.9, 7.6), 1.81 (2H, dd, *J* = 13.7, 7.0), 1.56-1.26 (6H, m).

15 **Synthesis of compound 3**

Acetal **2** (1.01 g, 5.54 mmol) was stirred in a mixture of 2N hydrochloric acid (10 mL) and acetone (10 mL) for 24 hours. After this time, tlc showed complete consumption of the starting acetal. Saturated sodium carbonate solution (20 mL) was added, and the mixture was extracted with ether (3 × 25 mL). The combined ether fractions were washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄), and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (SiO₂,
20 pentane/ether, 95:5) to give the *ketone* **3** (0.75 g, 97%) as a colorless oil; *R_f* (heptane/ethyl acetate, 8:2) 0.42; ν_{max} (film)/cm⁻¹ 1743 (C = O); δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 2.37-2.28 (2H, m), 2.20 (2H, dd, *J* = 18.5, 7.5), 2.12 (2H, dd, *J* = 18.7, 6.3), 1.65-1.24 (10H, m).

25 **Synthesis of compound 4**

Triethyl phosphonoacetate (1.13 mL, 5.70 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirring suspension of sodium hydride (0.22 g of a 60% dispersion in oil, 5.43 mmol) in THF (15 mL) at 0°C under argon. After 20 minutes, ketone **3** (0.75 g, 5.43 mmol) in THF (6 mL) was added dropwise. The mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for 16 hours. Water (5 mL) was added, and the mixture

-177-

was extracted with ether (15 mL \times 3). The combined organic fractions were washed with brine and dried (MgSO₄). The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (SiO₂, heptane/ethyl acetate, 95:5) to give the *ester* **4** (0.81 g, 72%) as a colorless oil; R_f (heptane/ethyl acetate, 8:2) 0.66; $\nu_{\max}(\text{film})/\text{cm}^{-1}$ 1715 (C = O), 1652 (C = C); δ_H (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 5.80 (1H, quint, $J = 2.2$, CHCO₂Et), 4.15 (2H, q, $J = 7.1$, CO₂CH₂Me), 2.79 (1H, dd, $J = 19.5$, 8.1), 2.69 (1H, ddt, $J = 19.8$, 7.3, 2.3), 2.47 (1H, dd, $J = 17.3$, 7.2), 2.34 (1H, ddt, $J = 17.3$, 5.6, 1.8), 2.14 (1H, m), 2.02 (1H, m), 1.60-1.22 (8H, m); m/z (ES⁺) 209 (M + H, 57%), 455 (2M + K, 67%).

10 **Synthesis of compounds 5 and 6**

Ester **4** (0.45 g, 2.16 mmol), nitromethane (0.24 mL, 4.31 mmol), and tetrabutylammonium fluoride (3.10 mmol of a 1 M solution in THF, 3.10 mmol) were heated to 65°C in THF for 4 hours. The mixture was allowed to cool, diluted with ethyl acetate (20 mL), and acidified with dilute hydrochloric acid (15 mL). The organic layer was separated off, and the aqueous layer was further extracted with ethyl acetate (2 \times 15 mL). The combined organic fractions were washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄), and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (SiO₂, heptane/ethyl acetate, 98:2) to give a 9:1 ratio of *nitro-esters* **5** and **6** (0.35 g, 60%) as a yellow oil; R_f (heptane/ethyl acetate, 9:1) 0.28; $\nu_{\max}(\text{film})/\text{cm}^{-1}$ 1732 (C = O), 1547 (NO₂), 1375 (NO₂); major isomer **5**: δ_H (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 4.61 (2H, s, CH₂NO₂), 4.15 (2H, q, $J = 7.2$, OCH₂Me), 2.70 (2H, s, CH₂CO₂Et), 2.06 (2H, m), 1.81 (2H, dd, $J = 13.9$, 7.1), 1.56 (2H, dd, $J = 13.1$, 6.8), 1.51-1.22 (8H, m) 1.28 (3H, t, $J = 7.2$).

25 **Synthesis of compounds 7 and 8**

The mixture of **5** and **6** (0.81 g, 3.01 mmol) in methanol (30 mL) was shaken over a catalytic amount of nickel sponge catalyst under a hydrogen atmosphere (50 Psi, 30°C) for 12 hours. The mixture was filtered, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give a 9:1 mixture of *amino-esters* **7** and **8** (0.42 g,

-178-

72%) as a white solid; $\nu_{\max}(\text{film})/\text{cm}^{-1}$ 3214 (NH), 1706 (C = O); major isomer 7: δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl_3): 5.57 (1H, br s, NH), 3.20 (2H, s, CH_2NH), 2.36 (2H, s, CH_2CO), 2.04-1.94 (2H, m), 1.77 (2H, dd, $J = 13.2, 7.0$), 1.62 (2H, dd, $J = 13.4, 6.7$), 1.60-1.20 (8H, m); m/z (ES^+) 387 (2M + H, 97%).

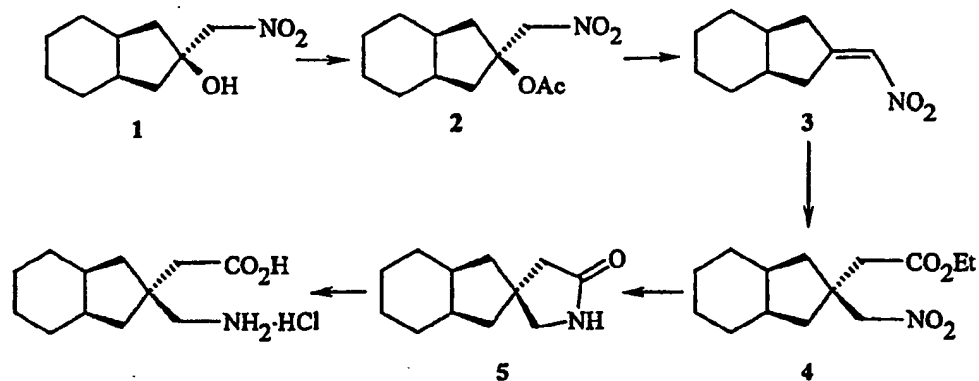
5 Synthesis of Example 37

(1 α ,6 α ,8 α)(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-2-yl)-acetic acid hydrochloride.

The mixture of 7 and 8 (0.42 g, 2.17 mmol) was dissolved in 1,4-dioxane (8 mL) and hydrochloric acid (20 mL of a 6N solution), and the mixture was refluxed for 6 hours. After cooling, the mixture was diluted with water (20 mL) and washed with dichloromethane (2×15 mL). The aqueous layer was evaporated under reduced pressure to give a 9:1 mixture of acids 9 and 10 (0.43 g, 79%) as a white solid. Recrystallization using ethyl acetate/methanol gave acid Example 37 exclusively (0.27 g); δ_{H} (400 MHz; d_6 -DMSO): 12.3 (1H, br s, CO_2H), 7.94 (2H, br s, NH_2), 2.90 (2H, s, CH_2NH_2), 2.52 (2H, s, $\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$), 1.97 (2H, br s), 1.65 (2H, dd, $J = 13.5, 6.7$), 1.54-1.20 (10H, m); m/z (ES^+) 212 (M + H, 100%); (Found: C, 56.4; H, 8.74; N, 5.43 $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{21}\text{NO}_2 \cdot \text{HCl} \cdot 0.5\text{H}_2\text{O}$ requires C, 56.1; H, 9.03; N, 5.45%); LCMS (Prodigy C18 50 mm \times 4.6 mmid column, 5%-50% Acetonitrile/water); Retention Time = 1.53 minutes, 98% purity.

EXAMPLE 38

20 ((1 α ,6 α ,8 β)(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-2-yl)-acetic acid hydrochloride



Synthesis of compound 1

-179-

n-Butyllithium (5.1 mL of a 2.5 M solution in hexanes, 12.75 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirring mixture of nitromethane (0.34 mL, 6.3 mmol) in THF (20 mL) and HMPA (2 mL) at -78°C under argon. The mixture was allowed to warm to -60°C and stirred for 1 hour. The mixture was cooled to -78°C and 3 (0.79 g, 5.73 mmol) was added. The mixture was allowed to warm to -60°C and stirred for a further 2 hours. The mixture was quenched by addition of saturated ammonium chloride solution (5 mL). After warming to room temperature, dilute hydrochloric acid (10 mL) and ether (30 mL) were added. The organic layer was separated, and the aqueous layer was further extracted with ether (2 × 25 mL). The combined organic fractions were washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄), and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (SiO₂, heptane/ethyl acetate, 95:5) to give the *nitro-alcohol 1* (0.50 g, 43%) as a white solid; R_f (heptane/ethyl acetate, 9:1) 0.14; $\nu_{\max}(\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2)/\text{cm}^{-1}$ 3424 (OH), 1548 (NO₂), 1379 (NO₂); δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 4.45 (2H, s, CH₂NO₂), 3.26 (1H, s, OH), 2.04-1.95 (2H, m), 1.85-1.80 (4H, m), 1.64-1.24 (8H, m).

Synthesis of compound 2

A mixture of **1** (0.50 g, 2.49 mmol) and concentrated sulphuric acid (1 drop) was heated to 50°C in acetic anhydride (1 mL) for 5 minutes. The mixture was allowed to cool and then partitioned between ether (100 mL) and water (50 mL). The ether layer was washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄), and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give the *nitro-acetate 2* (0.49 g, 82%) as a colorless oil; R_f (heptane/ethyl acetate, 9:1) 0.44; $\nu_{\max}(\text{film})/\text{cm}^{-1}$ 1739 (C=O), 1551 (NO₂), 1375 (NO₂); δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 4.88 (2H, s, CH₂NO₂), 2.38-2.00 (8H, m), 2.07 (3H, s, MeCO), 1.62-1.32 (6H, m).

Synthesis of compound 3

Potassium methoxide (0.15 g, 2.04 mmol) in methanol (3 mL) was added dropwise to a stirring solution of **2** (0.49 g, 2.04 mmol) in methanol (5 mL) at 0°C. After 10 minutes, the mixture was partitioned between ether (100 mL) and water (50 mL). The ether layer was washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄) and the

-180-

solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (SiO₂, pentane/ether, 98:2) to give the *nitro-alkene* **3** (0.21 g, 57%) as a pale yellow oil; R_f (heptane/ethyl acetate, 8:2) 0.54; $\nu_{\text{max}}(\text{film})/\text{cm}^{-1}$ 1643 (C = C), 1509 (NO₂), 1342 (NO₂); δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 7.12 (1H, quint, $J = 2.0$, CHNO₂), 3.01 (1H, ddt, $J = 20.5, 8.0, 2.1$), 2.90 (1H, ddt, $J = 20.5, 7.3, 2.1$), 2.54 (1H, ddt, $J = 17.8, 7.1, 2.0$), 2.43 (1H, ddt, $J = 17.7, 5.6, 1.9$), 2.21 (1H, m), 2.12 (1H, m), 1.60-1.24 (8H, m).

Synthesis of compound 4

Ethyl acetate (0.12 mL, 1.22 mmol) in THF (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirring solution of lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide (1.22 mL of a 1 M solution in THF, 1.22 mmol) at -78°C under argon. After 20 minutes, **3** (0.21 g, 1.16 mmol) in THF (1 mL) was added, and the mixture was stirred for 2 hours. The mixture was quenched by addition of saturated ammonium chloride solution (3 mL) and allowed to warm to room temperature. The mixture was diluted with ether (20 mL) and dilute hydrochloric acid (15 mL) was added. The organic layer was separated, and the aqueous layer was further extracted with ether (2 × 10 mL). The combined organic fractions were washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄), and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (SiO₂, heptane/ethyl acetate, 99:1) to give the *nitro-ester* **4** (0.13 g, 41%) as a colorless liquid; R_f(heptane/ethyl acetate, 9:1) 0.32; $\nu_{\text{max}}(\text{film})/\text{cm}^{-1}$ 1731 (C = O), 1547 (NO₂), 1375 (NO₂); δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 4.73 (2H, s, CH₂NO₂), 4.14 (2H, q, $J = 7.1$, CO₂CH₂Me), 2.58 (2H, s, CH₂CO₂Et), 2.07 (2H, m), 1.71-1.66 (4H, m), 1.60-1.24 (8H, m), 1.26 (3H, t, $J = 7.2$, CO₂CH₂Me); m/z (ES⁺) 270 (M + H, 100%).

Synthesis of compound 5

4 (0.122 g, 0.45 mmol) in methanol (40 mL) was shaken over a catalytic amount of nickel sponge catalyst under a hydrogen atmosphere (60 Psi, 30°C) for 6 hours. The mixture was filtered and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give *amino-ester* **5** (0.084 g, 96%) as a white solid; $\nu_{\text{max}}(\text{film})/\text{cm}^{-1}$ 3228

-181-

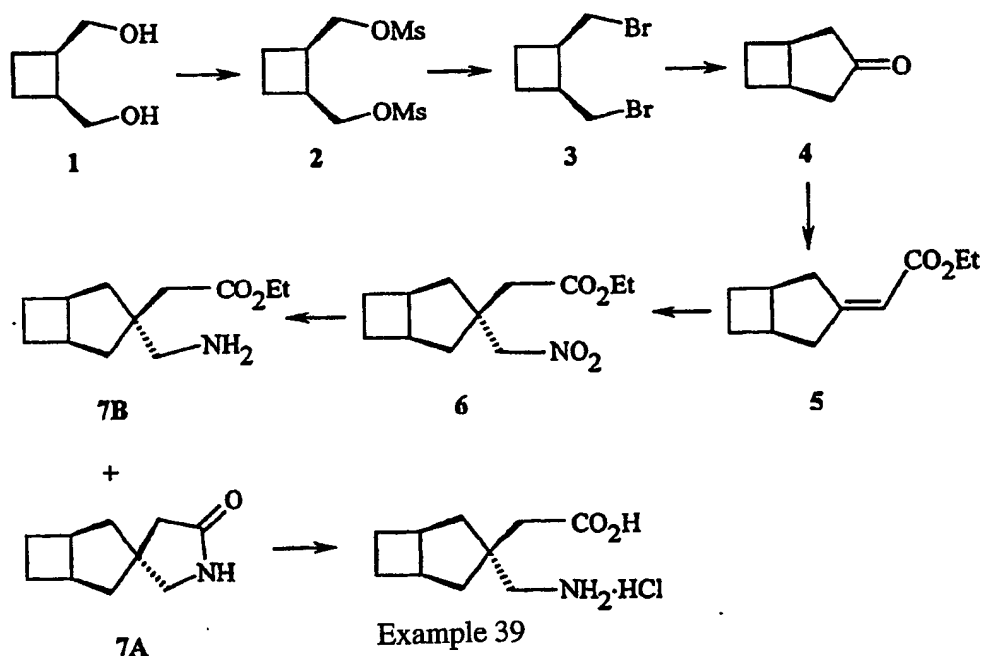
(NH), 1665 (C = O); δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl_3): 5.49 (1H, br s, NH), 3.34 (2H, s, CH_2NH), 2.25 (2H, s, CH_2CO), 2.10-1.98 (2H, m), 1.77 (2H, dd, $J = 13.2, 7.1$), 1.65 (2H, dd, $J = 13.2, 6.8$), 1.62-1.20 (8H, m).

Synthesis of Example 38

5 (2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-2-yl)-acetic acid **5** (0.083 g, 0.43 mmol) was dissolved in 1,4-dioxane (2 mL) and hydrochloric acid (8 mL of a 6N solution), and the mixture was refluxed for 5 hours. After cooling, the mixture was diluted with water (20 mL) and washed with dichloromethane (2×15 mL). The aqueous layer was evaporated under reduced pressure to give the *acid* **6** (0.097 g, 91%) as a white solid. This was recrystallized using ethyl acetate/methanol to give pure Example 38 (0.057 g); δ_{H} (400 MHz; d_6 -DMSO): 7.90 (2H, br s, NH_2), 3.02 (2H, s, CH_2NH_2), 2.43 (2H, s, $\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$), 2.00 (2H, br s), 1.53-1.24 (12H, m); m/z (ES^+) 212 ($\text{M} + \text{H}$, 100%); LCMS (Prodigy C18 50 mm \times 4.6 mm id column, 5%-50% Acetonitrile/water) Retention Time = 1.12 minutes, 100% purity.

15 EXAMPLE 39

(1 α ,3 α ,5 α)(3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid hydrochloride



-182-

Synthesis of compound 1

Lithium aluminum hydride (69.4 mL of a 1 M solution in ether, 69.4 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirring solution of *cis*-cyclobutane-1,2-dicarboxylic acid (5 g, 34.7 mmol) in THF (60 mL) at 0°C under argon. The mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for 16 hours. The mixture was cooled to 0°C and quenched by careful addition of water (2.7 mL), sodium hydroxide solution (2.7 mL of a 15% w/v solution), and water (8.1 mL). The mixture was stirred for 15 minutes, and the precipitate was removed by filtration. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give the *alcohol* 1 as a colorless oil (4.0 g, 98%); δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 3.85 (2H, m), 3.6 (2H, m), 3.2 (2H, s), 2.7 (2H, m), 2 (2H, m); 1.55 (2H, m); δ_{C} (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 63.15, 37.83, 20.40.

Synthesis of compound 2

Mesyl chloride (6.2 mL, 79.1 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirring solution of 1 (4.0 g, 34.4 mmol) in dichloromethane (150 mL) at -40°C under argon. Triethylamine (12.0 mL, 86.0 mmol) was then added dropwise, and the mixture was allowed to warm slowly to room temperature. After stirring for 16 hours, the mixture was quenched by addition of dilute hydrochloric acid (50 mL). The organic layer was separated, and the aqueous layer was further extracted with dichloromethane (2 × 50 mL). The combined organic fractions were washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄), and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (SiO₂, heptane/ethyl acetate, 6:4) to give the *mesylate* 2 (6.1 g, 73%) as a white solid; R_{f} (heptane/ethyl acetate, 1:1) 0.18. δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 4.3 (4H, m), 3.05 (6H, s), 2.9 (2H, m), 2.2 (2H, m), 1.8 (2H, m); δ_{C} (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 69.51, 37.45, 35.28, 21.09.

Synthesis of compound 3

Anhydrous lithium bromide (10.6 g, 121.8 mmol) was added to a stirring mixture of 2 (5.95 g, 24.4 mmol) in acetone (50 mL) under argon, and the mixture was refluxed for 2 hours. After cooling, the acetone was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was taken up in ether (50 mL), washed with water

-183-

(50 mL), brine, dried (MgSO₄), and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (SiO₂, heptane/ethyl acetate, 95:5) to give the *dibromide* **3** (5.36 g, 86%) as an orange liquid; R_f (heptane-ethyl acetate, 8:2), 0.82. δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 3.6 (2H, m), 3.45 (2H, m), 2.85 (2H, m), 2.1 (2H, m), 1.7 (2H, m; δ_{C} (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 39.70, 33.79, 23.95.

Synthesis of compound 4

To a cooled (0°C) suspension of potassium hydride (1.58 g, 39.5 mmol) (previously washed 3 times with pentane) in tetrahydrofuran (22 mL) was added, under an argon atmosphere, a solution of methyl methylthiomethyl sulfoxide (1.36 mL, 13.04 mmol, previously dried over molecular sieves for 3 hours) in tetrahydrofuran (3 mL) over 1 hour. After stirring for a further 30 minutes, a solution of **3** (3.17 g, 13.1 mmol) in THF (2 mL) was added, at 0°C, over 1 hour. The reaction mixture was then allowed to warm up to room temperature and was stirred overnight. The mixture was quenched by addition of aqueous ammonium chloride (6 mL, 25%). After 10 minutes, the solid was filtered off and the filtrate concentrated. The residue was taken up in ether (20 mL) and 9N sulfuric acid (0.05 mL) was added. After stirring for 30 hours, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate was added. The ether phase was separated and concentrated to 5 mL. Saturated sodium hydrogen sulphite (1.5 g) solution was added and the mixture stirred for 30 minutes. The phases were separated. The ethereal phase was stirred for further 30 minutes with a saturated sodium hydrogen sulphite (0.5 g) solution. The phases were separated, and the collected aqueous phases were treated with aqueous sodium hydroxide (5 mL, 20%) and extracted with ether. The ether phase was dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated under reduced pressure to give **4** as a yellow liquid (0.16 g, 11%). δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 3.0 (2H, m), 2.15-2.45 (6H, m), 1.65 (2H, m).

Synthesis of compound 5

Triethyl phosphonoacetate (0.32 mL, 1.61 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirring suspension of sodium hydride (0.059 g of a 60% dispersion in oil, 1.47 mmol) in THF (2 mL) at 0°C under argon. After 20 minutes, ketone **4** (0.16 g, 1.45 mmol)

-184-

in THF (1 mL) was added dropwise. The mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for 16 hours. Water (5 mL) was added, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic fractions were washed with brine and dried (MgSO₄). The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (SiO₂, heptane-ethyl acetate, 95:5) to give the *ester 5* (0.166 g, 0.92 mmol, 64%) as a colorless oil; δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 5.9 (1H, s), 4.2 (2H, q), 3.15 (1H, d), 2.9 (1H, m), 2.8 (1H, m); 2.65 (2H, m), 2.3 (1H, d), 2.15 (2H, m), 1.5 (2H, m), 1.3 (3H, t); δ_{C} (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 169.51, 166.98, 113.37, 59.62, 43.23, 38.79, 38.45, 36.20, 25.62, 24.95, 14.44.

10 **Synthesis of compound 6**

Ester **5** (0.152 g, 0.84 mmol), nitromethane (0.092 mL, 1.7 mmol), and tetrabutylammonium fluoride (1.03 mL of a 1 M solution in THF, 1.03 mmol) were heated to 65°C in THF (1 mL) for 4 hours. The mixture was allowed to cool, diluted with ether (30 mL), and acidified with 2N hydrochloric acid (5 mL). The organic layer was washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄), and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (SiO₂, heptane/ether, 95:5) to give *nitro-ester 6* (0.085 g, 0.35 mmol, 41%) as a colorless liquid; δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 4.4 (2H, s), 4.15 (2H, q), 2.75 (2H, bs), 2.7 (2H, s), 2.3 (2H, m); 2.1 (2H, m), 1.65 (4H, m), 1.15 (3H, t); δ_{C} (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 171.48, 79.68, 60.52, 50.10, 44.15, 41.06, 37.36, 25.76, 14.28.

Synthesis of compounds 7A and 7B

Nitro-ester **6** (0.076 g, 0.31 mmol) in methanol (10 mL) was shaken over a catalytic amount of nickel sponge catalyst under a hydrogen atmosphere (50 Psi, 30°C) for 12 hours. The mixture was filtered, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give a mixture of *lactam 7A* and *amino-ester 7B* (0.05 g) as a white solid. This was used without further purification and characterization.

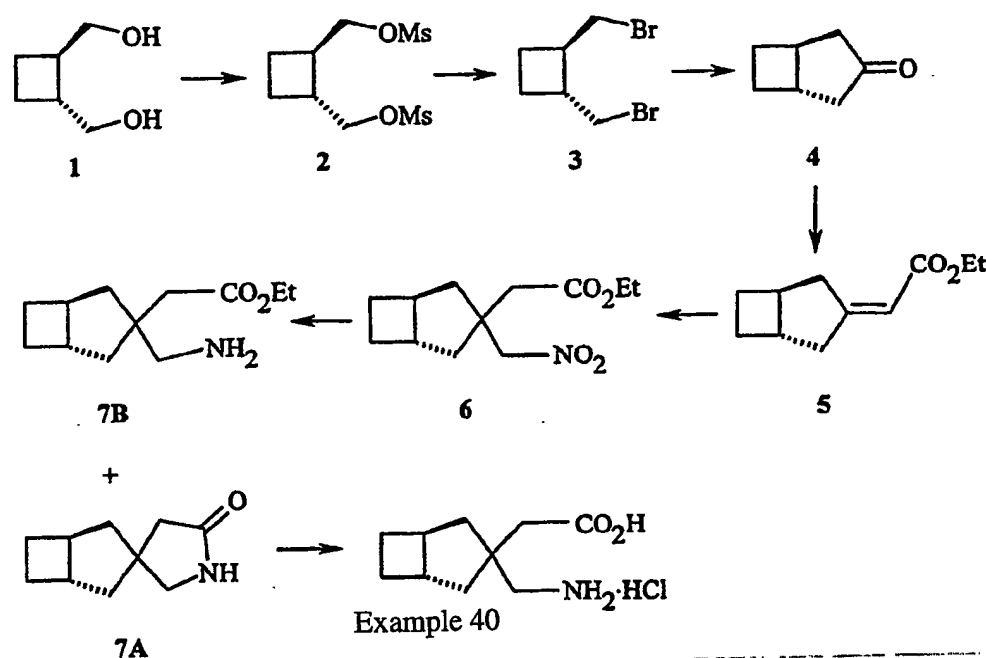
-185-

Synthesis of Example 39

7A and 7B (0.05 g) were dissolved in hydrochloric acid (2 mL of a 6N solution), and the mixture was refluxed for 4 hours. After cooling, solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give the *acid* as a white solid. This was recrystallized using ethyl acetate/methanol to give pure Example 39 (0.045 g, 0.2 mmol, 64%); δ_{H} (400 MHz; D_2O): 3 (2H, s), 2.85 (4H, m + s), 2.35 (2H, m), 2.1 (2H, m), 1.75 (4H, m). δ_{C} (400 MHz; D_2O): 167.5, 46.64, 43.89, 42.03, 40.89, 36.08, 23.91. m/z (ES^+) 184 ($\text{M} + \text{H}$, 100%).

EXAMPLE 40

(\pm)-(1 α ,5 β)(3-aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hepty-3-yl)-ascetic acid hydrochloride

**Synthesis of compound 1**

Lithium aluminum hydride (134.8 mL of a 1 M solution in ether, 134.8 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirring solution of *cis*-cyclobutane-1,2-dicarboxylic acid (9.71 g, 67.39 mmol) in THF (120 mL) at 0°C under argon. The mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for 16 hours. The mixture was cooled to 0°C and quenched by careful addition of water (5.2 mL), sodium hydroxide solution (5.2 mL of a 15% w/v solution), and water (15.7 mL). The

-186-

mixture was stirred for 15 minutes, and the precipitate was removed by filtration. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give the *alcohol* **1** as a pale yellow oil (6.73 g, 57.64 mmol, 85%); δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl_3): 3.85 (2H, m), 3.6 (2H, m), 2.9 (2H, s), 2.7 (2H, m), 2 (2H, m); 1.55 (2H, m).

5 **Synthesis of compound 2**

Mesyl chloride (29.3 mL, 373.8 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirring solution of **1** (8.85 g, 75.8 mmol) in dichloromethane (500 mL) at -40°C under argon. Triethylamine (63.4 mL, 454.4 mmol) was then added dropwise, and the mixture was allowed to warm slowly to room temperature. After stirring for 16 hours, the mixture was quenched by addition of dilute hydrochloric acid (100 mL). The organic layer was separated, and the aqueous layer was further extracted with dichloromethane (2×100 mL). The combined organic fractions were washed with brine, dried (MgSO_4), and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (SiO_2 , heptane-ethyl acetate, 6:4) to give the *mesylate* **2** (15.89 g, 58.3 mmol, 77%) as a white solid; δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl_3): 3.0 (6H, m), 2.6 (2H, m), 2.05 (2H, m), 1.8 (2H, m).

20 **Synthesis of compound 3**

Anhydrous lithium bromide (25 g, 287.3 mmol) was added to a stirring mixture of **2** (15.84 g, 57.4 mmol) in acetone (150 mL) under argon, and the mixture was refluxed for 2 hours. After cooling, the acetone was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was taken up in ether (100 mL), washed with water (100 mL), brine, dried (MgSO_4), and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give the *dibromide* **3** (13.5 g, 55.8 mmol, 97%) as an orange liquid; δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl_3): 3.5 (4H, m), 2.45 (2H, m), 2.05 (2H, m), 1.6 (2H, m).

25 **Synthesis of compound 4**

To a cooled (0°C) suspension of potassium hydride (1.08 g, 27 mmol) (previously washed 3 times with pentane) in THF (15 mL) was added, under an argon atmosphere, a solution of methyl methylthiomethyl sulfoxide (0.93 mL, 8.92 mmol, previously dried over molecular sieves for 3 hours) in THF (2 mL)

-187-

over a period of 1 hour. After stirring for a further 30 minutes, a solution of **3** (2.16 g, 8.93 mmol) in THF (1 mL) was added, at 0°C, over a period of 1 hour. The reaction mixture was then allowed to warm up to room temperature and was stirred overnight. The mixture was quenched by addition of aqueous ammonium chloride (6 mL, 25%). After 10 minutes, the solid was filtered off and the filtrate concentrated. The residue was taken up in ether (20 mL), and 9N sulfuric acid (0.03 mL) was added. After stirring for 30 hours, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate was added. The ether phase was separated and concentrated to 5 mL. Saturated sodium hydrogen sulphite (1.5 g) solution was added and the mixture stirred for 30 minutes. The phases were separated. The ethereal phase was stirred for further 30 minutes with a saturated sodium hydrogen sulphite (0.5 g) solution. The phases were separated, and the collected aqueous phases were treated with aqueous sodium hydroxide (5 mL, 20%) and extracted with ether. The ether phase was dried (MgSO₄), and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give **4** as a yellow liquid (0.141 δ_H, 15%); SH (400 MHz; CDC1₃): 2.25 (4H, m), 2.0 (4H, m), 1.7 (2H, m).

Synthesis of compound 5

Triethyl phosphonoacetate (0.28 mL, 1.41 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirring suspension of sodium hydride (0.052 g of a 60% dispersion in oil, 1.29 mmol) in THF (2 mL) at 0°C under argon. After 20 minutes, ketone **4** (0.141 g, 1.28 mmol) in THF (1 mL) was added dropwise. The mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for 16 hours. Water (5 mL) was added, and the mixture was extracted. The combined organic fractions were washed with brine and dried (MgSO₄). The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (SiO₂, heptane/ethyl acetate, 95:5) to give the *ester 5* (0.092 g, 0.51 mmol, 40%) as a colorless oil; δ_H (400 MHz; CDC1₃): 5.85 (1H, s), 4.1 (2H, q), 3.1 (1H, d.d), 2.45 (1H, d.d), 2.2 (2H, m), 1.75 (2H, m), 1.4 (2H, m), 1.25 (3H, t); δ_C (400 MHz; CDC1₃): 170.53, 166.57, 115.13, 59.62, 47.06, 45.69, 39.89, 37.24, 28.52, 28.17, 14.44.

-188-

Synthesis of compound 6

Ester 5 (0.09 g, 0.5 mmol), nitromethane (0.055 mL, 1.02 mmol), and tetrabutylammonium fluoride (0.61 mL of a 1 M solution in THF, 0.61 mmol) were heated to 65°C in THF (1 mL) for 4 hours. The mixture was allowed to cool, diluted with ether (30 mL), and acidified with 2N hydrochloric acid (5 mL). The organic layer was washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄), and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (SiO₂, heptane/ether, 95:5) to give *nitro-ester 6* (0.063 g, 0.26 mmol, 52%) as a colorless liquid. δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 4.65 (2H, [AB]q), 4.15 (2H, q), 2.65 (2H, [AB]q), 1.2-1.95 (3H, t and m, 13H); δ_{C} (400 MHz; CDCl₃): 171.28, 82.42, 60.56, 49.97, 45.80, 45.32, 42.88, 40.19, 40.09, 27.64, 14.26.

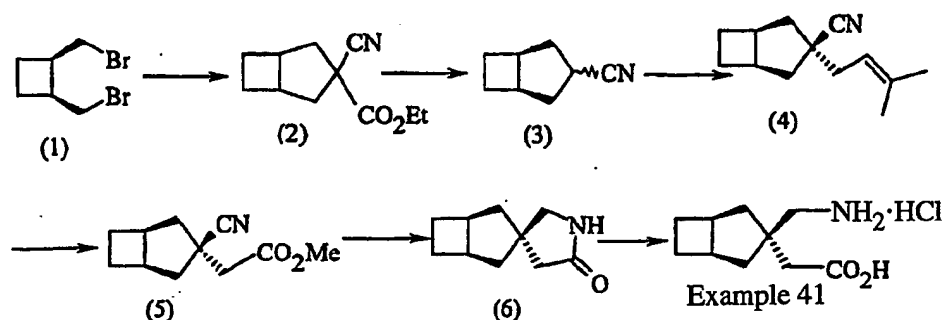
Synthesis of compounds 7A and 7B

Nitro-ester 6 (0.063 g, 0.26 mmol) in methanol (10 mL) was shaken over a catalytic amount of nickel sponge catalyst under a hydrogen atmosphere (50 Psi, 30°C) for 12 hours. The mixture was filtered, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give a mixture of lactam 7A and amino-ester 7B (0.051 g) as a white solid. This was used without further purification and characterization.

Synthesis of Example 40

7A and 7B (0.051 g) were dissolved in hydrochloric acid (2 mL of a 6N solution), and the mixture was refluxed for 4 hours. After cooling, solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give the *acid* as a white solid. This was recrystallized using ethyl acetate/methanol to give pure Example 40 (0.046 g, 0.21 mmol, 81%); δ_{H} (400 MHz; D₂O): 3.3 (2H, [AB]q), 2.7 (2H, [AB]q), 2 (2H, m), 1.35-1.85 (8H, m); δ_{C} (400 MHz; D₂O): 174.8, 47.50, 46.59, 44.28, 43.61, 41.64, 38.37, 38.09, 25.88. *m/z* (ES+) 184 (M + H, 100%).

EXAMPLE 41

(1 α ,3 β ,5 α)(3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid hydrochloride

Synthesis of compound (2)

- 5 Dibromide **1** (5.7 g, 22.3 mmol), ethyl cyanoacetate (4.8 mL, 44.5 mmol) and potassium carbonate (6.15 g, 44.5 mmol) were stirred together in DMF (100 mL) for 48 hours. Dilute hydrochloric acid (100 mL) was added, and the mixture was extracted with ether (3 × 100 mL). The combined organic fractions were washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄), and the solvent was evaporated under reduced
- 10 pressure. The residue was chromatographed (SiO₂, heptane-ethyl acetate, 98:2) to give the *cyanoester* **2** (4.3 g, 100%) as a 68:32 mixture of diastereoisomers: *R_f*(heptane-ethyl acetate, 9:1) 0.28; $\nu_{\text{max}}(\text{film})/\text{cm}^{-1}$ 2241 (CN), 1741 (C=O); Major diastereoisomer: δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl₃) 4.30 (2H, q, *J* 7.1, CO₂CH₂Me), 2.98 (2H, m), 2.56-2.22 (6H, m), 1.70 (2H, m), 1.35 (3H, t, *J* 7.1, Me); Minor
- 15 diastereoisomer: δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl₃) 4.26 (2H, q, *J* 7.1, CO₂CH₂Me), 3.05 (2H, m), 2.56-2.22 (6H, m), 1.99 (2H, m), 1.33 (3H, t, *J* 7.1, Me).

Synthesis of compound (3)

- Cyanoester **2** (0.76 g, 3.91 mmol), water (0.14 mL, 7.82 mmol) and lithium chloride (0.66 g, 15.6 mmol) were heated to 150°C in DMSO (40 mmL) for
- 20 22 hours. The mixture was allowed to cool, diluted with water (150 mL), and extracted with ether (3 × 50 mL). The combined ether fractions were washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄), and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (SiO₂, heptane-ethyl acetate, 95:5) to give the *cyanide* **3** (0.21 g, 44%) as a 60:40 mixture of diastereoisomers; *R_f*(heptane-ethyl

-190-

acetate, 9:1) 0.44; $\nu_{\text{max}}(\text{film})/\text{cm}^{-1}$ 2238 (CN); Major diastereoisomer: δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl_3) 2.97 (1H, m), 2.87 (2H, m), 2.32-2.18 (2H, m), 2.10-1.96 (3H, m), 1.92-1.78 (2H, m), 1.48-1.38 (1H, m); Minor diastereoisomer: δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl_3) 3.13 (1H, m), 2.87 (2H, m), 2.32-2.18 (2H, m), 2.10-1.96 (3H, m), 1.92-1.78 (2H, m), 1.48-1.38 (1H, m).

Synthesis of compound (4)

Cyanide 3 (0.86 g, 7.1 mmol) in THF (30 mL) was added dropwise over 1 hour to a stirring mixture of lithium hexamethyldisilazide (7.8 mL of a 1 M solution in THF, 7.8 mmol) in THF (40 mL) at -78°C under argon. The mixture was allowed to warm to -40°C and stirred for 2 hours. The mixture was cooled to -78°C and dimethylallyl bromide (1.3 mL, 10.6 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred for a further 2 hours at -78°C and then allowed to warm to room temperature overnight. Saturated ammonium chloride solution (20 mL) was added, and the mixture was diluted with ether (50 mL) and dilute hydrochloric acid (30 mL). The aqueous layer was further extracted with ether (2×50 mL), and the combined 15 organic fractions were washed with brine, dried (MgSO_4), and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (SiO_2 , heptane-ethyl acetate, 98:2) to give the *cyanoalkene* 4 (0.96 g, 72%) as a colorless oil; R_{f} (heptane-ethyl acetate, 95:5) 0.38; $\nu_{\text{max}}(\text{film})/\text{cm}^{-1}$ 2230 (CN), 1673 (C=C); δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl_3) 5.27 (1H, tt, J 7.6, 1.3, CHCMe_2), 2.89 (2H, m), 2.30-2.22 (4H, m), 2.10 (2H, d, J 14.2), 1.94 (2H, m), 1.84-1.62 (2H, m), 1.65 (3 H, s, Me), 1.55 (3H, s, Me); m/z (AP+) 190 (M+H, 100%).

Synthesis of compound (5)

Cyanoalkene 4 (0.96 g, 5.1 mmol) and sodium hydroxide (10.2 mL of a 2.5 M solution in methanol, 25.5 mmol) were stirred together in dichloromethane (80 mL) at -78°C . Ozone was passed through the mixture which immediately went orange. After 2 hours, the mixture turned to a green color, and the solution was purged with oxygen for 5 minutes and then with nitrogen. The stirring

-191-

mixture was diluted with ether (100 mL) and water (100 mL) and allowed to warm to room temperature overnight. The aqueous layer was further extracted with ether (2 × 50 mL), and the combined organic fractions were washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄), and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure.

- 5 The residue was chromatographed (SiO₂, heptane-ethyl acetate, 95:5) to give the *cynoester* **5** (0.70 g, 71%) as a yellow oil; R_f(heptane-ethyl acetate, 8:2) 0.36; $\nu_{\text{max}}(\text{film})/\text{cm}^{-1}$ 2233 (CN), 1740 (C=O); δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl₃) 3.75 (3H, s, OMe), 2.94 (2H, m), 2.63 (2H, s, CH₂CO₂Me), 2.35-2.21 (4H, m), 2.00 (2H, m), 1.86 (2H, m); m/z (AP+) 194 (M+H, 95%).

10 **Synthesis of compound (6)**

- Cyanoester **5** (0.81 g, 4.2 mmol) in methanol (100 mL) was shaken over a catalytic amount of nickel sponge catalyst under a hydrogen atmosphere (60 Psi, 30°C) for 6 hours. The mixture was filtered, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give *lactam* **6** (0.64 g, 92%) as a white solid;
- 15 $\nu_{\text{max}}(\text{film})/\text{cm}^{-1}$ 1692 (C=O); δ_{H} (400 MHz; CDCl₃) 5.52 (1H, br s, NH), 3.54 (2H, s, CH₂NH), 2.80 (2H, m), 2.26 (2H, m), 2.16 (2H, s, CH₂CO), 1.93 (2H, ddd, J 13.4, 8.1, 2.4), 1.74 (2H, dd, J 13.0, 3.2), 1.64 (2H, m).

Synthesis of (1 α ,3 β ,5 α)(3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept 3-yl)-acetic acid hydrochloride (Example 41)

- 20 Lactam **6** (0.64 g, 3.87 mmol) was dissolved in 1,4-dioxane (4 mL) and hydrochloric acid (16 mL of a 6N solution), and the mixture was refluxed for 6 hours. After cooling, the mixture was diluted with water (20 mL) and washed with dichloromethane (2 × 15 mL). The aqueous layer was evaporated under reduced pressure to give acid **7** (0.67 g, 79%) as a white solid. Recrystallization
- 25 using ethyl acetate/methanol gave Example 41 exclusively (0.26 g); δ_{H} (400 MHz; d₆-DMSO) 7.98 (2H, br s, NH₂), 3.13 (2H, s, CH₂NH₂), 2.70 (2H, s), 2.17-2.14 (4H, m), 1.85 (2H, dd, J 13.3, 8.0), 1.63 (2H, m), 1.55 (2H, dd, J 12.9, 5.1); m/z (ES+) 184 (M+H, 100%); LCMS (Prodigy C18,

-192-

50 mm × 4.6 mmid column, 5-50% Acetonitrile/water) Retention
Time = 2.40 minutes, 98% purity.

The following compounds are made by one of the methods of
Examples 34 to 41.

- 5 (1 α ,5 β)(3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.1.0]hex-3-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,5 β)(3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,5 β)(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-pentalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,6 β)(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-2-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,7 β)(2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-azulen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
- 10 (1 α ,5 β)(3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.1.0]hex-3-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,5 β)(3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,5 β)(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-pentalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,6 β)(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-2-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,7 β)(2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-azulen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
- 15 (1 α ,3 α ,5 α)(3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.1.0]hex-3-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,3 α ,5 α)(3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,3 α ,5 α)(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-pentalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,6 α ,8 α)(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-2-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,7 α ,9 α)(2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-azulen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
- 20 (1 α ,3 β ,5 α)(3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.1.0]hex-3-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,3 β ,5 α)(3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,3 β ,5 α)(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-pentalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,6 α ,8 β)(2-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-2-yl)-acetic acid,
(1 α ,7 α ,9 β)(2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-azulen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
- 25 ((1R,3R,6R)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.1.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
((1R,3S,6R)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.1.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
((1S,3S,6S)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.1.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
((1S,3R,6S)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.1.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
((1R,3R,6S)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-3-yl)-acetic acid,
- 30 ((1R,3S,6S)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-3-yl)-acetic acid,
((1S,3S,6R)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-3-yl)-acetic acid,
((1S,3R,6R)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-3-yl)-acetic acid,

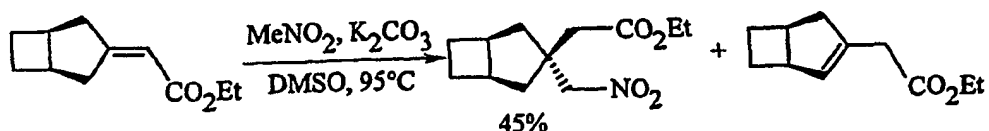
- ((3 α R,5R,7 α S)-5-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-5-yl)-acetic acid,
((3 α R,5S,7 α S)-5-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-5-yl)-acetic acid,
((3 α S,5S,7 α R)-5-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-5-yl)-acetic acid,
((3 α S,5R,7 α R)-5-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-5-yl)-acetic acid,
5 ((2R,4 α S,8 α R)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-naphthalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
((2S,4 α S,8 α R)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-naphthalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
((2S,4 α R,8 α S)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-naphthalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
((2R,4 α R,8 α S)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-naphthalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
((2R,4 α S,9 α R)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)-acetic acid,
10 ((2S,4 α S,9 α R)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)-acetic acid,
((2S,4 α R,9 α S)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)-acetic acid,
((2R,4 α R,9 α S)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)-acetic acid,
((1R,3R,6S)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.1.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
((1R,3S,6S)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.1.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
15 ((1S,3S,6R)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.1.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid,
((1S,3R,6R)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.1.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid
((1R,3R,6R)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-3-yl)-acetic acid,
((1R,3S,6R)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-3-yl)-acetic acid,
((1S,3S,6S)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-3-yl)-acetic acid,
20 ((1S,3R,6S)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-3-yl)-acetic acid,
((3 α R,5R,7 α R)-5-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-5-yl)-acetic acid,
((3 α R,5S,7 α R)-5-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-5-yl)-acetic acid,
((3 α S,5S,7 α S)-5-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-5-yl)-acetic acid,
((3 α S,5R,7 α S)-5-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-5-yl)-acetic acid,
25 ((2R,4 α R,8 α R)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-naphthalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
((2S,4 α S,8 α R)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-naphthalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
((2S,4 α R,8 α S)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-naphthalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
((2R,4 α S,8 α S)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-naphthalen-2-yl)-acetic acid,
((2R,4 α R,9 α R)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)-acetic acid,
30 ((2S,4 α R,9 α R)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)-acetic acid,
((2S,4 α S,9 α S)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)-acetic acid,

and

((2R,4αS,9αS)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)-acetic acid.

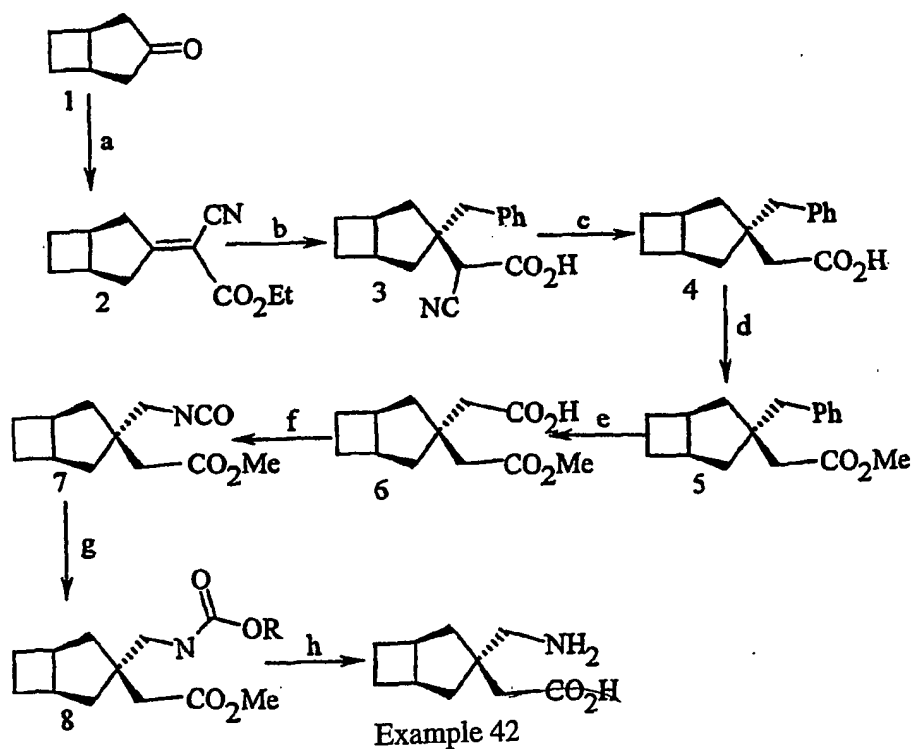
The following methods relate specifically to the preparation of Example 42, (1α,3α,5α)(3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid.

5 Method 1



Nitromethane is added to the unsaturated ester in a solvent such as dimethylsulphoxide or N,N-dimethylformamide with a base such as potassium carbonate, sodium carbonate or cesium carbonate, at a temperature of from 0°C to 120°C . This process achieves higher yields of the nitro ester and reduces the yield of deconjugated ester compared to previous routes.

Method 2A



-195-

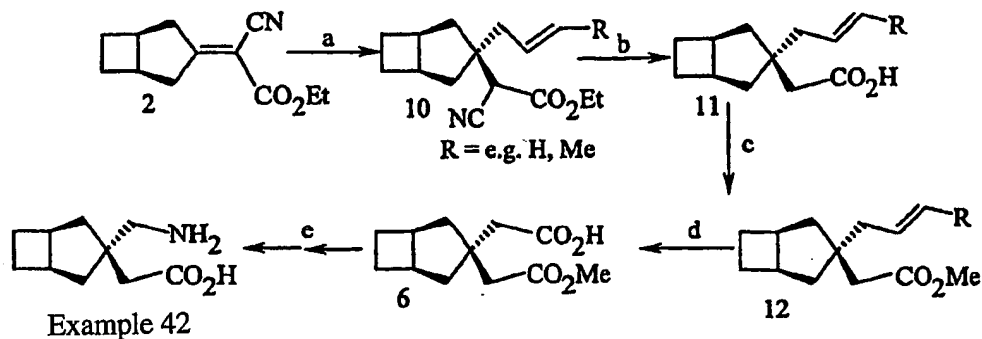
- 5 a) An alkyl cyanoacetate, for example ethyl cyanoacetate, is added to a mixture of cyclopentanone of formula (1) in a solvent selected from toluene, benzene, xylenes, or *n*-heptane to which acetic acid and β -alanine or ammonium acetate, or piperidine are added. The mixture is stirred at a temperature from 0°C to 150°C with removal of water by, for example, use of a Dean-Stark trap or activated molecular sieves, to produce the alkene of formula (2);
- 10 b) Adding the product of step a) above to a mixture of benzylmagnesium chloride or benzylmagnesium bromide or benzylmagnesium iodide, in a dry solvent selected from tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, *n*-heptane, toluene, diethyl ether, or *tert*-butyl methyl ether at a temperature from -100°C to 110°C to produce the addition product of formula (3);
- 15 c) Adding the product of step b) above to a mixture of a base selected from potassium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide, lithium hydroxide, or cesium hydroxide in a solvent selected from ethylene glycol, 2-methoxyethyl ether, 1,4-dioxane, or diethylene glycol and stirring the mixture at a temperature from 25°C to 250°C to produce the carboxylic acid of formula (4);
- 20 d) Adding the product of step c) above to a mixture of iodomethane in a solvent selected from dichloromethane, chloroform, tetrahydrofuran, toluene, or 1,4-dioxane to which a base such as 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU), triethylamine, or 1,5-diazabicyclo[4.3.0]non-5-ene (DBN) is added and stirred at a temperature from -40°C to 110°C to produce the ester of formula (5); or adding the product of step c) above to a mixture of methanol and a concentrated acid such as sulphuric acid or hydrochloric acid at a temperature ranging from 0°C to 100°C; or adding the product of step c)
- 25 above to trimethylsilyldiazomethane and methanol in benzene or toluene at a temperature from -40°C to 100°C; or adding the product of step c) above to diazomethane in a solvent such as benzene, toluene, dichloromethane, or diethyl ether at a temperature from -40°C to 40°C;

-196-

- e) Adding the product of step d) above to a mixture of carbon tetrachloride or ethyl acetate and acetonitrile to which water, sodium periodate, and ruthenium (III) chloride are added, and stirred at a temperature from -40°C to 80°C to produce carboxylic acid of formula (6);
- 5 f) Adding the product of step e) above to a mixture of a base selected from triethylamine or diisopropylethylamine and a solvent selected from toluene, benzene, xylenes, tetrahydrofuran, diethyl ether, or *n*-heptane to which diphenylphosphoryl azide (DPPA) is added and stirring at a temperature from 0°C to 150°C to produce the isocyanate of formula (7); or adding the product
- 10 of step e) above to ethyl chloroformate or isobutyl chloroformate and a base such as triethylamine or diisopropylethylamine in tetrahydrofuran or acetone or diethyl ether at a temperature of -40°C to 78°C followed by addition of sodium azide in water and tetrahydrofuran or acetone followed by addition of toluene or benzene and refluxing; and
- 15 g) Adding the product of step f) above to a solvent selected from toluene, benzene, xylenes, or *n*-heptane to which methanol or *tert*-butanol was added to give (8) and then adding (8) to aqueous hydrochloric acid at a concentration of from 0.01 M to 12 M in the presence or absence of a solvent such as 1,4-dioxane, acetic acid or water to produce the amino acid (9); or adding the
- 20 product of step f) above to a solvent selected from toluene, benzene, xylenes, or *n*-heptane to which benzyl alcohol was added to give (8) and then hydrogenating (8) over nickel or palladium or platinum to give lactam which was then hydrolyzed using aqueous hydrochloric acid at a concentration of from 0.01 M to 12 M in the presence or absence of a solvent such as
- 25 1,4-dioxane, acetic acid, or water to produce Example 42.

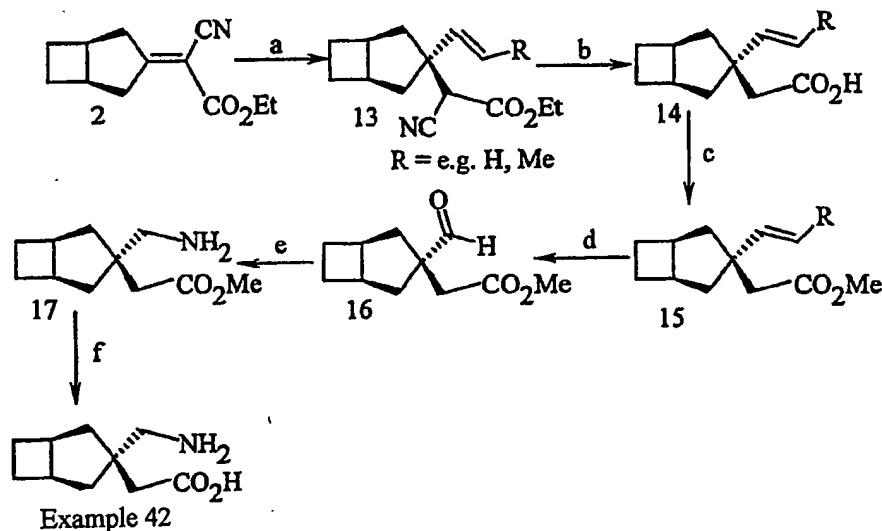
Method 2B

-197-



- a) Cyanoester (2) is added to allylmagnesium chloride or bromide or 2-butenylmagnesium chloride in a dry solvent selected from tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, *n*-heptane, toluene, diethyl ether, or *tert*-butyl methyl ether at a temperature from -100°C to 110°C to produce the addition product of formula (10);
- b) Adding the product of step a) above to a mixture of a base selected from potassium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide, lithium hydroxide, or cesium hydroxide in a solvent selected from ethylene glycol, 2-methoxyethyl ether, 1,4-dioxane, or diethylene glycol and stirring the mixture at a temperature from 25°C to 250°C to produce the carboxylic acid of formula (11);
- c) Adding the product of step b) above to a mixture of iodomethane in a solvent selected from dichloromethane, chloroform, tetrahydrofuran, toluene, or 1,4 dioxane to which a base such as 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU), triethylamine, or 1,5-diazabicyclo[4.3.0]non-5-ene (DBN) was added and stirred at a temperature from -40°C to 110°C to produce the ester of formula (11); or adding the product of step b) above to a mixture of methanol and a concentrated acid such as sulphuric acid or hydrochloric acid at a temperature ranging from 0°C to 100°C; or adding the product of step b) above to trimethylsilyldiazomethane and methanol in benzene or toluene at a temperature from -40°C to 100°C; or adding the product of step b) above to diazomethane in a solvent such as benzene, toluene, dichloromethane, or diethyl ether at a temperature from -40°C to 40°C; and
- d) Adding the product of step c) above to a mixture of carbon tetrachloride or ethyl acetate and acetonitrile to which water, sodium periodate, and ruthenium (III) chloride were added, and stirred at a temperature from -40°C to 80°C to produce Example 42.

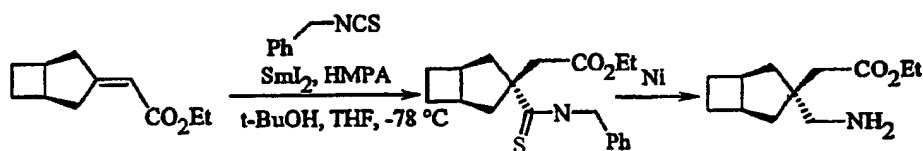
Method 2C



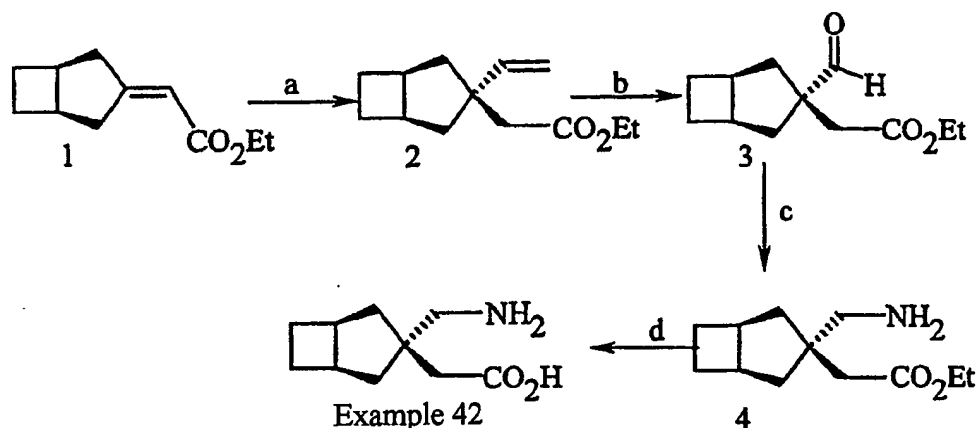
- a) An organometallic reagent such as vinyl lithium or vinyl magnesium chloride or bromide in a solvent such as tetrahydrofuran or diethyl ether at a temperature from -100°C to 0°C is added to the cyanoester (**2**) to give (**13**);
- 5 b) Adding the product of step a) above to a mixture of a base selected from potassium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide, lithium hydroxide, or cesium hydroxide in a solvent selected from ethylene glycol, 2-methoxyethyl ether, 1,4-dioxane, or diethylene glycol and stirring the mixture at a temperature from 25°C to 250°C to produce the carboxylic acid of formula (**14**);
- 10 c) Adding the product of step b) above to a mixture of iodomethane in a solvent selected from dichloromethane, chloroform, tetrahydrofuran, toluene, or 1,4-dioxane to which a base such as 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU), triethylamine, or 1,5-diazabicyclo[4.3.0]non-5-ene (DBN) is added and stirred at a temperature from -40°C to 110°C to produce the ester of formula (**15**); or
- 15 adding the product of step b) above to a mixture of methanol and a concentrated acid such as sulphuric acid or hydrochloric acid at a temperature ranging from 0°C to 100°C ; or adding the product of step b) above to trimethylsilyldiazomethane and methanol in benzene or toluene at a temperature from -40°C to 100°C ; or adding the product of step b) above to
- 20 diazomethane in a solvent such as benzene, toluene, dichloromethane, or diethyl ether at a temperature from -40°C to 40°C ;

-199-

- d) The product of step c) above is ozonolyzed in a solvent such as chloroform or dichloromethane or methanol followed by addition of a quench such as triphenylphosphine or dimethylsulphide at a temperature from -100°C to 0°C to give (16);
- 5 e) The product of step d) above in a solvent such as methanol or ethanol was reacted with ammonia solution or ammonia gas followed by reduction using sodium borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride or sodium triacetoxyborohydride, or by reduction by hydrogenation in the presence of a catalyst such as nickel, palladium, or platinum to give (17); and
- 10 f) The product of step e) above is hydrolyzed using aqueous hydrochloric acid at a concentration of from 0.01 M to 12 M in the presence or absence of a solvent such as 1,4-dioxane, acetic acid, or water to produce Example 42.

Method 3

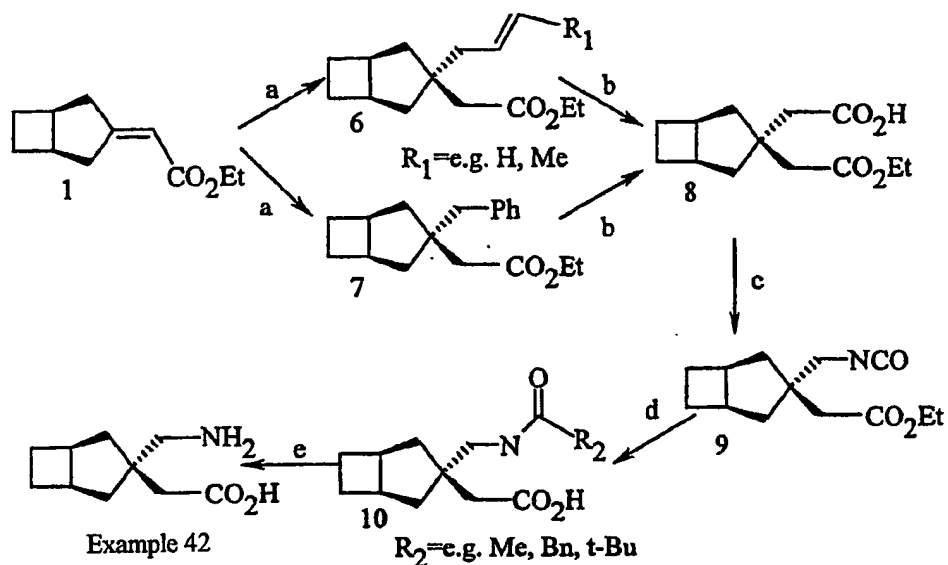
- The unsaturated ester and benzyl thioisocyanate is stirred in a solvent mixture made up of tetrahydrofuran, diethyl ether, or 1,4-dioxane, a coordinating solvent such as HMPA or DMPU and an alcohol such as tert-butanol with samarium diiodide at a temperature of -100°C to 0°C ; the resulting ester is hydrogenated in a solvent such as methanol, ethanol, ethyl acetate using a catalyst such as nickel, palladium, platinum, or rhodium at a temperature from 20°C to 100°C to give the amino ester.
- 15
- 20

Method 4A

- a) An organometallic reagent such as vinyl lithium or vinyl magnesium chloride or bromide is mixed with dimethylzinc, zinc chloride, copper (I) iodide, copper (I) bromide dimethyl sulphide complex, or copper (I) cyanide in the presence of a Lewis acid such as boron trifluoride etherate or aluminum chloride in a solvent such as tetrahydrofuran or diethyl ether at a temperature from -100°C to 0°C, and the unsaturated ester (1) is added to give addition product (2);
- b) The product of step a) above is ozonolyzed in a solvent such as chloroform or dichloromethane or methanol followed by addition of a quench such as triphenylphosphine or dimethylsulphide at a temperature from -100°C to 0°C to give (3);
- c) The product of step b) above in a solvent such as methanol or ethanol was reacted with ammonia solution or ammonia gas followed by reduction using sodium borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride or sodium triacetoxyborohydride, or by reduction by hydrogenation in the presence of a catalyst such as nickel, palladium, or platinum to give (4); and
- d) The product of step c) above is hydrolyzed using aqueous hydrochloric acid at a concentration of from 0.01 M to 12 M in the presence or absence of a solvent such as 1,4-dioxane, acetic acid, or water to produce Example 42.

-201-

Method 4B



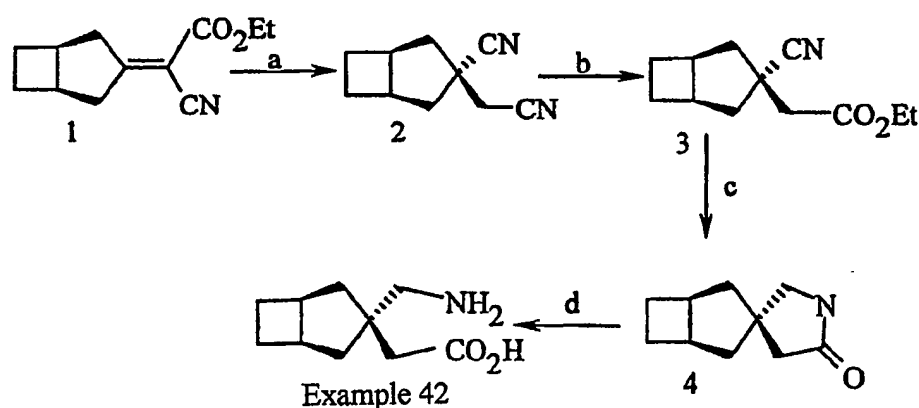
- a) An organometallic reagent such as allylmagnesium chloride or bromide is mixed with dimethylzinc, zinc chloride, copper (I) iodide, copper (I) bromide dimethyl sulphide complex, or copper (I) cyanide in the presence of a Lewis acid such as boron trifluoride etherate or aluminum chloride in a solvent such as tetrahydrofuran or diethyl ether at a temperature from -100°C to 0°C and the unsaturated ester (1) is added to give addition product (6); or an organometallic reagent such as benzylmagnesium chloride or bromide is mixed with dimethylzinc, zinc chloride, copper (I) iodide, copper (I) bromide dimethyl sulphide complex, or copper (I) cyanide in the presence of a Lewis acid such as boron trifluoride etherate or aluminum chloride in a solvent such as tetrahydrofuran or diethyl ether at a temperature from -100°C to 0°C , and the unsaturated ester (1) is added to give addition product (7);
- b) Adding the product of step a) above to a mixture of carbon tetrachloride or ethyl acetate and acetonitrile to which water, sodium periodate, and ruthenium (III) chloride are added, and stirred at a temperature from -40°C to 80°C to produce carboxylic acid of formula (8);
- c) Adding the product of step b) above to a mixture of a base selected from triethylamine or diisopropylethylamine and a solvent selected from toluene, benzene, xylenes, tetrahydrofuran, diethyl ether, or n-heptane to which

-202-

diphenylphosphoryl azide (DPPA) is added and stirring at a temperature from 0°C to 150°C to produce the isocyanate of formula (9); or adding the product of step b) above to ethyl chloroformate or isobutyl chloroformate and a base such as triethylamine or diisopropylethylamine in tetrahydrofuran or acetone or diethyl ether at a temperature of -40°C to 78°C followed by addition of sodium azide in water and tetrahydrofuran or acetone followed by addition of toluene or benzene and refluxing;

d) Adding the product of step c) above to a solvent selected from toluene, benzene, xylenes, or n-heptane to which methanol or *tert*-butanol was added to give (10) and then adding (10) to aqueous hydrochloric acid at a concentration of from 0.01 M to 12 M in the presence or absence of a solvent such as 1,4-dioxane, acetic acid, or water to produce the amino acid (5); or adding the product of step c) above to a solvent selected from toluene, benzene, xylenes, or n-heptane to which benzyl alcohol was added to give (10) and then hydrogenating (10) over nickel or palladium or platinum to give lactam which was then hydrolyzed using aqueous hydrochloric acid at a concentration of from 0.01 M to 12 M in the presence or absence of a solvent such as 1,4-dioxane, acetic acid, or water to produce Example 42.

Method 5



a) Compound (1) and potassium cyanide or sodium cyanide and water and ethanol or methanol are refluxed together with removal of water by, for example, use of a Dean-Stark trap to give (2);

-203-

- b) The product of step a) is stirred with ethanol or toluene or benzene, and the solution is saturated with gaseous hydrochloric acid at a temperature from -30°C to 40°C to give (3);
- 5 c) The product of step b) above is hydrogenated in methanol, ethanol, or ethyl acetate using a catalyst such as nickel, palladium, platinum, or rhodium at a temperature from 15°C to 60°C to give (4); and
- d) The product of step c) above is hydrolyzed using aqueous hydrochloric acid at a concentration of from 0.01 M to 12 M in the presence or absence of a solvent such as 1,4-dioxane, acetic acid, or water to produce Example 42.
- 10

The following examples illustrate the invention pharmaceutical compositions containing a tinnitus treating effective amount of an $\alpha_2\delta$ ligand, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, diluent, or excipient. The examples are representative only, and are not to be construed as limiting the invention in any respect.

15

FORMULATION EXAMPLE 1

Tablet Formulation:

Ingredient	Amount (mg)
3-(1-aminomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one hydrochloride	25
Lactose	50
Cornstarch (for mix)	10
Cornstarch (paste)	10
Magnesium stearate (1%)	5
Total	100

20 3-(1-Aminomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one hydrochloride, lactose, and cornstarch (for mix) are blended to uniformity. The cornstarch (for paste) is suspended in 200 mL of water and heated with stirring to form a paste. The paste is used to granulate the mixed powders. The wet granules are passed through a No. 8 hand screen and dried at 80°C. The dry granules are lubricated with the 1% magnesium stearate and pressed into a tablet. Such tablets

-204-

can be administered to a human from one to four times a day for treatment of tinnitus.

FORMULATION EXAMPLE 2

Coated Tablets:

- 5 The tablets of Formulation Example 1 are coated in a customary manner with a coating of sucrose, potato starch, talc, tragacanth, and colorant.

FORMULATION EXAMPLE 3

Injection vials:

- 10 The pH of a solution of 500 g of gabapentin and 5 g of disodium hydrogen phosphate is adjusted to pH 6.5 in 3 L of double-distilled water using 2 M hydrochloric acid. The solution is sterile filtered, and the filtrate is filled into injection vials, lyophilized under sterile conditions, and aseptically sealed. Each injection vial contains 25 mg of gabapentin.

FORMULATION EXAMPLE 4

- 15 Suppositories:

A mixture of 25 g of (1 α ,3 α ,5 α)(3-aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid hydrochloride, 100 g of soya lecithin, and 1400 g of cocoa butter is fused, poured into molds, and allowed to cool. Each suppository contains 25 mg of (1 α ,3 α ,5 α)(3-aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid hydrochloride.

- 20 FORMULATION EXAMPLE 5

Solution:

- 25 A solution is prepared from 1 g of 3-(2-aminomethyl-4-methyl-pentyl)-4H-[1,2,4]-oxadiazol-5-one hydrochloride, 9.38 g of NaH₂PO₄·12H₂O, 28.48 g of Na₂HPO₄·12H₂O, and 0.1 g benzalkonium chloride in 940 mL of double-distilled water. The pH of the solution is adjusted to pH 6.8 using 2 M hydrochloric acid. The solution is diluted to 1.0 L with double-distilled water, and sterilized by irradiation. A 25 mL volume of the solution contains 25 mg of 3-(2-aminomethyl-4-methyl-pentyl)-4H-[1,2,4]-oxadiazol-5-one hydrochloride.

-205-

FORMULATION EXAMPLE 6

Ointment:

500 mg of 3-(1-aminomethyl-cycloheptylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one hydrochloride is mixed with 99.5 g of petroleum jelly under aseptic conditions. A 5 g portion of the ointment contains 25 mg of 3-(1-aminomethyl-cycloheptylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one hydrochloride.

FORMULATION EXAMPLE 7

Capsules:

2 kg of 3-(1-aminomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one hydrochloride are filled into hard gelatin capsules in a customary manner such that each capsule contains 25 mg of 3-(1-aminomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one hydrochloride.

FORMULATION EXAMPLE 8

Ampoules:

A solution of 2.5 kg of gabapentin is dissolved in 60 L of double-distilled water. The solution is sterile filtered, and the filtrate is filled into ampoules. The ampoules are lyophilized under sterile conditions and aseptically sealed. Each ampoule contains 25 mg of gabapentin.

As shown above, the invention method offers a distinct advantage over existing treatments for diseases that comprise tinnitus, wherein the existing treatments modify pain or secondary symptoms, but do not show a disease modifying effect. The effectiveness of gabapentin, 3-(1-aminomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one hydrochloride, 3-(2-aminomethyl-4-methyl-pentyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one hydrochloride, 3-(1-aminomethyl-cycloheptylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one hydrochloride, 3-(2-amino-1-cyclopentyl-ethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one hydrochloride, or (1 α ,3 α ,5 α)(3-aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid hydrochloride in MIA Rat indicate that α 2 δ ligands are useful for preventing or treating tinnitus.

Having described the invention method, various embodiments of the invention are hereupon claimed.

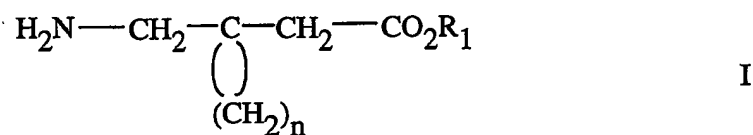
-206-

CLAIMS

What is claimed is:

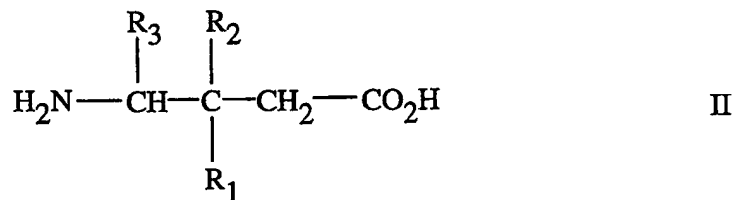
1. A method of treating tinnitus in a mammal suffering therefrom, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of an alpha2delta ligand other than gabapentin or tiagabine, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

2. The method according to Claim 1, wherein the alpha2delta ligand is a compound of Formula I



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, wherein R₁ is hydrogen or straight or branched lower alkyl, and n is an integer of from 4 to 6.

3. The method according to Claim 1, wherein the alpha2delta ligand is a compound of Formula II



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, wherein:

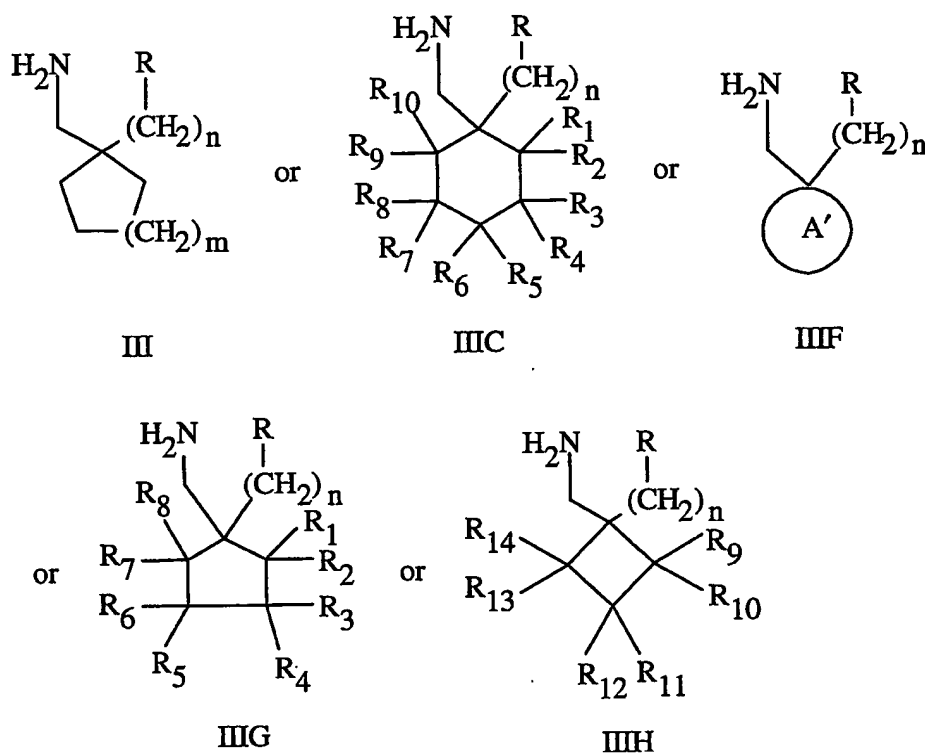
R₁ is straight or branched unsubstituted alkyl of from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, unsubstituted phenyl, or unsubstituted cycloalkyl of from 3 to 6 carbon atoms;

R₂ is hydrogen or methyl; and

R₃ is hydrogen, methyl, or carboxyl.

-207-

4. The method according to Claim 3, wherein the $\alpha_2\delta$ ligand is pregabalin.
5. The method according to Claim 1, wherein the $\alpha_2\delta$ ligand is a compound of Formula



5

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof wherein:

n is an integer of from 0 to 2;

m is an integer of from 0 to 3;

R is sulfonamide,

10

amide,

phosphonic acid,

heterocycle,

sulfonic acid, or

hydroxamic acid;

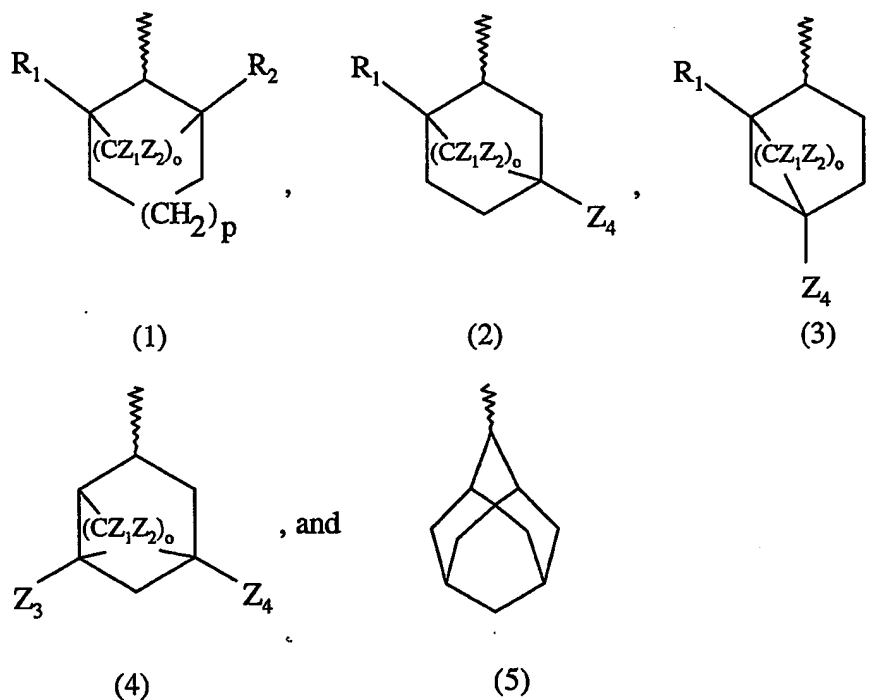
15

R_1 to R_{14} are each independently selected from hydrogen or straight or branched alkyl of from 1 to 6 carbons, unsubstituted or substituted benzyl or phenyl which substituents are selected from halogen,

-208-

alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxy, carboxy, carboalkoxy, trifluoromethyl, and nitro;

A' is a bridged ring selected from



5

wherein

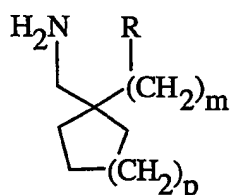
⋈ is the point of attachment;

Z₁ to Z₄ are each independently selected from hydrogen and methyl;

o is an integer of from 1 to 4; and

10 p is an integer of from 0 to 2 with the proviso that in formula 1 R is not -SO₃H when m is 2 and n is 1.

6. The method according to Claim 5, wherein the alpha2delta ligand is a compound of Formula III



III

-209-

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, wherein:

m is an integer of from 0 to 2;

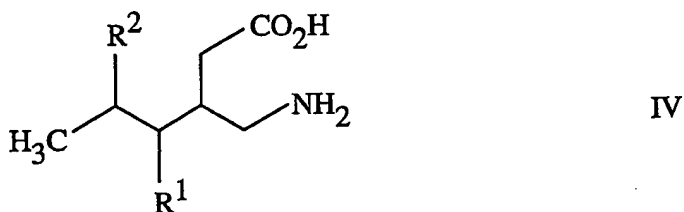
p is an integer of from 0 to 3; and

R is sulfonamide,

- 5 amide,
 phosphonic acid,
 heterocycle,
 sulfonic acid, or
 hydroxamic acid.

- 10 7. The method according to Claim 5, wherein the $\alpha_2\delta$ ligand is selected from 3-(1-aminomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one, 3-(1-aminomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one hydrochloride, 3-(1-aminomethyl-cycloheptylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one hydrochloride, C-[1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cycloheptyl]-methylamine, (1-aminomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-phosphonic acid, (2-aminomethyl-4-methyl-pentyl)-phosphonic acid, N-[2-(1-aminomethyl-cyclohexyl)-ethyl]-methanesulfonamide, C-[1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)cyclohexyl]-methylamine, 4-methyl-2-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-pentylamine, and C-[1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cycloheptyl]-methylamine, and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.
- 15
- 20

8. The method according to Claim 1, wherein the $\alpha_2\delta$ ligand is a compound of Formula IV



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof wherein:

- 25 R¹ is hydrogen, straight or branched alkyl of from 1 to 6 carbon atoms or phenyl;

-210-

R^2 is straight or branched alkyl of from 1 to 8 carbon atoms,
 straight or branched alkenyl of from 2 to 8 carbon atoms,
 cycloalkyl of from 3 to 7 carbon atoms,
 alkoxy of from 1 to 6 carbon atoms,

5

-alkylcycloalkyl,

-alkylalkoxy,

-alkyl OH,

-alkylphenyl,

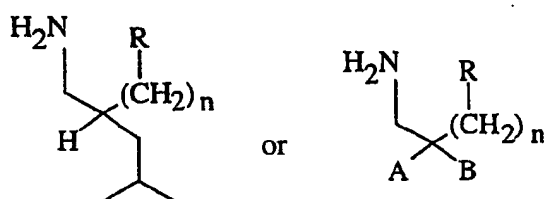
-alkylphenoxy,

10

-phenyl or substituted phenyl; and

R^1 is straight or branched alkyl of from 1 to 6 carbon atoms or phenyl
 when R^2 is methyl.

9. The method according to Claim 1, wherein the $\alpha_2\delta$ ligand is a
 compound of Formula (1A) or Formula (1B).



(1A)

(1B)

15

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof wherein:

n is an integer of from 0 to 2;

R is sulfonamide,

amide,

20

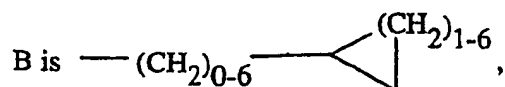
phosphonic acid,

heterocycle,

sulfonic acid, or

hydroxamic acid;

A is hydrogen or methyl; and



25

-211-

straight or branched alkyl of from 1 to 11 carbons, or
 $-(CH_2)_{1-4}-Y-(CH_2)_{0-4}$ -phenyl wherein Y is -O-, -S-, -NR'₃
 wherein

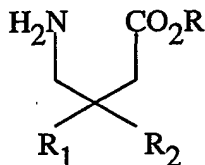
R'₃ is alkyl of from 1 to 6 carbons, cycloalkyl of from 3 to
 8 carbons, benzyl or phenyl wherein benzyl or phenyl can
 be unsubstituted or substituted with from 1 to 3 substituents
 each independently selected from alkyl, alkoxy, halogen,
 hydroxy, carboxy, carboalkoxy, trifluoromethyl, and nitro.

10. The method according to Claim 9, wherein the compound of
 Formulas (1A) or (1B) is selected from the following compounds and their
 pharmaceutically acceptable salts:
- 4-Methyl-2-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-pentylamine;
 3-(2-Aminomethyl-4-methyl-pentyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazole-5-thione;
 (2-Aminomethyl-4-methyl-pentyl)-phosphonic acid;
 3-(3-Amino-2-cyclopentyl-propyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one;
 3-(3-Amino-2-cyclopentyl-propyl)-4H-[1,2,4]thiadiazol-5-one;
 2-Cyclopentyl-3-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-2λ⁴-[1,2,3,5]oxathiadiazol-4-yl)-
 propylamine;
 3-(3-Amino-2-cyclobutyl-propyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one;
 3-(2-aminomethyl-4-methyl-pentyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one;
 3-(3-Amino-2-cyclobutyl-propyl)-4H-[1,2,4]thiadiazol-5-one;
 2-Cyclobutyl-3-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-2λ⁴-[1,2,3,5]oxathiadiazol-4-yl)-
 propylamine;
 ((2R,4αR,8αS)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-naphthalen-2-yl)-acetic acid;
 ((2R,4αS,9αR)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)acetic
 acid;
 ((2S,4αS,9αR)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)
 acetic acid;
 ((2S,4αR,9αS)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)
 acetic acid;

-212-

- ((2R,4 α R,9 α S)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)
 acetic acid;
 ((1R,3R,6S)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.1.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid;
 ((1R,3S,6S)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.1.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid;
 5 ((1S,3S,6R)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.1.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid;
 ((1S,3R,6R)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.1.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid;
 ((1R,3R,6R)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-3-yl)-acetic acid;
 ((1R,3S,6R)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-3-yl)-acetic acid;
 ((1S,3S,6S)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-3-yl)-acetic acid;
 10 ((1S,3R,6S)-3-Aminomethyl-bicyclo[4.2.0]oct-3-yl)-acetic acid;
 ((3 α R,5R,7 α R)-5-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-5-yl)-acetic acid;
 ((3 α R,5S,7 α R)-5-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-5-yl)-acetic acid;
 ((3 α S,5S,7 α S)-5-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-5-yl)-acetic acid;
 ((3 α S,5R,7 α S)-5-Aminomethyl-octahydro-inden-5-yl)-acetic acid;
 15 ((2R,4 α R,8 α R)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-naphthalen-2-yl)-
 acetic acid;
 ((2S,4 α S,8 α R)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-naphthalen-2-yl)-acetic acid;
 ((2S,4 α R,8 α S)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-naphthalen-2-yl)-acetic acid;
 ((2R,4 α S,8 α S)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-naphthalen-2-yl)-acetic acid;
 20 ((2R,4 α R,9 α R)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)-
 acetic acid;
 ((2S,4 α R,9 α R)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)-
 acetic acid;
 (1 α ,3 α ,5 α)(3-amino-methyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid;
 25 ((2S,4 α S,9 α S)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)-
 acetic acid; and
 ((2R,4 α S,9 α S)-2-Aminomethyl-decahydro-benzocyclophepten-2-yl)-
 acetic acid.
- 30 11. The method according to Claim 1, wherein the $\alpha_2\delta$ ligand is a
 compound of the Formula

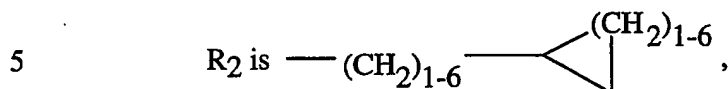
-213-



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof wherein:

R is hydrogen or lower alkyl;

R₁ is hydrogen or lower alkyl;



straight or branched alkyl of from 7 to 11 carbon atoms, or

—(CH₂)₍₁₋₄₎—X—(CH₂)₍₀₋₄₎—phenyl wherein

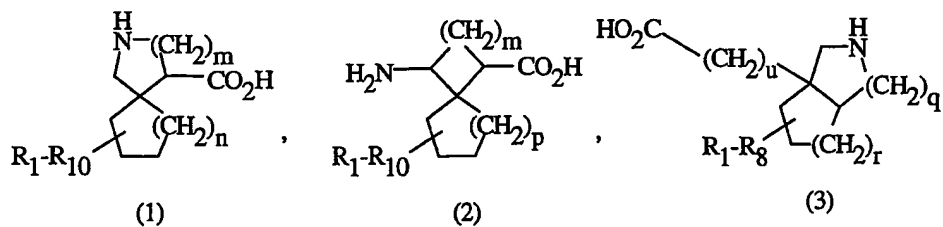
X is —O—, —S—, —NR₃— wherein

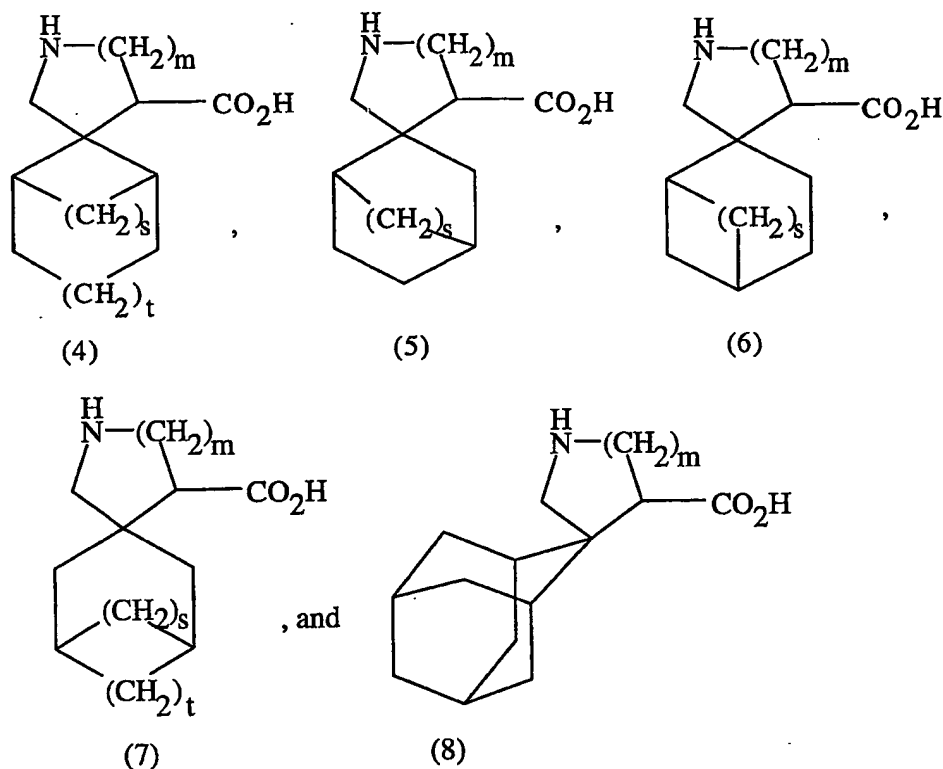
10 R₃ is alkyl of from 1 to 6 carbons, cycloalkyl of from 3 to 8 carbons, benzyl or phenyl;

wherein phenyl and benzyl can be unsubstituted or substituted with from 1 to 3 substituents each independently selected from alkyl, alkoxy, halogen, hydroxy, carboxy, carboalkoxy, trifluoromethyl, amino, and nitro.

15

12. The method according to Claim 1, wherein the alpha2delta ligand is a compound of the Formula (1), (2), (3), (4), (5), (6), (7), or (8)





or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof or a prodrug thereof wherein:

5 R_1 to R_{10} are each independently selected from hydrogen or a straight or

branched alkyl of from 1 to 6 carbons, benzyl, or phenyl;

m is an integer of from 0 to 3;

n is an integer of from 1 to 2;

o is an integer of from 0 to 3;

10 p is an integer of from 1 to 2;

q is an integer of from 0 to 2;

r is an integer of from 1 to 2;

s is an integer of from 1 to 3;

t is an integer of from 0 to 2; and

15 u is an integer of from 0 to 1.

13. The method according to Claim 1, wherein the $\alpha_2\delta$ ligand is selected from the following compounds and their pharmaceutically acceptable salts:

-215-

3-(1-aminomethyl-cyclohexylmethyl)-4H-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-5-one;

(S,S)-(1-aminomethyl-3,4-dimethyl-cyclopentyl)-acetic acid;

(R,S)-3-aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;

(S,R)-3-aminomethyl-5-methyl-octanoic acid;

5 (3-aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid;

(3-aminomethyl-bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-3-yl)-acetic acid, wherein the
cyclobutyl ring is trans to the methylamine group; and

C-[1-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethyl)-cycloheptyl]-methylamine.

10

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Inten al Application No

PCT/IB 03/00232

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 7 A61K31/00 A61P27/16 A61K31/13 A61K31/131 A61K31/137
 A61K31/4245 A61K31/41 A61K31/662 A61K31/18 A61K31/443

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 7 A61K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

EPO-Internal, EMBASE, MEDLINE, WPI Data, PAJ

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	WO 99 31075 A (BRYANS JUSTIN STEPHEN ;HORWELL DAVID CHRISTOPHER (GB); KNEEN CLARE) 24 June 1999 (1999-06-24) cited in the application page 3 page 15, line 17 - line 21 ---	1,5-7
Y	US 5 563 175 A (SILVERMAN RICHARD B ET AL) 8 October 1996 (1996-10-08) cited in the application column 2, line 39 -column 3, line 30 ---	1,3,4
Y	WO 00 76958 A (BRYANS JUSTIN STEPHEN ;SCHELKUN ROBERT MICHAEL (US); WARNER LAMBER) 21 December 2000 (2000-12-21) cited in the application page 12 -page 13 --- -/--	1,8

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:

- *A* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- *E* earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- *L* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- *O* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- *P* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- *T* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- *X* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- *Y* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- * & * document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

15 May 2003

Date of mailing of the international search report

30/05/2003

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2
 NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk
 Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,
 Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Trifilieff-Riolo, S

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

In 1al Application No

PCT/1B 03/00232

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	WO 99 31074 A (BRYANS JUSTIN STEPHEN ;HORWELL DAVID CHRISTOPHER (GB); KNEEN CLARE) 24 June 1999 (1999-06-24) cited in the application page 5, line 26 -page 9, line 26 ---	1,9,10
Y	WO 99 31057 A (BRYANS JUSTIN STEPHEN ;HORWELL DAVID CHRISTOPHER (GB); KNEEN CLARE) 24 June 1999 (1999-06-24) page 10, line 1 - line 5 ---	1,13
Y	WO 98 17627 A (BRYANS JUSTIN STEPHEN ;HORWELL DAVID CHRISTOPHER (GB); KNEEN CLARE) 30 April 1998 (1998-04-30) cited in the application page 27, line 20 - line 25 ---	1,11
Y	WO 99 61424 A (BRYANS JUSTIN STEPHEN ;HORWELL DAVID CHRISTOPHER (GB); RECEVEUR JE) 2 December 1999 (1999-12-02) cited in the application page 9, line 1 - line 10 ---	1,12
X	DATABASE EMBASE 'Online! ELSEVIER SCIENCE PUBLISHERS, AMSTERDAM, NL; 2001 ZAPP J J: "Gabapentin for the treatment of tinnitus: A case report" Database accession no. EMB-2001077211 XP002240623 ---	1,2
Y	abstract & EAR, NOSE AND THROAT JOURNAL 2001 UNITED STATES, vol. 80, no. 2, 2001, pages 114-116, ISSN: 0145-5613 ---	3-13
Y	WO 01 28978 A (RECEVEUR JEAN MARIE ;BLAKEMORE DAVID CLIVE (GB); BRYANS JUSTIN STE) 26 April 2001 (2001-04-26) cited in the application page 7 -page 8 ---	1,12
A	SZCZEPANIAK W S ET AL: "Effects of (-)-baclofen, clonazepam, and diazepam on tone exposure- induced hyperexcitability of the inferior colliculus in the rat: Possible therapeutic implications for pharmacological management of tinnitus and hyperacusis" 1996 , VOL. 97, NR. 1-2, PAGE(S) 46-53 XP002240621 ISSN: 0378-5955 abstract ----- -/-	1-13

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Int'l Application No

PCT/IB 03/00232

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	MENKES D B ET AL: "Sodium valproate for tinnitus." November 1998 (1998-11) , VOL. 65, NR. 5, PAGE(S) 803 XP002240622 ISSN: 0022-3050 the whole document ----	1-13
A	DATABASE EMBASE 'Online! ELSEVIER SCIENCE PUBLISHERS, AMSTERDAM, NL; 2000 SHULMAN A ET AL: "Benzodiazepine receptor deficiency and tinnitus" Database accession no. EMB-2001049123 XP002240624 abstract & INTERNATIONAL TINNITUS JOURNAL 2000 UNITED STATES, vol. 6, no. 2, 2000, pages 98-111, ISSN: 0946-5448 ----	1-13
A	GEE ET AL.: "The novel anti-convulsant drug, Gabapentin binds to the alpha2delta subunit of a calcium channel" J. BIOL. CHEM., vol. 271, 1996, pages 5768-5776, XP002240620 the whole document ----	1-13
A	GB 2 342 043 A (MERCK SHARP & DOHME) 5 April 2000 (2000-04-05) the whole document -----	1-13

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

Continuation of Box I.2

Present claim 1 relates to the use of a compound defined by a functional feature specifying that it should be an "alpha 2 delta ligand". The use of this functional feature in the present context is considered to lead to a lack of clarity within the meaning of Article 6 PCT. Notwithstanding the fact that the description does not mention any means to determine if a compound is an "alpha2delta ligand", it is impossible to assess whether a prior art compound fall within this definition. Therefore the lack of clarity is such as to render a meaningful complete search impossible. Consequently, the search has been restricted to the compound illustrated by a structure, namely those mentioned in claims 2 to 13.

The applicant's attention is drawn to the fact that claims, or parts of claims, relating to inventions in respect of which no international search report has been established need not be the subject of an international preliminary examination (Rule 66.1(e) PCT). The applicant is advised that the EPO policy when acting as an International Preliminary Examining Authority is normally not to carry out a preliminary examination on matter which has not been searched. This is the case irrespective of whether or not the claims are amended following receipt of the search report or during any Chapter II procedure.

Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:
2. ☒ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:
see FURTHER INFORMATION sheet PCT/ISA/210
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this International application, as follows:

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Int. nat. Application No

PCT/IB 03/00232

Patent document cited in search report		Publication date		Patent family member(s)		Publication date
WO 9931075	A	24-06-1999	AU	1392999 A		05-07-1999
			AU	1455499 A		05-07-1999
			AU	1796299 A		05-07-1999
			BR	9813656 A		10-10-2000
			BR	9814286 A		03-10-2000
			BR	9814287 A		03-10-2000
			CA	2304965 A1		24-06-1999
			CA	2304967 A1		24-06-1999
			CA	2304974 A1		24-06-1999
			CN	1279673 T		10-01-2001
			CN	1279667 T		10-01-2001
			CN	1279674 T		10-01-2001
			EP	1047678 A1		02-11-2000
			EP	1045834 A1		25-10-2000
			EP	1045839 A2		25-10-2000
			HU	0004439 A2		28-10-2001
			HU	0100069 A2		28-12-2001
			HU	0100472 A2		28-09-2001
			JP	2002508352 T		19-03-2002
			JP	2002508361 T		19-03-2002
			JP	2002508362 T		19-03-2002
			NO	20003037 A		14-06-2000
			NO	20003038 A		14-06-2000
			NO	20003039 A		14-06-2000
			NZ	503963 A		27-09-2002
			NZ	503980 A		27-09-2002
			NZ	503981 A		20-12-2002
			PL	341231 A1		26-03-2001
			PL	341291 A1		09-04-2001
			PL	348305 A1		20-05-2002
			TR	200001794 T2		23-10-2000
			TR	200001795 T2		21-11-2000
			TR	200001800 T2		21-03-2001
			WO	9931074 A2		24-06-1999
			WO	9931075 A1		24-06-1999
			WO	9931057 A1		24-06-1999
			US	6518289 B1		11-02-2003
			US	6521650 B1		18-02-2003
			US	6545022 B1		08-04-2003
			ZA	9811464 A		15-06-1999
			ZA	9811472 A		07-07-1999
			ZA	9811474 A		15-06-1999
US 5563175	A	08-10-1996	MX	9302970 A1		31-05-1994
			US	6028214 A		22-02-2000
			US	6342529 B1		29-01-2002
			US	6262120 B1		17-07-2001
			US	6291526 B1		18-09-2001
			US	6140366 A		31-10-2000
			US	6525096 B1		25-02-2003
			US	6255345 B1		03-07-2001
			US	6117906 A		12-09-2000
			US	6414024 B1		02-07-2002
			US	5684189 A		04-11-1997
			US	5608090 A		04-03-1997
			US	5599973 A		04-02-1997
			US	6197819 B1		06-03-2001
			US	6359169 B1		19-03-2002

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

In International Application No

PCT/IB 03/00232

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
US 5563175 A		US 5710304 A	20-01-1998
		US 5847151 A	08-12-1998
		AT 207052 T	15-11-2001
		AU 677008 B2	10-04-1997
		AU 4379493 A	13-12-1993
		CA 2134674 A1	25-11-1993
		CZ 9402849 A3	15-03-1995
		DE 69330949 D1	22-11-2001
		DE 69330949 T2	04-04-2002
		DK 641330 T3	03-12-2001
		EP 0641330 A1	08-03-1995
		ES 2165857 T3	01-04-2002
		FI 945426 A	18-11-1994
		HK 1011022 A1	28-03-2002
		HU 71522 A2	28-12-1995
		JP 7508288 T	14-09-1995
		NO 944370 A	21-11-1994
		NZ 253459 A	24-03-1997
		PT 641330 T	28-03-2002
		RU 2140901 C1	10-11-1999
		SG 48288 A1	17-04-1998
		SK 139594 A3	10-05-1995
		WO 9323383 A1	25-11-1993
		AU 9137091 A	25-06-1992
		MX 9102241 A1	31-01-1994
		WO 9209560 A1	11-06-1992
WO 0076958 A	21-12-2000	AU 5311900 A	02-01-2001
		BG 106292 A	31-05-2002
		BR 0011727 A	05-03-2002
		CA 2374755 A1	21-12-2000
		CN 1355784 T	26-06-2002
		CZ 20014285 A3	17-07-2002
		EE 200100672 A	17-02-2003
		EP 1192125 A2	03-04-2002
		HU 0201601 A2	28-10-2002
		JP 2003502308 T	21-01-2003
		NO 20015949 A	05-12-2001
		SK 17642001 A3	08-10-2002
		TR 200103587 T2	22-04-2002
		WO 0076958 A2	21-12-2000
WO 9931074 A	24-06-1999	AU 1392999 A	05-07-1999
		AU 1455499 A	05-07-1999
		AU 1796299 A	05-07-1999
		BR 9813656 A	10-10-2000
		BR 9814286 A	03-10-2000
		BR 9814287 A	03-10-2000
		CA 2304965 A1	24-06-1999
		CA 2304967 A1	24-06-1999
		CA 2304974 A1	24-06-1999
		CN 1279673 T	10-01-2001
		CN 1279667 T	10-01-2001
		CN 1279674 T	10-01-2001
		EP 1047678 A1	02-11-2000
		EP 1045834 A1	25-10-2000
		EP 1045839 A2	25-10-2000
		HU 0004439 A2	28-10-2001

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Int. Application No

PCT/IB 03/00232

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9931074	A	HU 0100069 A2	28-12-2001
		HU 0100472 A2	28-09-2001
		JP 2002508352 T	19-03-2002
		JP 2002508361 T	19-03-2002
		JP 2002508362 T	19-03-2002
		NO 20003037 A	14-06-2000
		NO 20003038 A	14-06-2000
		NO 20003039 A	14-06-2000
		NZ 503963 A	27-09-2002
		NZ 503980 A	27-09-2002
		NZ 503981 A	20-12-2002
		PL 341231 A1	26-03-2001
		PL 341291 A1	09-04-2001
		PL 348305 A1	20-05-2002
		TR 200001794 T2	23-10-2000
		TR 200001795 T2	21-11-2000
		TR 200001800 T2	21-03-2001
		WO 9931074 A2	24-06-1999
		WO 9931075 A1	24-06-1999
		WO 9931057 A1	24-06-1999
		US 6518289 B1	11-02-2003
		US 6521650 B1	18-02-2003
		US 6545022 B1	08-04-2003
		ZA 9811464 A	15-06-1999
		ZA 9811472 A	07-07-1999
		ZA 9811474 A	15-06-1999
WO 9931057	A	24-06-1999	AU 1392999 A
			05-07-1999
			AU 1455499 A
			05-07-1999
			AU 1796299 A
			05-07-1999
			BR 9813656 A
			10-10-2000
			BR 9814286 A
			03-10-2000
			BR 9814287 A
			03-10-2000
			CA 2304965 A1
			24-06-1999
			CA 2304967 A1
			24-06-1999
			CA 2304974 A1
			24-06-1999
			CN 1279673 T
			10-01-2001
			CN 1279667 T
			10-01-2001
			CN 1279674 T
			10-01-2001
			EP 1047678 A1
			02-11-2000
			EP 1045834 A1
			25-10-2000
			EP 1045839 A2
			25-10-2000
			HU 0004439 A2
			28-10-2001
			HU 0100069 A2
			28-12-2001
			HU 0100472 A2
			28-09-2001
			JP 2002508352 T
			19-03-2002
			JP 2002508361 T
			19-03-2002
			JP 2002508362 T
			19-03-2002
			NO 20003037 A
			14-06-2000
			NO 20003038 A
			14-06-2000
			NO 20003039 A
			14-06-2000
			NZ 503963 A
			27-09-2002
			NZ 503980 A
			27-09-2002
			NZ 503981 A
			20-12-2002
			PL 341231 A1
			26-03-2001
			PL 341291 A1
			09-04-2001
			PL 348305 A1
			20-05-2002
			TR 200001794 T2
			23-10-2000

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

In International Application No

PCT/IB 03/00232

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9931057	A	TR 200001795 T2	21-11-2000
		TR 200001800 T2	21-03-2001
		WO 9931074 A2	24-06-1999
		WO 9931075 A1	24-06-1999
		WO 9931057 A1	24-06-1999
		US 6518289 B1	11-02-2003
		US 6521650 B1	18-02-2003
		US 6545022 B1	08-04-2003
		ZA 9811464 A	15-06-1999
		ZA 9811472 A	07-07-1999
		ZA 9811474 A	15-06-1999
WO 9817627	A 30-04-1998	AU 733896 B2	31-05-2001
		AU 4669797 A	15-05-1998
		BR 9712651 A	26-10-1999
		EP 0937032 A1	25-08-1999
		HR 970560 A1	31-08-1998
		JP 2002514187 T	14-05-2002
		NZ 334898 A	29-09-2000
		WO 9817627 A1	30-04-1998
		US 6153650 A	28-11-2000
		ZA 9709457 A	12-05-1998
WO 9961424	A 02-12-1999	AU 3667999 A	13-12-1999
		BR 9910697 A	30-01-2001
		CA 2322558 A1	02-12-1999
		EP 1082306 A1	14-03-2001
		JP 2002516312 T	04-06-2002
		NZ 506793 A	28-03-2003
		WO 9961424 A1	02-12-1999
		US 6316638 B1	13-11-2001
		US 2002019540 A1	14-02-2002
WO 0128978	A 26-04-2001	AU 1092001 A	30-04-2001
		BG 106719 A	28-02-2003
		BR 0014972 A	16-07-2002
		CA 2386297 A1	26-04-2001
		CN 1382118 T	27-11-2002
		EP 1226110 A1	31-07-2002
		HU 0203325 A2	28-02-2003
		JP 2003512348 T	02-04-2003
		NO 20021780 A	16-04-2002
		NZ 517961 A	20-12-2002
		TR 200201094 T2	23-09-2002
		WO 0128978 A1	26-04-2001
GB 2342043	A 05-04-2000	NONE	